

དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་དམའ་རིམ་བརྒྱུད།

# Essential English Grammar

ཆེ་ཐོན་ཚོར་བྱ་དང་ཟེན་པ་གཉིས་ནས་བསྐྱར་སྒྲུབ་བྱས།



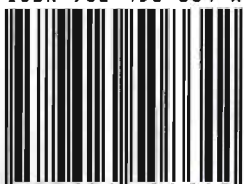
གངས་ལྗོངས་ཤེས་རིག་ཁྱབ་སྤེལ་ཁྲུང་གནས།

# དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་དམའ་རིམ་བརྒྱ་དཀར་

## Essential English Grammar

- བཀོལ་བའི་བ། དཔེ་དེབ་འདི་ནི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཆུ་ཚད་ཅུང་དམའ་བ་དག་ལ་དམིགས་ནས་བསྒྲིགས་པ་ལྟར་དང་གཡས་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ལུང་ཡོད་པ་དེས་གཞི་རྒྱ་སྒྲིག་གི་དཀར་གནད་རྟོགས་ཡོད་མེད་ལ་བརྟག་དབྱེད་བྱས་ཆོག།
- ཁ་གསལ་བ། དཔེ་དེབ་འདི་ནི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཆུ་ཚད་ཅུང་དམའ་བ་དག་ལ་དམིགས་ནས་བསྒྲིགས་པ་ལྟར་དང་གཡས་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ལུང་ཡོད་པ་དེས་གཞི་རྒྱ་སྒྲིག་གི་དཀར་གནད་རྟོགས་ཡོད་མེད་ལ་བརྟག་དབྱེད་བྱས་ཆོག།
- ཟུར་བཀོད། འདིར་ཟུར་བཀོད་བདུན་བཀོད་ཡོད་ལ་དེ་དག་གིས་བྱེད་ཅག་ལ་གཟུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག་དང་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་བསྐྱུས་འབྲེལ་ལྟར་པ། དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་སོགས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་སྤྲངས་ཁ་གསལ་གང་ཅུས་བྱས་ཡོད།
- རང་སྟོང་། དེབ་འདི་ནི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཆུ་ཚད་དམའ་བ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་རང་སྟོང་ངམ་གསལ་སྟོང་གི་དཔེ་དེབ་བཞིན་བཀོལ་ཆོག།
- དྲིས་ལན། དེབ་འདི་ནི་མཚུགས་ཀྱི་གཞི་རྒྱ་སྒྲིག་གི་དཀར་གནད་རྟོགས་ཡོད་མེད་ལ་བརྟག་དབྱེད་བྱས་ཆོག།

ISBN 962-450-864-X



9 789624 508642

ISBN 962-450-864-X/D.44769

定价: 26.00元



## དཀར་      ཆག

|    |                 |  |
|----|-----------------|--|
| 5  | སློབ་མར་ཕུལ་བ།  |  |
| 7  | དགོ་ཆན་ལ་ཕུལ་བ། |  |
|    | ཐྱི་ཆ་ན།        |  |
| 1  | དང་པོ།          | AM/IS/ARE སྟགས།  |
| 3  | གཉིས་པ།         | AM/IS/ARE འདྲི་ཆེག   |
| 5  | གསུམ་པ།         | I AM DOING ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།                                   |
| 7  | བཞི་པ།          | ARE YOU DOING? ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་འདྲི་ཆེག                     |
| 9  | ལྔ་པ།           | I DO/ WORK/ LIKE སློབ་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ།                              |
| 11 | དྲུག་པ།         | I DON'T... སློབ་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཆེག                           |
| 13 | བདུན་པ།         | DO YOU.....? སློབ་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདྲི་ཆེག                        |
| 15 | བརྒྱད་པ།        | I AM DOING AND I DO སློབ་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་དང་ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།         |
| 17 | དགུ་པ།          | I HAVE.../ I'VE GOT...   |
| 19 | བརྒྱ་པ།         | WAS/ WERE  |
| 21 | བརྒྱ་གཅིག       | WORKED / GOT / WENT སློབ་བཏང་འདས་པ།                            |
| 23 | བརྒྱ་གཉིས་པ།    | I DIDN'T... DID YOU ...? སློབ་བཏང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཆེག་དང་དགག་ཆེག  |
| 25 | བརྒྱ་གསུམ་པ།    | I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།                               |
| 27 | བརྒྱ་བཞི་པ།     | I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ། I DID སློབ་བཏང་འདས་པ།         |
| 29 | བཅོ་ལྔ་པ།       | I HAVE DONE གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ། 7                                 |
| 31 | བརྒྱ་དྲུག་པ།    | I'VE JUST... I'VE ALREADY... I HAVEN'T...YET གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ ༩ |
| 33 | བརྒྱ་བདུན་པ།    | HAVE YOU EVER.....? གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ ༩                          |
| 35 | བཅོ་བརྒྱད་པ།    | HOW LONG HAVE YOU.....? གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ ༥                      |
| 37 | བརྒྱ་དགུ་པ།     | FOR, SINCE དང་ AGO.  |
| 39 | ཉི་ཤུ་པ།        | I HAVE DONE གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་ I DID སློབ་བཏང་འདས་པ།          |
| 41 | ཉི་ཤུ་གཅིག་པ།   | IS DONE དང་ WAS DONE གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ།                         |
| 43 | ཉི་ཤུ་གཉིས་པ།   | IS BEING DONE AND HAS BEEN DONE. གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ། ༩           |



|    |              |   |
|----|--------------|---|
| 45 | ཉེར་གསུམ་པ།  | BE/HAVE/DO མོགས་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་འདས་པའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོད་སྟངས།    |
| 47 | ཉེར་བཞི་བ།   | གཟུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་དང་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་      |
| 49 | ཉེར་ལྔ་བ།    | I USED TO.....  |
| 51 | ཉེར་དྲུག་པ།  | WHAT ARE YOU DOING TOMORROW?                          |
| 53 | ཉེར་བདུན་པ།  | I AM GOING TO...                                      |
| 55 | ཉེར་བརྒྱད་པ། | SHALL / WILL ག  |
| 57 | ཉེར་དགུ་བ།   | WILL/SHALL ན  |
| 59 | སུམ་རུ་བ།    | MIGHT   |
| 61 | སོ་གཅིག་པ།   | CAN དང་COULD  |
| 63 | སོ་གཉིས་པ།   | MUST MUSTN'T NEEDN'T                                  |
| 65 | སོ་གསུམ་པ།   | SHOULD  |
| 67 | སོ་བཞི་བ།    | I HAVE TO...  |
| 69 | སོ་ལྔ་བ།     | WOULD YOU LIKE...? I'D LIKE...                        |
| 71 | སོ་དྲུག་པ།   | THERE ARE   |
| 73 | སོ་བདུན་པ།   | THERE WAS/ WERE དང་THERE HAS/ HAVE BEEN THERE WILL BE |
| 75 | སོ་བརྒྱད་པ།  | IT  |
| 77 | སོ་དགུ་བ།    | I AM དང་I DON'T མོགས།                                 |
| 79 | བཞི་བརུ་བ།   | HAVE YOU? དང་ARE YOU? DON'T YOU?                      |
| 81 | ཞིག་ཅིག་པ།   | TOO དང་EITHER SO AM I དང་NEITHER DO I                 |
| 83 | ཞིག་ཉིས་པ།   | ISN'T དང་HAVEN'T གཞན་ཡང་DON'T མོགས།                   |
| 85 | ཞིག་སུམ་པ།   | IS IT ...? དང་HAVE YOU...?/DO THEY...? ག              |
| 87 | ཞིག་བཞི་བ།   | WHO SAW YOU? དང་WHO DID YOU SEE?                      |
| 89 | ཞིག་ལྔ་བ།    | WHO IS SHE TALKING TO? དང་WHAT IS IT LIKE?            |
| 91 | ཞིག་དྲུག་པ།  | WHAT...? དང་ WHICH...? / HOW...?                      |
| 93 | ཞིག་བདུན་པ།  | HOW LONG DOES IT TAKE...? .....དུས་ལྟན་ཅི་ཙམ་འགོར།    |
| 95 | ཞིག་བརྒྱད་པ། | DO YOU KNOW WHERE...? དང་I DON'T KNOW WHAT...         |
| 97 | ཞིག་དགུ་བ།   | SHE SAID THAT... དང་ HE TOLD ME THAT ...              |
| 99 | ལྔ་བརུ་བ།    | WORK/ WORKING དང་GO/GOING ཡང་ན་DO/ DOING མོགས།        |





|     |              |   |
|-----|--------------|---|
| 101 | ང་གཅིག་པ།    | TO (I WANT TO DO) ཏང་' ING (I ENJOY DOING)                      |
| 103 | ང་གཉིས་པ།    | I WANT YOU TO ཏང་' I TOLD YOU TO                                |
| 105 | ང་གསུམ་པ།    | I WENT TO THE SHOP TO   |
| 107 | ང་བཞི་པ།     | GO TO... GO ON... GO FOR ... GO -ING                            |
| 109 | ང་ལྔ་པ།      | GET   |
| 111 | ང་རྒྱུ་པ།    | DO ཏང་' MAKE  |
| 113 | ང་བདུན་པ།    | HAVE  |
| 115 | ང་བརྒྱད་པ།   | I/ME HE/HIM THEY/THEM   |
| 117 | ང་དགུ་པ།     | MY / HIS /THEIR   |
| 119 | རྒྱུ་ཅུ་པ།   | WHOSE IS THIS? IT'S MINE / YOURS / HERS རོགས།                   |
| 121 | རེ་གཅིག་པ།   | I / ME MY / MINE རོགས།  |
| 123 | རེ་གཉིས་པ།   | MYSELF / YOURSELF / THEMSELVES རོགས།                            |
| 125 | རེ་གསུམ་པ།   | -S (ANN'S CAMERA)   |
| 127 | རེ་བཞི་པ།    | A /AN   |
| 129 | རེ་ལྔ་པ།     | FLOWER(S) BUS (ES)  |
| 131 | རེ་རྒྱུ་པ།   | A CAR / SOME MONEY  |
| 133 | རེ་བདུན་པ།   | A CAR/ SOME MONEY   |
| 135 | རེ་བརྒྱད་པ།  | A /AN ཏང་'THE རོགས།   |
| 137 | རེ་དགུ་པ།    | THE   |
| 139 | བདུན་ཅུ་པ།   | GO TO WORK GO HOME GO TO THE CINEMA རོགས།                       |
| 141 | དོན་གཅིག་པ།  | I LIKE MUSIC I HATE EXAMS                                       |
| 143 | དོན་གཉིས་པ།  | THE ... ས་ཆའི་མིང་།   |
| 145 | དོན་གསུམ་པ།  | THIS / THAT/ THESE /THOSE                                       |
| 147 | དོན་བཞི་པ།   | ONE / ONES  |
| 149 | དོན་ལྔ་པ།    | SOME ཏང་' ANY   |
| 151 | དོན་རྒྱུ་པ།  | NOT + ANY NO NONE   |
| 153 | དོན་བདུན་པ།  | NOT + ANYBODY / ANYONE / ANYTHING / NOBODY / NO - ONE / NOTHING |
| 155 | དོན་བརྒྱད་པ། | SOMEBODY / ANYTHING / NOWHERE རོགས།                             |



|     |                 |   |
|-----|-----------------|---|
| 157 | དོན་དགུ་བ།      | EVERY དང་ ALL   |
| 159 | བརྒྱད་ཅུ་བ།     | ALL MOST SOME ANY NO / NONE                           |
| 161 | གྲ་གཅིག་པ།      | BOTH/EITHER/NEITHER སྟགས།                             |
| 163 | གྲ་གཉིས་པ།      | A LOT MUCH MANY                                       |
| 165 | གྲ་གསུམ་པ།      | (A) LITTLE (A) FEW སྟགས།                              |
| 167 | གྲ་བཞི་བ།       | OLD /NICE /INTERESTING སྟགས།                          |
| 169 | གྲ་ལྔ་བ།        | QUICKLY / BADLY / SUDDENLY སྟགས།                      |
| 171 | གྲ་རྩ་ག་པ།      | OLD / OLDER EXPENSIVE / MORE EXPENSIVE སྟགས།          |
| 173 | གྲ་བདུན་པ།      | OLDER THAN MORE EXPENSIVE THAN སྟགས།                  |
| 175 | གྲ་བརྒྱད་པ།     | NOT AS ...AS  |
| 177 | གྲ་དགུ་བ།       | THE OLDEST THE MOST EXPENSIVE                         |
| 179 | དགུ་བཅུ་བ།      | ENOUGH  |
| 181 | གོ་གཅིག་པ།      | TOO   |
| 183 | གོ་གཉིས་པ།      | HE SPEAKS ENGLISH VERY WELL. ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ་ ༡   |
| 185 | གོ་གསུམ་པ།      | ALWAYS / USUALLY / OFTEN སྟགས། ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ་ ༢ |
| 187 | གོ་བཞི་བ།       | STILL YET ALREADY སྟགས།                               |
| 189 | གོ་ལྔ་བ།        | GIVE ME THAT BOOK! GIVE IT TO ME! སྟགས།               |
| 191 | གོ་རྩ་ག་པ།      | AT 8 O' CLOCK ON MONDAY IN APRIL སྟགས།                |
| 193 | གོ་བདུན་པ།      | FROM ... TO UNTIL SINCE FOR སྟགས།                     |
| 195 | གོ་བརྒྱད་པ།     | BEFORE AFTER DURING WHILE སྟགས།                       |
| 197 | གོ་དགུ་བ།       | IN AT ON ས་ཆ་ ༡                                       |
| 199 | བརྒྱ་ཐམ་པ།      | IN AT ON ས་ཆ་ ༢                                       |
| 201 | བརྒྱ་དང་གཅིག་པ། | TO IN AT ས་ཆ་ ༣                                       |
| 203 | བརྒྱ་དང་གཉིས།   | UNDER BEHIND OPPOSITE འབྲེལ་ཆོག                       |
| 205 | བརྒྱ་དང་གསུམ།   | UP OVER THOUGHT སྟགས། འབྲེལ་ཆོག                       |
| 207 | བརྒྱ་དང་བཞི།    | ON AT BY WITH ABOUT འབྲེལ་ཆོག                         |
| 209 | བརྒྱ་དང་ལྔ།     | AFRAID OF... GOOD AT ... སྟགས།                        |
| 211 | བརྒྱ་དང་རྩ་ག་པ། | LISTEN TO / LOOK AT སྟགས།                             |

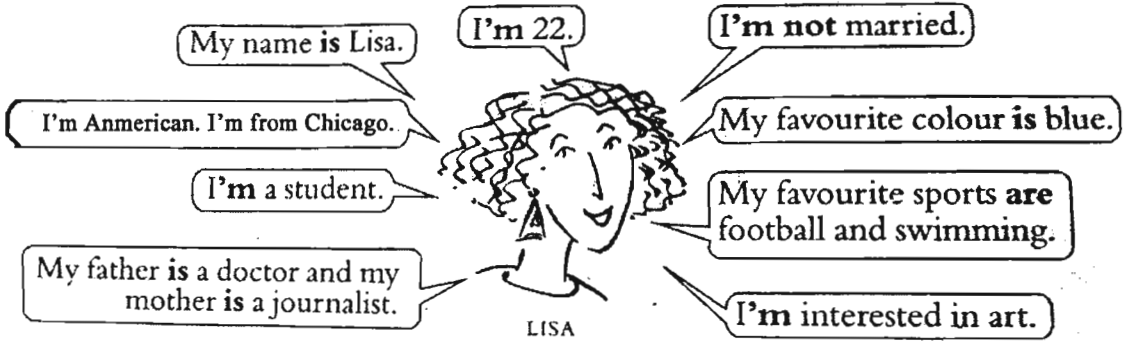


- 213 བརྒྱད་དང་བདུན། GO IN FALL OFF RUN AWAY སྟགས། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས ༡
- 215 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱད། PUT ON YOUR SHOES PUT YOUR SHOES ON ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས ༢
- 217 བརྒྱད་དང་དགུ AND BUT OR SO BECAUSE སྟགས།
- 219 བརྒྱད་དང་བརྒྱ WHEN ...
- 221 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་གཅིག IF WE GO... IF YOU SEE ... སྟགས།
- 223 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་གཉིས། IF I HAD... IF WE WENT... སྟགས།
- 225 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་གསུམ། A PERSON WHO... A THING THAT /WHICH... འབྲེལ་བའི་ཆབ་ཆོག ༡
- 227 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་བཞི། THE PEOPLE WE MET THE HOTEL YOU STAYED AT འབྲེལ་བའི་ཆབ་ཆོག ༢
- རྒྱུ་བཞོད།
- 229 དང་པོ། ཆོག་གྲུབ་རང་དབང་དང་གཞན་དབང་ཅན།
- 230 གཉིས་པ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག ༡
- 231 གསུམ་པ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག ༢
- 232 བཞི་བ། བསྐྱས་ཆོག་གམ་སྐྱང་ཆོག
- 234 ལྔ་བ། དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ།
- 237 སྟག་པ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས།
- 238 བདུན་པ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་སྐྱོར་ཚུལ།
- 239 གྲིས་ལན།



# ཞིབ་ཚིག་དང་ཡི། AM/IS/ARE སྐད་སྐད།

༡



ཁ is/am/are སྐད་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཡིན་པའི་དོན་ཏེ། ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི་སྤྱི་འགྲེས་ཀྱི་གཤམ་གསལ་ལྟར།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are + བྱེད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གམ་ཡང་ན་མིང་ཆོག

དགག་མེན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

དགག་མེན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

| བྱེད་པ་པོ་ is/am/are | བསྐྱེད་འབྱེད་ཆོག་གམ་པ། |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| I am                 | (I'm)                  |
| He is                | (he's)                 |
| She is               | (she's)                |
| It is                | (it's)                 |
| We are               | (we're)                |
| You are              | (you're)               |
| They are             | (they're)              |

| བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are not | བསྐྱེད་འབྱེད་ཆོག་གམ་པ།        |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I am not                   | (I'm not)                     |
| He is not                  | (he isn't ཡང་ན། he isn't)     |
| She is not                 | (she isn't ཡང་ན། she isn't)   |
| It is not                  | (it isn't ཡང་ན། it isn't)     |
| We are not                 | (we aren't ཡང་ན། we aren't)   |
| You are not                | (you aren't ཡང་ན། you aren't) |

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He's a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane isn't at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today but it isn't warm.



ག that's གི་that is ཡི་བསྐྱེད་འབྱེད་ཆོག་གམ་པ་ཡིན་ལ། there's གི་there is

བསྐྱེད་འབྱེད་ཆོག་གམ་པ་དང་། here's གི་ here is བསྐྱེད་འབྱེད་ཆོག་གམ་པ་ཡིན།

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- 'Here's your key. Thank you.'





## གསར་སྤྱད།

### 1.1 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་བསྐྱེད་འབྲིའི་ནམ་པ་མིས། (she's/we aren't སྐད་སྒྲུབ་ལྟར་)

- 1) She is ...she's..... 2) It is not ..... 3) I am not .....  
4) They are..... 5) That is ..... 6) You are not .....

### 1.2 am, is, are གསལ་བཤད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

- 1) The weather .....is..... nice today. 2) I .....not tired. 3) This bag .....heavy.  
4) These bags.....heavy. 5) Look! There .....Carol. 6) My brother and I ....good tennis players.  
7) Ann .....at home. Her children.....at school. 8) I .....a taxi driver. My sister.....a nurse.

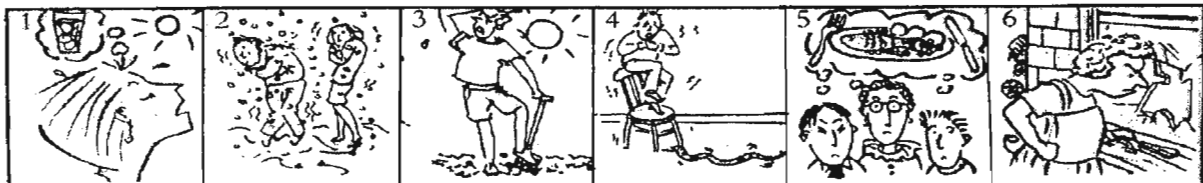
### 1.3 is/isn't/are/aren't སྐད་སྒྲུབ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty.  
2) (my brother a teacher) .....  
3) (this house not very big) .....  
4) (the shops not open today) .....  
5) (my keys in my bag) .....  
6) (Jenny 18 years old.) .....  
7) (you not very tall) .....

### 1.4 ལྷའི་སེས་བཟོས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལ་དབེ་བལྟས་ནས་ (ཞི་ཆེན་དང་པའི་ཀ) རང་ཉིད་སྟོང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- \* 1) (name?) My ..... 6) (favorite color or colors?)  
2) (from?) I ..... My .....  
3) (age?) I ..... 7) (interested in..?)  
4) (job?) I ..... I .....  
5) (married?) I .....

### 1.5 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་afraid/ angry/ cold /hot /hungry/ thirsty སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. she is thirsty. 3. He..... 5.....  
2 They ..... 4..... 6.....

### 1.6 am/am not/is /isn't/are/aren't སྐད་སྒྲུབ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་དགག་མིན་

#### དང་དགག་ལྟན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) (I/interested in politics) I am interested (or I am not interested) in politics.  
2) (I /hungry) I .....  
3) (it/warm today) it.....  
4) (I /afraid of dogs) .....  
5) (my hands/cold) .....  
6) (Canada/a very big country) .....  
7) (diamonds/ cheap) .....  
8) (I /interested in football) .....  
9) (Rome/in Spain) .....





## ཐེ་ཚན་གཉིས་པ། AM/IS/ARE འདྲི་ཚིག་

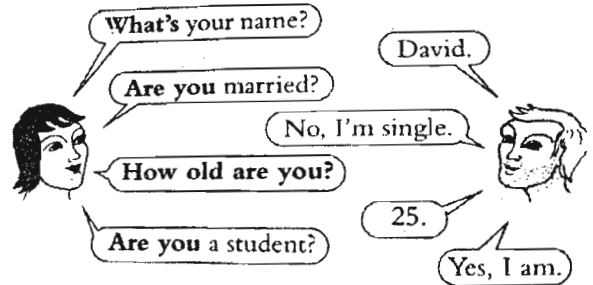
ཀ

དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

འདྲི་ཚིག་

I am  
He is  
She is  
It is  
We are  
You are  
They are

Am I ?  
Is he?  
Is she?  
Is it ?  
Are we?  
Are you?  
Are they?



- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they are out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- 'Your shoes are nice. Are they new?'

## གཞན་ཡང་། ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚིག་སྟེ།

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? ('Is at home your mother?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Are they new? / are your shoes new? (Are new your shoes? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

## ཁ where...? / what....? / who....? / how....? / why...? སོགས་བཀོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲི་ཚུལ།

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- What color is your car? 'It's red.'
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- How much are these postcards? Fifty pence.'
- Where are you from? 'Canada.'
- How old is Joe? 'He's 24.'
- Why are you angry?

What's ཇི་what is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ཞུས་པ་ཡིན། who's ཇི་who is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ཞུས་པ་ཡིན། how's ཇི་how is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ཞུས་པ་ཡིན། where's ཇི་where is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ཞུས་པ་ཡིན།

- What's the time? Who's that man? Where's Jill? How's your father?

## ག སྐབས་བདེ་འདྲི་བྱས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

Yes, I am.  
Yes, he is.  
Yes, she is.  
Yes, it is.  
Yes, we are.  
Yes, you are.  
Yes, they are.

No, I'm not.  
No, he is not. ཡང་ན་ No, he isn't  
No, she is not. No, she isn't  
No, it is not. No, it isn't  
No, we are not No, we aren't  
No, you are not. No, you aren't  
No, they are not. No, they aren't



- Are you tired? 'Yes, I am.'
- Are you hungry? 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- Is your friend English? 'Yes, he is.'
- Are these your keys? 'Yes, they are.'
- That's my seat. 'No, it isn't.'



## གསལ་སྤྱད།

### 2.1 ཡང་དག་པའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེམས་དགོས།

- |                            |                        |             |
|----------------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 1) Where's the camera?     | A: London.             | .....G..... |
| 2) Is your car blue?       | B: No, I'm not.        | .....       |
| 3) Is Linda from London?   | C: Yes, you are.       | .....       |
| 4) Am I late?              | D: My sister.          | .....       |
| 5) Where's Ann from?       | E: Black.              | .....       |
| 6) What color is your bag? | F: No, it's black.     | .....       |
| 7) Are you hungry?         | G: in your bag.        | .....       |
| 8) How is George?          | H: No, she's American. | .....       |
| 9) Who's that woman?       | I: Very well.          | .....       |

### 2.2 Is དང་ Are གཉིས་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) (at home/your mother?)       | <u>Is your mother at home?</u> |
| 2) (your parents /well?)        | <u>Are your parents well?</u>  |
| 3) (interesting/ your job?)     | .....                          |
| 4) (the shops/ open today?)     | .....                          |
| 5) (interested in sport/ you?)  | .....                          |
| 6) (near here/the post office?) | .....                          |
| 7) (at school/ your children?)  | .....                          |
| 8) (why / you/ late?)           | .....                          |

### 2.3 ཐོག་མར་དྲིས་ལན་ལ་བསྟུན་ཇེས་What.../who../where.../how སྟོན་པའི་སྐད་ཀྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) <u>How are</u> your parents?     | They are very well.       |
| 2) .....the bus stop?               | At the end of the street. |
| 3) .....your children?              | Five, six and ten.        |
| 4) .....these oranges?              | 1.20 a kilo.              |
| 5) .....your favourite sport?       | Skiing.                   |
| 6) .....the man in this photograph? | That's my father.         |
| 7) .....your new shoes?             | Black.                    |

### 2.4 ཐོག་མར་དྲིས་ལན་བསྟུགས་ཇེས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) (name?) what's <u>your name?</u> | Paul.                 |
| 2) (married or single?).....        | I'm married.          |
| 3) (American?).....                 | No, I'm Australian.   |
| 4) (how old?).....                  | I'm 30.               |
| 5) (a teacher?).....                | No, I'm a lawyer.     |
| 6) (wife a lawyer?).....            | No, she's a designer. |
| 7) (from?).....                     | She's Italian.        |
| 8) (her name?).....                 | Anna.                 |
| 9) (how old?).....                  | She's 27.             |

### 2.5 སྟབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེམས་དགོས། (Yes, I am/ No, he isn't སྟོན་པའི་སྐད་ཀྱི་)

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1) Are you married? No, <u>I'm not.</u> | 4) Are your hands cold?..... |
| 2) Are you thirsty?.....                | 5) Is it dark now?.....      |
| 3) Is it cold today?.....               | 6) Are you a teacher?.....   |



# ཞི་ཚུག་གསུམ་པ། I AM DOING ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

༡

I'm eating.



She's eating.  
She isn't reading.



It's raining.  
The sun isn't shining.

We're running.



They're running.  
They aren't walking.

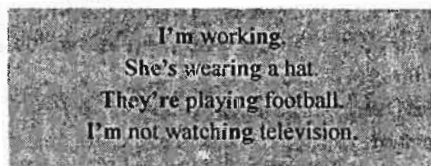
## ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུང་སྒྱུ་སྒྲིམ་འགྲོ་ས།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + Am/ is/ are + ལས་ཚིག་ + ing (do + ing = doing) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|      |    |       |             |   |
|------|----|-------|-------------|---|
| I    | am | (not) | +ing        | I'm working.                                |
| He   | }  | is    | (not) + ing | Chris is writing a letter.                  |
| She  |    |       |             | She isn't eating. (or she's not eating)     |
| It   |    |       |             | The phone is ringing.                       |
| We   |    |       |             | We're having dinner.                        |
| You  | }  | are   | (not) +ing  | You're not listening to me. (or You aren't) |
| They |    |       |             | The children are doing their homework.      |

## ཁ ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་ལས་སམ་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་ང་ཚོས་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བྱུང་བཞིན་པའི་གནས་སྒྲུང་སྒྲིམ་འགྲོ་ས།

## སྒྲུབ་བྱེད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།



འདས་པ། \_\_\_\_\_ ད་ལྟ་བ། \_\_\_\_\_ མ་འོངས་པ།

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (=ད་ལྟ་ལས་བཞིན་པ)
- Look at Sue! She's wearing her new hat. (=ད་ལྟ་ཚུན་བཞིན་པ)
- The weather is nice at the moment. It's not raining.
- "Where are the children?" "They're playing in the park."
- We're having dinner now. Can you phone again later? (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ)
- You can turn off the TV. I'm not watching it.

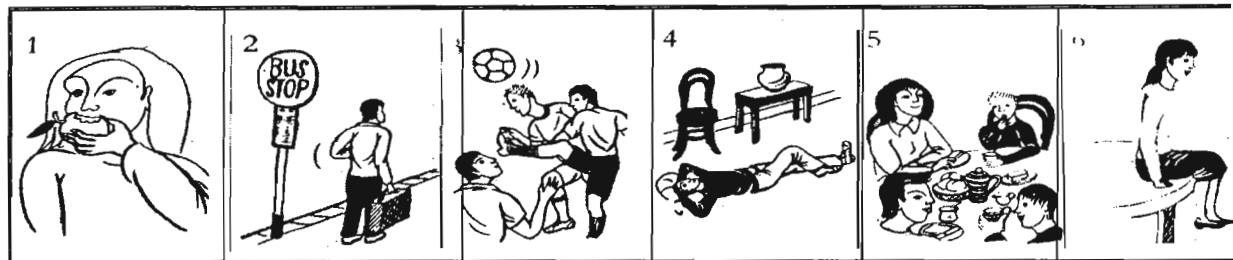
## ལས་ཚིག་གི་དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ། (ཞིབ་མཐོང་བྱེད་པ་ལ་ལྟོས་)

|                 |                   |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| come_____coming | write_____writing | dance_____dancing |
| run_____running | sit_____sitting   | swim_____swimming |
| lie_____lying.  |                   |                   |



# གཤམ་སྒྱུད་

3.1 ལས་ཆོག་eat/have/lie/play/sit/wait སྤྲོད་པའི་སྒྱུད་ནས་རིམ་འདྲི་ཐོག་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་  
བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་གསུངས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་སྒྱུད་ཆའི་ཁག་ཏུ་ཁ་སྐོང་བྱེད་དགོས།



- 1) She's **eating** an apple.
- 2) They ..... football.
- 3) ..... breakfast.
- 4) He.....for a bus.
- 5) .....on the floor.
- 6).....on the table.

3.2 Build/cook/go/have/stand/stay/swim/work སྤྲོད་པའི་སྒྱུད་ནས་གསུངས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- 2) "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He ....."
- 3) "You.....on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry."
- 4) Look! Somebody..... in the river.
- 5) We're here on holiday. We .....at the Center Hotel.
- 6) "Where's Ann?" "She .....a shower."
- 7) They .....a new theater in the city center at the moment.
- 8) I .....now. Goodbye.

3.3 རིམ་འདྲི་བཞུགས་ཆེས། she's +ing ཡང་ན isn't +ing སྤྲོད་པའི་སྒྱུད་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- |                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1) (have dinner)      | <b>Jane isn't having dinner.</b> |
| 2) (watch television) | <b>She's watching television</b> |
| 3) (sit on the floor) | she .....                        |
| 4) (read a book)      | .....                            |
| 5) (play the piano)   | .....                            |
| 6) (laugh)            | .....                            |
| 7) (wear a hat)       | .....                            |
| 8) (write a letter)   | .....                            |

3.4 ད་ལྟོ་ཞིག་ནས་སྐབས་སུ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྒྱུབ་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1) (I /wash/my hair)       | <b>I'm not washing my hair.</b> |
| 2) (it/snow)               | .....                           |
| 3) (I /sit/on a chair)     | .....                           |
| 4) (I / eat)               | .....                           |
| 5) (it/rain)               | .....                           |
| 6) (I /learn/ English)     | .....                           |
| 7) (I / listen/ to music)  | .....                           |
| 8) (the sun/ shine)        | .....                           |
| 9) (I /wear/ shoes)        | .....                           |
| 10) (I /read/ a newspaper) | .....                           |



# ཐེ་ཕུན་བཞི་བ། ARE YOU DOING? ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་འདྲི་ཆེག

ག

དགག་མིན་ཆེག་གྲུབ

འདྲི་ཆེག

|          |         |
|----------|---------|
| I am     |         |
| He is    | doing   |
| She is   | working |
| It is    | going   |
| We are   | staying |
| You are  |         |
| They are |         |

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| Am I     |          |
| Is he    | doing?   |
| Is she   | working? |
| Is it    | going?   |
| Are we   | staying? |
| Are you  |          |
| Are they |          |



- "Are you feeling OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thank you."
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- Look, there's Sally! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

## ཁ ག་ཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་གྱི་གོ་རིམ་ལ་ཡིད་འཛིན་བྱེད་དགོས།

Is/are/am + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆེག་ + ing + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|           |              |                |  |
|-----------|--------------|----------------|--|
| Is        | he           | working today? |  |
| Is        | Paul         | working today? | ( 'Is working Paul today? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་ )       |
| Where are | they         | going?         |  |
| Where are | those people | going?         | ( 'Where are going those people ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་ ) |

## ག ལྷན་པས་བདེའི་ངྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

Yes, བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are

no, བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/are/am + not

|               |
|---------------|
| Yes, I am     |
| Yes, he is    |
| Yes, she is   |
| Yes, it is    |
| Yes, we are   |
| Yes, they are |
| Yes, you are  |

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| No, I'm not     |                    |
| No, he's not    | ཡང་ན། No, he isn't |
| No, she's not   | No, she isn't      |
| No, it's not    | No, it isn't       |
| No, we're not   | No, we aren't      |
| No, they're not | No, they aren't    |
| No, you're not  | No, you aren't     |

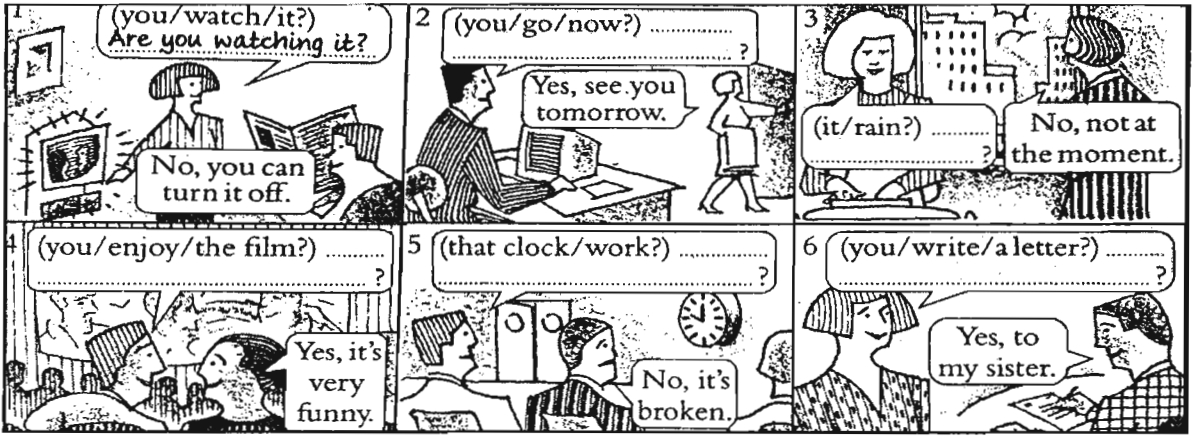
- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they're staying with me.'



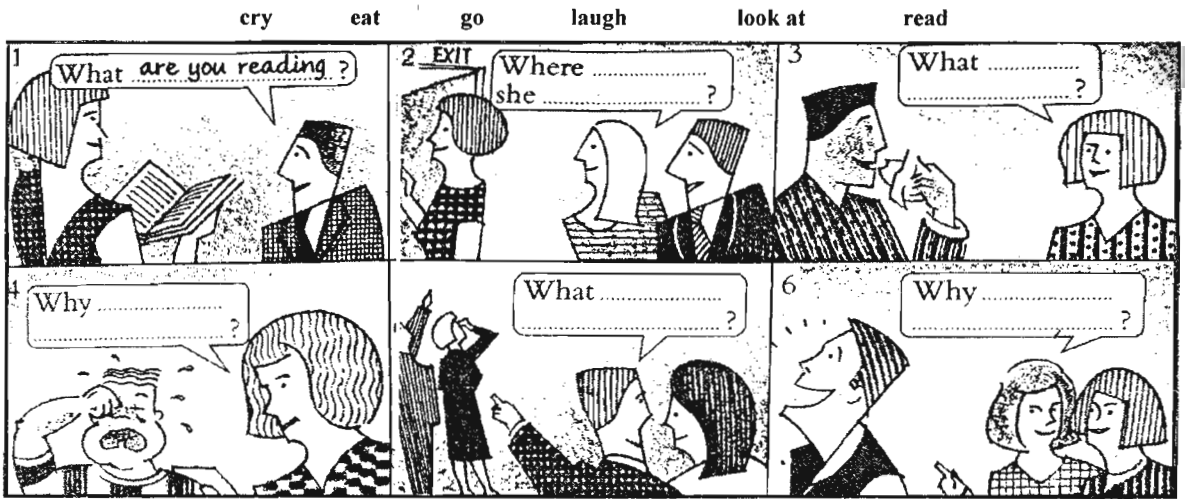


# གསལ་སྒྲུབ།

## 4.1 རིམ་བུས་ནས་འདྲི་ཆེག་བཟོ་དགོས།



## 4.2 རིམ་བུས་ཇིས་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཆེག་ལས་གང་རུང་འདྲི་བཅས་ནས་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



## 4.3 Is ངང་ are གཉིས་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆེག་དག་ངང་མཉམ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ནས་འདྲི་ཆེག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (working/ Paul/ today?) Is Paul working today?
- (what/ doing/ the children?) What are the children doing?
- (you/ listening/ to me?).....
- (where/ going/ your friends?).....
- (your parents/ television/ watching?).....
- (what/ cooking/ Ann?).....
- (why/ you/ looking/ at me?).....
- (coming/ the bus?).....

## 4.4 གསལ་གྱི་དྲི་བ་ནུས་ལ་སྒྲུབ་ས་བཤེད་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1) Are you watching TV? <u>No, I'm not.</u> | 4) Is it raining?.....                |
| 2) Are you wearing a watch?.....            | 5) Are you sitting on the floor?..... |
| 3) Are you eating something?.....           | 6) Are you feeling well?.....         |



## ཕྱི་ཚུན་ལྷན་པ། I DO/ WORK/ LIKE སྤྱིར་བཏང་དྭ་ལྟ་བུ།



They're looking at their books.

They read a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream.

He likes ice-cream.

སྤྱིར་བཏང་དྭ་ལྟ་བུ་བའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་པའི་སྤྱི་འགྲོ་ལོན་པ། བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་(es/ s) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|              |       |       |       |       |         |      |      |
|--------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|------|------|
| I/ we/ they/ | read  | like  | work  | live  | watch   | do   | have |
| He/ she/ it  | reads | likes | works | lives | watches | does | has  |

## ཡིད་འཛིག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ་ནི།

གལ་མེད་བྱེད་པ་པོ་དེ་གང་ཟག་གསུམ་པ་རྒྱུད་གང་ལ་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སྤྱི་བའི་པར་དུ་es དང་s སྤྱིར་བཏང་གོ།

➤ I **work** in a shop. **My brother works** in a bank. ( 'My brother work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

➤ **Linda lives** in London. **Her parents live** in Scotland. (parents ཅི་གང་ཟག་གསུམ་པ་འི་མང་གྲངས་ཡིན་པས་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སྤྱི་es/s སྤྱིར་བཏང་གོ།)

➤ **It rains** a lot in winter.

I ཡི་ཆེས་སུ་have དང་ he/ she/ it སྐགས་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སུ་ has འཛིག་དགོས།

➤ John **has** a shower every day.

es དང་ s ཡི་དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་སྐྱེད་ལ། ཟུར་བཞོན་ s ལ་སྟོས།

གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐར་-s/ -sh/ -ch སྐགས་ཡོད་ཆེ། དེ་དག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་-es བསྟོན་དགོས། pass- passes finish- finishes watch- watches

གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་སྟོན་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་གསལ་བཤད་ཡིན་སྐབས་ང་ཆོས་y དེ་i བསྟུར་ཆེས་es སྟོན་དགོས། study-studies try-tries

གཞན་ཡང་། do- does go- goes

ཁ་ང་ཆོས་སྤྱིར་བཏང་དྭ་ལྟ་བུ་བའི་ནམ་རྒྱུན་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའམ་ཡང་ན་རང་བྱུང་གི་བདེན་པའི་སྤྱི་འགྲོ་ལོན་པ་ལ་བཤད་སྟོན་

## བྱེད་དགོས།

➤ I **like** big cities.

➤ The shops **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5.30.

➤ Tim **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.

➤ The Earth **goes** round the Sun.

➤ We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.

➤ It **costs** a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

ག། always/never/often/sometimes/usually སྐགས་ང་ཆོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་སྤྱིར་བཏང་དྭ་ལྟ་བུ་བའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་བཤད་སྟོན་

## བྱེད་དགོས།

➤ Sue **always arrives** at work early. ( 'Sue arrives always' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

➤ I **usually go** to work by car but sometimes I **walk**. ( 'I go usually' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

➤ Julia **never eats** breakfast.



## གཤམ་ཁྱེ་

### 5.1 གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྩིས་སུ་ -s ཡང་ན་ -es སྟོན་དགོས།

- 1 (read) she **reads**..... 3 (fly) it..... 5(have) she.....  
2 (think) he..... 4 (dance) he..... 6(finish) it.....

### 5.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྩིས་eat/go/live/play/play/sleep སྟོན་པ་གོ་ལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. **He plays** the piano. 4. ....tennis.  
2. They .....in a very big house. 5. ....to the cinema a lot.  
3. ....a lot of fruit. 6.....eight hours a night.

### 5.3 boil/close/cost/cost/like/like/meet/open/speak/teach/wash སྟོན་པ་གོ་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

#### བཟོ་དགོས།

- Margaret **speaks** four languages.
- In Britain the banks usually.....at 9.30 in the morning.
- The City Museum..... At 5 o'clock in the evening.
- Tina is a teacher. She .....mathematics to young children.
- My joy is very interesting. I..... a lot of people.
- Peter.....his hair twice a week.
- Food is expensive. It .....a lot of money.
- Shoes are expensive. They .....a lot money.
- Water.....at 100 degrees Celsius.
- Julia and I are good friends. I..... her and she..... me.

### 5.4 གཤམ་ཁྱེ་སྟོན་ཁྱིམ་ནང་གི་གོ་རིམ་ནོར་བའི་ཆོག་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (always/ early/ Sue/ arrive) **Sue always arrives early.**
- (basketball/ I/ play/ often) I .....
- (work/ Margaret/ hard/ usually).....
- (Jenny/ always/ nice clothes/ wear).....
- (dinner/ we/ have/ always/ at 7.30).....
- (television/ Tim/ watch/ never).....
- (like/ chocolate/ children/ usually).....
- (Julia/ parties/ enjoy/ always).....

### 5.5 always/ never/ often/ sometime/ usually སྟོན་པ་གོ་ལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་སྟོན་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (watch television) **I never watch television. / I usually watch television in the evening.**
- (read in bed) I .....
- (get up before 7 o'clock).....
- (go to work/ school by bus).....
- (drink coffee).....



## ཐེ་ཚན་བྱུག་པ། I DON'T... ཟ෍ར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཆེག

### ༡ ཟ෍ར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཆེག་བཟོ་སྒྲུངས་ནི་གཤམ་གསལ་ལྟར།

don't/ doesn't + ལས་ཆེག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།



She doesn't drink coffee.



He doesn't like his job.

དགག་མིན་ཆེག་གྲུབ།

|      |       |
|------|-------|
| I    | work  |
| We   | like  |
| You  | do    |
| They | have  |
| He   | works |
| She  | likes |
| It   | has   |

དགག་ལྡན་ཆེག་གྲུབ།

|      |           |       |
|------|-----------|-------|
| I    |           |       |
| We   | do not    | work  |
| You  | (don't)   | like  |
| They |           | do    |
| He   |           | drink |
| She  | does not  | love  |
| It   | (doesn't) |       |

- I drink coffee, but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't work very hard.
- We don't watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn't rain very often.
- Gerry and Linda don't know many people.

### ཁ ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། (འདྲི་ཆེག་དང་དགག་ཆེག་ཁྲོད་དུ་བྱེད་པ་ལོ་གང་ཟག་གསུམ་པ་ཡིན་ཅུང་ལས་ཆེག་གི་ཇེས་སུ es དང་s བསྟན་མི་དགོས་)

I/we/you/they      don't...      I don't like football.  
He/she/it      doesn't...      He doesn't like football.

- I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. ('Fred don't like' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- My car doesn't use much petrol. ('My car don't use' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Sometimes he is late, but it doesn't happen very often.

### ག ང་ཆོས་ don't/doesn't + ལས་ཆེག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས།

- I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
- Sandra speaks Spanish, but she doesn't speak Italian. ('doesn't speaks' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Bill doesn't do his job very well. ('Bill doesn't his job' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Paula doesn't usually have breakfast. ('doesn't ...has' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)







## གསལ་སྒྱུར།

### 6.1 གསལ་སྒྱུར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་དག་གི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I play the piano very well.      | <u>I don't play the piano very well.</u> |
| 2. Jane plays the piano very well.  | Jane.....                                |
| 3. They know my phone number.       | .....                                    |
| 4. We work very hard.               | .....                                    |
| 5. He has a bath every day.         | .....                                    |
| 6. You do the same thing every day. | .....                                    |

### 6.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་like བེད་ཐུད་དེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |  |
| Do you like...?   | Bill and Rose   | Carol   | YOU   |
| 1 classical music?  | yes   | no  | ?   |
| 2 boxing?   | no  | yes   | ?   |
| 3 horror films?   | yes   | no  | ?   |

- Bill and Rose like classical music. Carol.....  
I .....classical music.
- Bill and Rose ..... Carol.....  
I .....
- .....

### 6.3 I never... or I don't...very often. སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (watch TV) I don't watch TV very often. (ཡང་ན་I never ཡང་ན་ I often)
- (go to the theater) .....
- (ride a bicycle) .....
- (eat in restaurants) .....
- (travel by train).....

### 6.4 don't/ doesn't གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་Cost/go/know/read/see/use/wear སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

#### ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I buy a newspaper every day but sometimes I don't read it.
- Paul has a car but he .....it very often.
- They like films but they.....to the cinema very often.
- Amanda is married but she .....a ring.
- I .....much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
- It's not an expensive hotel. It .....much to stay there.
- Brian lives near us but we .....him very often.

### 6.5 སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་སྒྱུར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་དག་མིན་དང་དག་ལྡན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་

#### ཀྱི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- Margaret speaks four languages –English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
- 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I .....' (know)
- Sue is a very quiet person. She .....very much. (talk)
- Jim.....a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
- It's not true! I .....it! (believe)
- That's a very beautiful picture. I .....it very much. (like)
- Mark is a vegetarian. He .....meat. (eat)





ཞི་ཚེན་བརྟན་ལ། DO YOU.....? སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདྲི་ཆེག

ག ང་ཚོས་ do/does གཉིས་ནི་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདྲི་ཆེག་གི་ནང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས།

དགག་མིན་ཆེག་གྲུབ།

|      |       |
|------|-------|
| I    | work  |
| We   | like  |
| You  | do    |
| They | have  |
| He   | works |
| She  | likes |
| It   | does  |

འདྲི་ཆེག

|      |      |        |
|------|------|--------|
| Do   | I    |        |
|      | we   |        |
|      | you  | works? |
|      | they | like?  |
| Does | he   | do?    |
|      | she  | drink? |
|      | it   |        |



ཁ ག་ཤམ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆེག་བཟོ་སྤངས་ལ་སློབ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད་དགོས།

Do/does + བྱེད་པ་ལོ + ལས་ཆེག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་

|           |      |              |       |                 |
|-----------|------|--------------|-------|-----------------|
|           | Do   | you          | work  | in the evening? |
|           | Do   | your friends | live  | near here?      |
|           | Does | Chris        | play  | tennis?         |
| Where     | do   | your parents | live? |                 |
| How often | do   | you          | wash  | your hair?      |
| What      | does | this word    | mean? |                 |
| How much  | does | it           | cost  | to fly to rome? |

always/ usually /often སྤྱིར་བཏང་གི་ནང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

|      |      |       |         |      |             |
|------|------|-------|---------|------|-------------|
| What | do   | you   | always  | have | breakfast?  |
|      | does | Chris | often   | play | tennis?     |
|      | do   | you   | usually | do   | at weekend? |

What do you do? = སྤྱོད་གྱི་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡིན་ཞེས་པའི་དོན་རྟེ། དཔེར་ན།

> 'what do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'

ག ཡིད་འཛིག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

Do + I/we/you/they...

Do they like music?

Does + he/she/it...

Does he like music?

ང སྤྱབས་བཤེད་འདྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

|      |                   |
|------|-------------------|
|      | I/we/you/they do. |
| Yes, | He/she/it does    |

|     |                     |
|-----|---------------------|
|     | I/we/you/they don't |
| No, | He/she/it doesn't   |

- > 'Do you play tennis?' 'No, I don't.'
- > 'Do your parents speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- > 'Does George work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- > 'Does your sister live in London?' 'No, she doesn't.'



## གཞི་རྒྱུ་

### 7.1 Do / does གཞི་སྒྲིལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1) I like chocolate. And <u>you</u> ?             | <b>Do you like chocolate?</b> |
| 2) I play tennis. And <u>you</u> ?                | .....you.....?                |
| 3) You live near here. And <u>your friends</u> ?  | .....?                        |
| 4) You speak English. And <u>your brother</u> ?   | .....?                        |
| 5) I do exercises every morning. And <u>you</u> ? | .....?                        |
| 6) Sue often goes away. And <u>Paul</u> ?         | .....?                        |
| 7) I want to be famous. And <u>you</u> ?          | .....?                        |
| 8) You work hard. And <u>Linda</u> ?              | .....?                        |

### 7.2 do/does བཞོལ་ནས་སྒྲིལ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ནམས་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. (where / live/ your parents?)           | <b>Where do your parents live?</b> |
| 2. (you / early / always/ get up?)         | <b>Do you always get up early?</b> |
| 3. (how often/TV/you / watch?)             | .....?                             |
| 4. (you /want/what/ for dinner?)           | .....?                             |
| 5. (like/you/football?)                    | .....?                             |
| 6. (your brother / like/ football?)        | .....?                             |
| 7. (what/ you/do/ in the evening?)         | .....?                             |
| 8. (your sister/ work/ where?)             | .....?                             |
| 9. (to the cinema/ often /you/go?)         | .....?                             |
| 10. (what/mean/this word?)                 | .....?                             |
| 11. (often/ snow/it/here?)                 | .....?                             |
| 12. (go/usually/to bed/ what time/you?)    | .....?                             |
| 13. (how much/to phone New York/it/cost?)  | .....?                             |
| 14. (you/for breakfast/have/usually/what?) | .....?                             |

### 7.2 do/do/enjoy/go/like/ start/teach/ work སྒྲིལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གཞི་སྒྲིལ་ཆོག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



What do you do ?  
..... it?  
What time.....in the morning?  
.....on Saturdays?  
How .....to work?  
And your husband. What .....?  
What .....?  
.....his job?

I work in a bookshop.  
It's OK.  
At 9 o'clock.  
Sometimes.  
Usually by bus.  
He's a teacher.  
Science.  
Yes, he loves it.



### 7.4 གཞི་སྒྲིལ་གྱི་བར་སྒྲིལ་བའི་བྱིས་ལན་འདྲི་བསྒྲིལ་དགོས།

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Do you watch TV a lot?             | <b>No, I don't. Or Yes, I do.</b> |
| 2. Do you live in a big city?         | .....                             |
| 3. Do you often ride a bicycle?       | .....                             |
| 4. Does it rain a lot where you live? | .....                             |
| 5. Do you play the piano?             | .....                             |





ཟླ་ཚུན་བརྟུང་བ། I AM DOING དང་ I DO ཟླ་བརྟུང་ད་ལྟ་དང་ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

༡༡

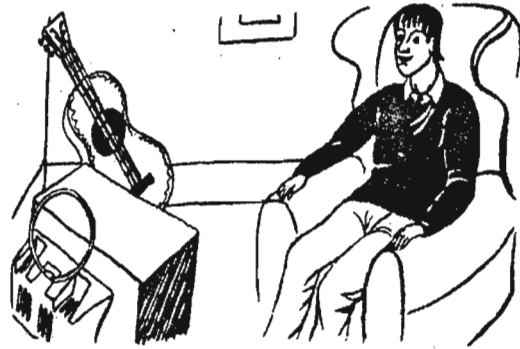
ད་ལྟ་ཅེས་གྲིས་བརྟུན་འཕྲིན་ལ་ལྟ་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་ལས། བེ་མའ་  
ད་ལྟ་ལྟུང་མེད། ཡིན་ནའང་། བེ་མའ་ཟུན་ཁོས་བེ་མའ་ད་ལྟ་ལ་ཞིང་།  
བེ་མའ་ད་ལྟ་ལ་བའི་ལག་རྩལ་ལ་ཏ་ཅང་བྱང་ཡོད།

Jim plays the guitar

But he is **not** playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn't. ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. ཟླ་བརྟུང་ད་ལྟ།



ཁ ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་བྱང་བཞིན་པ་འཕྲུབ་བཞིན་པའི་  
གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

I am doing

འདས་པ་ \_\_\_\_\_ ད་ལྟ་བ་ \_\_\_\_\_ མ་འོངས་པ།

- Please be quiet. I'm working. ('I work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Tom is having a shower at the moment. ('Tom has' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you doing.

ག ཟླ་བརྟུང་ད་ལྟ་བ་ནི་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་ནམ་ཟུན་བྱང་བཞིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

I do

འདས་པ་ \_\_\_\_\_ ད་ལྟ་བ། \_\_\_\_\_ མ་འོངས་པ།

- I work every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
- Tom has a shower every morning.
- It rains a lot in spring.
- I don't watch television very often.
- What do you usually do at the weekend?

ང ང་ཚོས་ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྐབས་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་འདི་དག་གི་རྗེས་སུ་ing བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་

རུང་བར་ཐད་ཀར་ཟླ་བརྟུང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་རྣམ་པ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

|        |        |      |      |            |          |
|--------|--------|------|------|------------|----------|
| Like   | love   | want | know | understand | remember |
| depend | Prefer | hate | need | mean       | believe  |
|        |        |      |      |            | forget   |

- I'm tired. I want to go home. ('I'm wanting' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I don't remember her name.'
- I don't understand. What do you mean?







## སྒྲིམ་ཆ་དགུ་བ། I HAVE.../I'VE GOT...

༡ I have ཡང་ན I've got, he has ཡང་ན he's got ཞེས་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ་དེའི་དོན་ཡོད་པའམ་མངའ་བའི་དོན།

|      |      |
|------|------|
| I    |      |
| We   |      |
| You  | have |
| They |      |
| He   |      |
| She  | has  |
| It   |      |

|      |          |             |
|------|----------|-------------|
| I    |          | I've got    |
| We   | have got | we've got   |
| You  |          | you've got  |
| They |          | they've got |
| He   |          | he's got    |
| She  | has got  | she's got   |
| It   |          | it's got    |



- I've got blue eyes. (ཡང་ན་I have blue eyes.)
- Tim has got two sisters. (ཡང་ན་Tim has two sisters.)
- Our car has got four doors.
- Diane isn't feeling well. She's got a headache. (she's got = she has got)
- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.

## བ། I haven't got/ have you got? སྐད་གསུང་དག་ཆོག་དང་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྟངས།

དག་གི་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

འདྲི་ཆོག

སྟབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + have not + got + བྱ་ལྟ།

have + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + got + བྱ་ལྟ།

yes/ no + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + have not + བྱ་ལྟ།

|      |           |     |
|------|-----------|-----|
| I    |           |     |
| We   | have not  |     |
| You  | (haven't) |     |
| They |           | got |
| He   | has not   |     |
| She  | (hasn't)  |     |
| It   |           |     |

|      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
|      | I    |      |
|      | we   |      |
| Have | you  |      |
|      | they | got? |
|      | he   |      |
| Has  | she  |      |
|      | it   |      |

|      |      |          |
|------|------|----------|
| Yes, | I    | have.    |
| No,  | we   | haven't. |
|      | you  |          |
|      | they |          |
| Yes, | he   | has      |
| No,  | she  | hasn't   |
|      | it   |          |

- I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harris haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

## ག། I don't have / do you have? སྐད་གསུང་གྱི་བཞོལ་སྟངས།

དག་གི་ཆོག་དང་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནང་དུ་do / does གཉིས་བཤད་སྟེ་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- They don't have any children. (=they haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (=it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (=how much money have you got?)



## གསལ་བྱུང་།

### 9.1 གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཆོག་དག་གི་བསྟུན་འབྲེལ་ལྟ་པ་ལྟོས།

1. we have got **we've got**      3. they have got.....      5. it has got.....
2. he has got.....      4. she has not got.....      6. I have not got.....

### 9.2 སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ལྟ་བུ་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (you/ an umbrella?)      **Have you got an umbrella?**
2. ( you/ a passport?)      .....
3. (your/ father/ a car?)      .....
4. (Carol/ many friend?)      .....
5. (you/ any brothers or sisters?) .....
6. (how much money/ we?)      .....
7. (what/ kind of car/ Julia?)      .....

### 9.3 བོ་རྒྱལ་ལ་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡོད། བྱིད་ལ་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡོད། རི་མོ་ལ་ཅི་ཞིག་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་བོ་རྒྱལ་དང་བྱིད་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. (a camera) **Tina has got a camera. I've got (or I have got) a camera.**
2. (a bicycle) Tina.....
3. (long hair).....
4. (brothers/ sisters).....

### 9.4 have got ('ve got)/ has got (s' got)/ haven't got / hasn't got སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

#### བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Sarah **hasn't got** a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They **ve got** three dogs and two cats.
3. Charles isn't happy. He .....a lot of problems.
4. They don't read much. They .....many books.
5. What's wrong?' 'I .....something in my eye.'
6. 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know . I .....it.'
7. Julia wants to go to the concert but she.....a ticket.

### 9.5 have/has got/haven't/hasn't got སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལྟ་བུ་ལྟོས་ཆ་སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                  |             |           |                 |
|------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|
| A lot of friends | four wheels | six legs  | a               |
| <b>headache</b>  |             |           |                 |
| a toothache      | a key       | much time | <b>a garden</b> |

1. I'm not feeling very well. I've got a headache.
2. It's nice house but it has not good a garden.
3. Most cars.....
4. Everybody likes Tom. He .....
5. I'm going to the dentist this morning. I .....
6. He can't open the door. He .....
7. An insect.....
8. We must hurry. We .....

ཐེ་ཚན་བརྟུ་བ། WAS/ WERE

१



ད་ལྟ་བུའི་ཤིས་ནི་ཁོའི་ལས་ཤག་རྩ་ཡོད་ལ།  
མདང་གི་མཚན་གུང་ཁོ་ལས་ཀར་སྐྱབ་མེད་

He was in bed.

He was asleep.

Am/is རི་ད་ལྷ་བ་ཡིན། was རི་འདས་བ་ཡིན།

- I am tired. (དེ་ལྟ་བུ)
  - Where is Ann?(དེ་ལྟ་བུ)
  - The weather is good today.
- I was tired last night. (འདས་པ་)
- Where was Ann yesterday? (འདས་པ་)
- The weather was good last week.

Are བོད་ལྟ་བུ་ཡིན། were བོད་འདས་པ་ཡིན།

- You are late. (དེ་ལྟར་ལྟོ་ལྟོ)      You were late yesterday. (འདྲེན་ལྟོ་ལྟོ)
- They aren't here.      They weren't here last Sunday.

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་ལྟར།

དགག་ལྷན་ཆེན་ལྷན།

১৭৪৭

ཕྱིར་བཤོ + were/was + བྱ་བའི་ཕྱུག། ཕྱིར་བཤོ + were/ was not + བྱ་བའི་ཕྱུག། Was / were + ཕྱིར་བཤོ + བྱ་བའི་ཕྱུག།

|                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| you<br>we<br>they    | <b>were</b> |
| I<br>He<br>She<br>It | <b>was</b>  |

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| We<br>You<br>They    | were not<br>(weren't) |
| I<br>He<br>She<br>It | was not<br>(wasn't)   |

|      |                           |
|------|---------------------------|
| Were | we?<br>you?<br>they?      |
| Was  | I ?<br>he?<br>she?<br>it? |

- Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were hungry after the journey but we weren't tired.
- The hotel was comfortable but it wasn't expensive.
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why were you late this morning?

ག ལྟ་བུ་བདེའི་ངྷིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

Yes + ཅུད་པ་པོ་ was/ were + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།      No + ཅུད་པ་རྫོ་ was/were not + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|     |                    |
|-----|--------------------|
|     | I/ he/ she/ it was |
| Yes | we/ you/ they were |

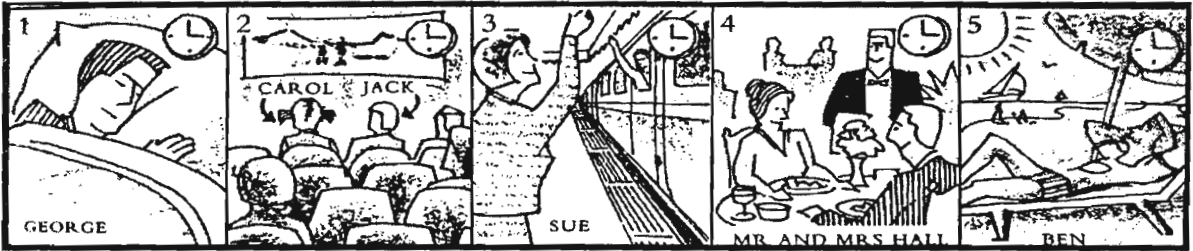
|    |                        |
|----|------------------------|
|    | I/ he/she/ it wasn't   |
| No | we/ you/ they weren't. |

- 'Were you late?' 'No, I wasn't.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he was.'
- 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'



## གཤམ་ལྷན་

10.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་མི་དེ་དག་ཁ་སང་ཕྱི་དྲོའི་དུས་ཚོད་གསུམ་གྱི་སྟེང་ས་གནས་གང་དུ་ཡོད་པ་ཤོད།



1. George was in bed.

4.....

2. Carol and Jack.....

5.....

3. Sue.....

6. And you? I .....

10.2 am/is/are ཡང་ན་ was/were བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟེང་ཆ་སྐོང་དགོས།

1. Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2. Today the weather.....nice, but yesterday it.....very cold.
3. I .....hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning but I .....very tired last night.
5. Where .....you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They .....very expensive.
7. I like your new jacket. ....it expensive?
8. This time last year I .....in Paris.
9. 'Where.....the children?' 'I don't know. They .....in the garden ten minutes ago.'

10. 3 was/were ཡང་ན་ wasn't /weren't སྐགས་བེད་སྤྱད་དེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn't very clean.
2. George.....at work last week because he.....ill. He's better now.
3. Yesterday.....a public holiday so the shops.....closed. They're open today.
4. '.....Sue and Bill at the party?' 'Sue.....there but Bill.....'
5. 'Where are my key?' 'I don't know. They .....on the table but they're not there now.'
6. You.....at home last night. Where .....you?

10.4 གཡམས་གྱི་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་དོན་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་was/were གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཡོན་གྱི་སྒྲུབ་ཁྱེད་ནང་གི་གོ་རིམ་ རྣམས་པའི་ཆོག་དག་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

(late/ you/ this morning/ why?  
Why were you late this morning?  
(difficult/ your exam?)

.....  
(last week/ where / Ann and Chris)

.....  
(your new camera/ how much ?)

.....  
(angry / you / yesterday/ why?)

.....  
(nice/ the weather / last week?)

.....

The traffic was bad.

No, it was easy.

They were on holiday.

Sixty pounds.

Because you were late.

Yes., it was beautiful.



ཐོ་ཆེན་བཏུ་གཅིག WORKED / GOT / WENT སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།

ག

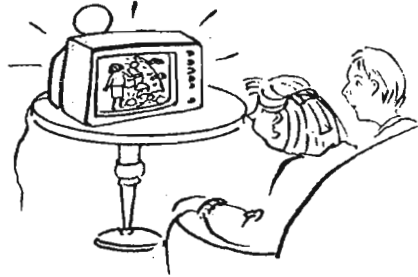
They watch television every evening. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་པ)

They watched television yesterday evening. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ)

སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་སྟངས་ཀྱི་སྤྱི་འགྲེས་ནི།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་+ ལས་ཆོག་འདས་པ་+ བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| I/we/you/they/he/she/it | watched |
|-------------------------|---------|



ཁ གལ་ཏེ་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དེ་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་ཡིན་ཆོ། ང་ཆོས་

ངེས་པར་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་དེའི་རྗེས་སུ་+ ed རྩོན་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Work \_\_\_\_\_ worked      clean \_\_\_\_\_ cleaned      start \_\_\_\_\_ started

Stay \_\_\_\_\_ stayed      arrive \_\_\_\_\_ arrived      dance \_\_\_\_\_ danced

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- Terry worked in a bank from 1986 to 1993.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.
- We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people.
- The party finished at midnight.

གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་སྟངས། (ཟུར་བཞོད་5 ལ་སྟོན་)

Try \_\_\_\_\_ tried      study \_\_\_\_\_ studied      copy \_\_\_\_\_ copied

stop \_\_\_\_\_ stopped      plan \_\_\_\_\_ planned

ག གཟུགས་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྗེས་སུ་ཐང་ཀར་+ ed བསྒྲན་མི་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

|                     |                     |                  |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| begin _____ began   | fall _____ fell     | leave _____ left | sell _____ sold     |
| break _____ broke   | find _____ found    | lose _____ lost  | sit _____ sat       |
| bring _____ brought | fly _____ flew      | make _____ made  | sleep _____ slept   |
| build _____ built   | forget _____ forgot | meet _____ met   | speak _____ spoke   |
| buy _____ bought    | get _____ got       | pay _____ paid   | stand _____ stood   |
| catch _____ caught  | give _____ gave     | put _____ put    | take _____ took     |
| come _____ came     | go _____ went       | read _____ read  | tell _____ told     |
| do _____ did        | have _____ had      | ring _____ rang  | think _____ thought |
| drink _____ drank   | hear _____ heard    | say _____ said   | win _____ won       |
| eat _____ ate       | know _____ knew     | see _____ saw    | write _____ wrote   |

- I usually get up early but this morning I got up at 9.30.
- We did a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.
- Jim came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.



## གསལ་བྱུང་

### 11.1 གསལ་བྱུང་ལས་ཆོག་དག་གི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

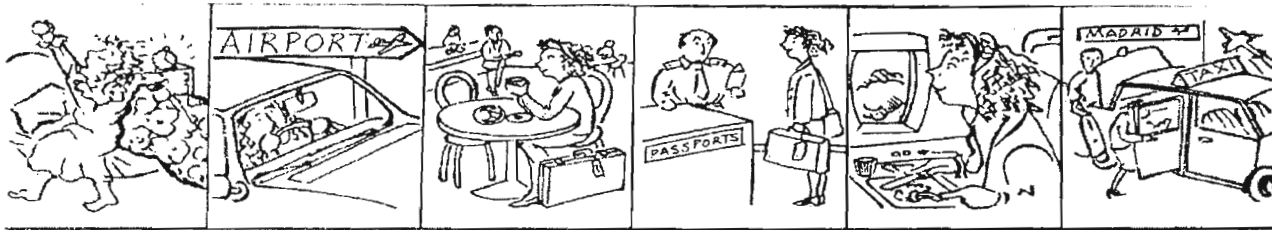
**clean die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want**

1. I **cleaned** my teeth three times yesterday.
2. It was hot in the room, so I .....the window.
3. The concert.....at 7.30 and .....at 10 o'clock.
4. When I was a child, I .....to be a doctor.
5. The accident.....last Sunday afternoon.
6. It's nice day today but yesterday it.....all day.
7. We.....our holiday last year. We .....at a very nice place.
8. Ann's grandfather.....when he was 90years old.

### 11.2 གསལ་བྱུང་ལས་ཆོག་དག་གི་འདས་པ་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

- |                            |              |              |               |
|----------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 get ... <b>got</b> ..... | 4 pay.....   | 7 go.....    | 10 know.....  |
| 2 see.....                 | 5 visit..... | 8 think..... | 11 put.....   |
| 3 play.....                | 6 buy .....  | 9 copy.....  | 12 speak..... |

### 11.3 ལེ་སྤྱོད་འགྲུལ་འཁུར་དུ་ཕྱིན་པའི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་སྒྲིམ་བྱེད་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་ཡང་ དག་པར་བཞུགས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་



(1 Fly, 2 get, 3 have, 4 leave, 5 drive, 6 arrive, 7 park, 8 go, 9 have, 10 go, 11 wait, 12 depart, 13 arrive, 14 take.)

Last Tuesday Lisa(1) **flew** from London to Madrid. She(2) .....up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) .....a cup of coffee. At 6.30(6)..... she (7).....the car and then (8).....to the airport café where she (9).....breakfast. then she (10).....through passport control and (11).....for her flight. The plane(12).....on time and (13).....in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14).....a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the center of Madrid.

### 11.4 གསལ་བྱུང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདི་དག་གྱི་རྒྱུ་བཟང་འདས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཞུགས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

- 1 Jim always goes to work by car. Yesterday **he went to work by car.**
- 2 Rachel often loses her keys. She .....last week.
- 3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She .....yesterday evening.
- 4 I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I .....
- 5 We usually go to the cinema on Sundays. Last Sunday we .....
- 6 I eat an orange every day . yesterday I .....
- 7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he.....
- 8 Our friends come to see us every Friday. They .....last Friday.

### 11.5 ཁ་སང་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱས་པ་རྣམས་གསལ་བྱུང་སྒྲིམ་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་འགྲུལ་བྱེད་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 1 I <b>played volleyball yesterday.</b> | 2 ..... |
| 3 .....                                 | 4 ..... |
| 5 .....                                 | 6 ..... |



ཟླ་ཚེན་བཅུ་གཉིས་ལ། I DIDN'T... DID YOU ...? ཟླ་ར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ཚིག་

ག ང་ཚོས་ did བྱི་ཟླ་ར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ཚིག་ནང་ཅུ་བཅུ་དྲུག་ཅེད།

ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས།

དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

དགག་མེད་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

འདྲི་ཚིག་

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པ་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + did not + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

did + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|       |
|-------|
| play  |
| start |
| watch |
| have  |
| see   |
| do    |
| go    |

|      |         |
|------|---------|
| I    | played  |
| We   | started |
| You  | watched |
| They | had     |
| He   | saw     |
| She  | did     |
| It   | went    |

|      |          |       |
|------|----------|-------|
| I    |          | play  |
| We   |          | start |
| You  |          | watch |
| They | Did not  | have  |
| He   | (didn't) | see   |
| She  |          | do    |
| It   |          | go    |

|     |      |        |
|-----|------|--------|
|     | I    | play?  |
|     | we   | start? |
|     | you  | watch? |
| Did | they | have?  |
|     | he   | see?   |
|     | she  | do?    |
|     | it   | go?    |

ཁ do/does བྱི་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་། did བྱི་འདས་པ་ཡིན།

- I don't watch television very often.
- I didn't watch television yesterday.
- Does she often go away?
- Did she go away last week?

ག ང་ཚོས་ did/ didn't ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཤོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

|           |           |                |  |
|-----------|-----------|----------------|--|
| I watched | ཡིན་ནའང་། | I didn't watch | ( 'I didn't watched' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) |
| they went |           | did they go?   | ( 'did they went?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)   |
| he had    |           | he didn't have |  |
| you did   |           | did you do ?   |  |

- I played tennis yesterday but I didn't win.
- 'Did you do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
- We went to the cinema but we didn't enjoy the film.

ང ཟླ་ར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་བརྩོ་སྤངས་ཀྱི་སྒྲི་འགྲེས་ནི།

Did + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|       |     |              |         |                    |
|-------|-----|--------------|---------|--------------------|
| What  | did | your sister  | phone   | you?               |
| How   | did | you          | do      | yesterday evening? |
| Where | did | the accident | happen? |                    |
|       |     | your parents | go      | for their holiday? |

ཅ སྒྲུབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

|      |                         |      |
|------|-------------------------|------|
| Yes, | I/we/you/they/he/she/it | did. |
|------|-------------------------|------|

|     |                         |         |
|-----|-------------------------|---------|
| No, | I/we/you/they/he/she/it | didn't. |
|-----|-------------------------|---------|

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'
- 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'



## གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

### 12.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་དགག་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 I saw Barbara but I didn't see Jane.
- 4 They worked on Monday but they .....on Tuesday.
- 5 We went to the post office but we.....to the bank.
- 6 She had a pen but she.....any paper.
- 7 Jack did French at school but he.....German.

### 12.2 did བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 I watched TV last night. And you? **Did you watch TV last night?**
- 2 I enjoyed the party. And you? .....
- 3 I had a good holiday. And you? .....
- 4 I finished work early. And you? .....
- 5 I slept well last night. And you? .....

### 12.3 ཁ་སང་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་སྒྲུབ་པ་ནམས་དགག་མིན་དང་དགག་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 (watch TV) **I watched TV. ཡང་ན་ Or I didn't watch TV.**
- 2 (get up before 7 o'clock) .....
- 3 (have a shower) .....
- 4 (buy a magazine) .....
- 5 (eat meat) .....
- 6 (go to bed before 10.30) .....

### 12.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཁ་བརྗེ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay win

|   |   |
|---|---|
| A: We went to New York last month.<br>B: Where <u>did you stay</u> ?<br>A: With some friends. | A: We came home by taxi.<br>B: How much.....?<br>A: Ten pounds.                 |
| A: I was late this morning.<br>B: What time.....?<br>A: Half past nine.                       | A: I'm tired this morning.<br>B: .....?<br>A: No, but I didn't sleep very well. |
| A: I played tennis this afternoon.<br>B: .....?<br>A: No, I lost.                             | A: We went to the beach yesterday.<br>B: .....?<br>A: Yes, it was great.        |
| A: I had a nice holiday.<br>B: Good. Where .....?<br>A: To the mountains.                     | A: The window is broken.<br>B: How.....?<br>A: I don't know.                    |

### 12.5 སྒྲོ་རྒྱུ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 We went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good. We didn't enjoy it. (enjoy)
- 2 Tim.....some new clothes yesterday -two shirts, a jacket and a pullover.(buy)
- 3 '.....yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)
- 4 The party wasn't very good, so we .....long. (stay)
- 5 It was very warm in the room, so I .....a window. (open)
- 6 'Did you go to the bank this morning?' 'No, I .....time.' (have)
- 7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How.....that?' (do)

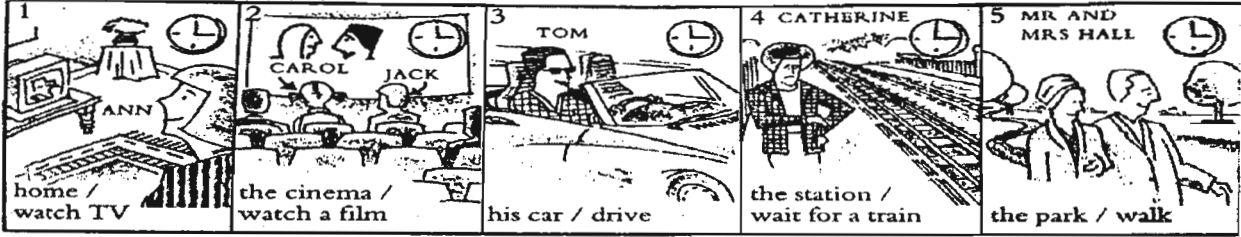






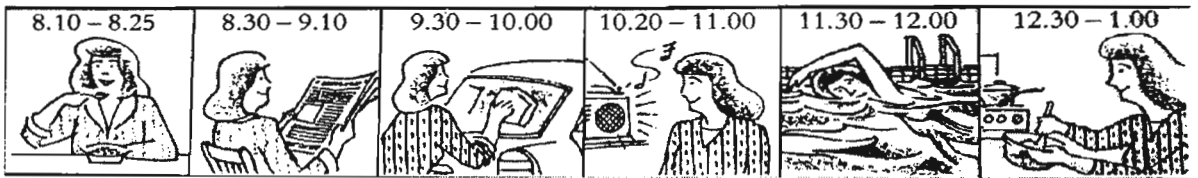
## གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

13.1 རིམ་འོ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཁ་སང་རྒྱུ་ཆོད་གསུམ་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད། རིམ་རེར་  
ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་རེ་འབྲི་དགོས།



- 1 Ann was at home. She was watching TV.
- 2 Carol and Jack..... They .....
- 3 Tom.....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 And you? I .....

13.2 སྐུ་མས་ཁ་སང་ཞིགས་པར་ཅི་ཞིག་སྒྱུབ་མིན་རིམ་བུ་བཞུས་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་རྒྱུ་ཆོད་དགོས།



- 1 At 9.45 She was washing her car.
- 2 At 11.45 she .....
- 3 At 9 o'clock.....
- 4 At 12.50 .....
- 5 At 8.15.....
- 6 At 10.30.....

13.3 was/were + ing སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་  
ནས་What/where/why སྐགས་ཀྱང་བཞོལ་ཆོག

(you/live) where were you living in 1990?  
(you/do).....at 2 o'clock?  
(it/rain).....when you got up?  
(ann/ drive).....so fast?  
(Tim/ wear).....a suit yesterday?

In London.  
I was asleep.  
No, it was sunny.  
Because she was in a hurry.  
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 རིམ་བུ་བཞུས་ནས་ཁ་སང་བྱི་རྩོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་དག་དགག་མིན་དང་དགག་ལུན་ཆོག་  
གྲུབ་གྱི་ནམ་པ་ལྟར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 (wear/a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
- (carry/ a bag) .....
- 3 (go/to the dentist).....
- 4 (eat/ an ice-cream).....
- 5 (carry/ an umbrella).....
- 6 (go/ home).....
- 7 (wear/ a hat).....
- 8 (ride/ a bicycle).....









ཟླ་ཆ་བྱ་བཞིན་པ། I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ། I DID ཟླ་བཏང་འདས་པ།



Jack was reading a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.



He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (ཟླ་བཏང་འདས་པ)

What was Jack doing when the phone rang?

He was reading a book.



(འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)

What did he do when the phone rang?

He stopped reading and answered the phone.

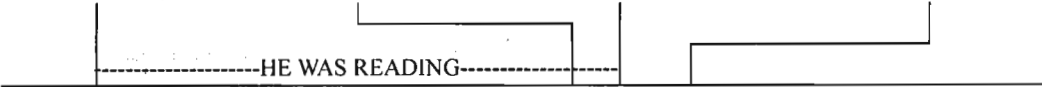


(ཟླ་བཏང་འདས་པ)

Jack began reading before the phone rang.

So: When the phone rang, he was reading.

He began reading      the phone rang      he stopped reading      he answered the phone.



ཁ ཟླ་བཏང་འདས་པ།

འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

- A: what did you do yesterday morning?  
B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

མགོ་བཅུག་པ།

མཇུག་ཐོག་པ།

རྒྱུ་ཆེད་ཀྱི་

རྒྱུ་ཆེད་ཀྱི་དང་ལོ་



We played

- Jack read a book yesterday. (མགོ་ནས་མཇུག་བར་)  
➤ Did you watch the film on TV last night?  
➤ It didn't rain while we were on holiday.

- A: what were you doing at 10.30?  
B: we were playing tennis.

མགོ་བཅུག་པ།

རྒྱུ་ཆེད་ཀྱི་བའི་ཆེད།



We were playing

- Jack was reading a book when the phone rang.  
➤ Were you watching TV when I phoned you?  
➤ It wasn't raining when I got up.

- I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.  
➤ It was raining when we went out. (=it started raining before we went out)  
➤ I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.  
➤ Jenny fell asleep while she was reading.



## གཤམ་ལྷན་

12.1 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆེག་དག་གྱི་བཏང་འདས་པའམ་འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་གཉིས་སུ་བསྒྱུར་ནས་  
གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



Carol **broke** (break) her arm last week. It .....(happen)  
when she.....(paint) her room.  
She .....(fall) off the ladder.



The train.....(arrive) at the station and  
Paula.....(get) off. Two friends of hers. John and  
Jenny,.....(wait) to meet her.



Yesterday Sue.....(walk) along the road  
when she .....(meet) Jim.  
He .....(go) to the station to catch a train  
and he .....(carry) a bag. They .....(stop) to  
talk for a few minutes.

12.4 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆེག་ནས་འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའམ་གྱི་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ནམ་པར་བསྒྱུར་ནས་  
གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- A: What **were you doing** (you/do) when the phone rang(ring)?  
B: I **was watching** (watch) TV.
- A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?  
B: Yes, she .....(study).
- A: What time .....(the post/ arrive) this morning?  
B: It.....(come) while I .....(have) breakfast.
- A: Was Margaret at work today?  
B: No, she.....(not/go) to work. She was ill.
- A: How fast.....(you/drive) when the police.....(stop) you?  
B: I don't know exactly but I .....(not/ drive) very fast.
- A: .....(your team/ win) the football match yesterday?  
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we.....(not/play).
- A: How .....(you/ break) the window.  
B: We.....(play) football. I.....(kick) the ball and it.....(hit) the window.
- A: .....(you/see) Jenny last night?  
B: Yes, she .....(wear) a very nice jacket.
- A: What.....(you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?  
B: I was asleep.
- A: I .....(lose) my key last night.  
B: How .....(you/get) into your room?  
A: I .....(climb) in through a window.



ཏྲེ་ཚུན་བཅོ་ལྷ་བ། I HAVE DONE ཡུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ། ༡

ד



His shoes are dirty.



He is cleaning his shoes.



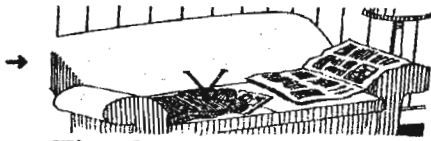
**He has cleaned his shoes.**  
(= his shoes are clean *now*)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have gone** out.  
(= they are not at home *now*)

༡ ཡུལ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བའི་ཆོག་ཡུལ་བཟོ་སྒྲུང་གི་སྤྱི་འགྲོ་ལ་ཞུ་ནི།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + has /have + ལས་ཆོག་སྟེ་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ (gone) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།

|      |   |                                 |          |
|------|---|---------------------------------|----------|
| I    | } | have ('ve)<br>have not(haven't) | cleaned  |
| We   |   |                                 | finished |
| You  |   |                                 | started  |
| They |   |                                 | lost     |
| He   | } | has('s)<br>has not(hasn't)      | done     |
| She  |   |                                 | been     |
| It   |   |                                 | gone     |

|      |                        |   |
|------|------------------------|---|
| Have | I<br>we<br>you<br>they | cleaned?<br>finished?<br>started?<br>lost?<br>done?<br>been?<br>gone? |
| Has  | he<br>she<br>it        |   |

གཡའ་རྟེན་མོས་བྱུང་བའི་ལས་མོས་ཀྱི་གཞུགས་མི་འདུག་པའི་ལས་མོས་ཀྱི་ཉ་རྒྱ་བས་ལས་མོས་དེའི་རྩིས་ལྷན་པ་དཔེ་ཆ་

**Clean---I have cleaned    finish---we have finished    start---she has started.**

གལ་ཏེ་མེད་པ་ལྟར་ན་ད་གི་ལས་མེད་ཀྱི་གཟུགས་འབྱུང་པ་དེ་ལས་མེད་ཡིན་ལྟ་བུ་ལས་ལས་མེད་དེ་འདས་པ་དེ་འདས་པ་ཤིང་རྒྱུད་ཁྱེད་དགས།

(ཟུར་བཀོད་ 2-3 ལ་སྟེས་)

**buy –bought/ I have bought      have ---he had/ he has had**

**break—I broke/ I have broken    see—you saw/ you have seen**

**Fall—it fell/ it has fallen      go—they went/ they have gone**

ག ར་ཚོ་ས་ལྷ་པ་མིན་ད་ལྟ་པ་ནི་འདས་མིན་པ་འདི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་གི་མཆུག་འབྲས་སྐྱེ་བའི་ཆགས་དེ་ད་ལྟ་ད་ལྟ་

ཐེབས་ཡོད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།


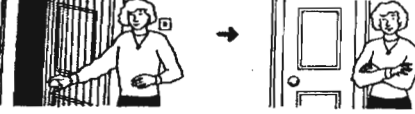
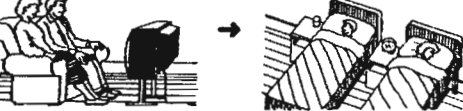



- I've lost my passport. (མཇུག་འབྲས་ནི་ད་ལྟ་དུང་ཆིང་མེད་པ་དེཨ།)
- 'Where's Linda?' 'She's gone to bed.' (མཇུག་འབྲས་ནི་ད་ལྟ་དུང་ཁོ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཕྱིང་དུ་ཡོད་པ་དེཨ།)
- We've bought a new car. (མཇུག་འབྲས་ནི་ད་ལྟ་དུང་ཆོར་རྒྱུང་ལོས་ར་གསར་པ་ཞིག་ཡོད་པ་དེཨ།)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present.
- 'Bob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?'
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it.



## གསལ་ཕྱད།

15. 1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་ནམས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

go to bed    clean his shoes    stop raining    close the door    fall down    have a bath

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
|    | He has <u>cleaned his shoes</u> |
|    | She .....                       |
|     | They .....                      |
|     | It.....                         |
|   | He .....                        |
|  | The .....                       |

15.2 གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Break    buy    decide    finish    forget    go    go    invite    see    not/see    take    tell

- 'Can I have this newspaper?' 'Yes, I've finished with it.'
- I .....some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
- 'Where is Lis?' 'She .....out.'
- I'm looking for Paula. ....you.....her?
- Look! Somebody.....that window.
- 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I .....her.'
- I can't find my umbrella. Somebody.....it.
- I'm looking for Sarah. Where .....she.....?
- I know that woman but I .....her name.
- Sue is having a party tonight. She .....a lot of people.
- What are you going to do?.....you.....?
- 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I.....them.'



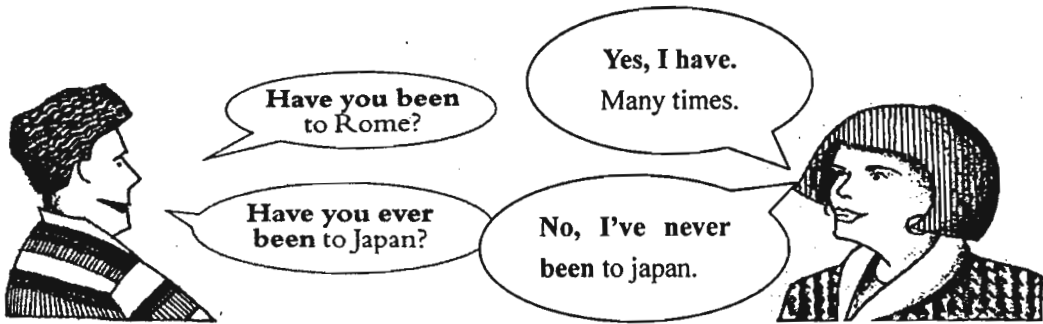






# ཞི་ཚེན་འཕྱ་བཟུང་བ། HAVE YOU EVER....? ཟུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ། ན

༧



ང་ཚོས་ཟུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདས་ཟིན་པའི་དུས་ཚོད་ནང་དུ་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་མགོ་བཙུགས་ཤིང་ད་ལྟའི་བར་དུ་ཐུན་མཐུད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་ཡང་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Have you ever been to Japan?

གནང་ནས་ད་བར་དུ་

འདས་པ་ \_\_\_\_\_ ད་ལྟ་བ་ \_\_\_\_\_

- 'Have you been to France?' (in your life) 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada but I haven't been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (twice = two times)

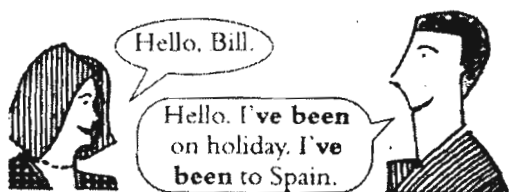
## ཁ ཟུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་གི་ནང་དུ་ ever བཀོལ་ལ། དགག་ཚིག་ནང་དུ་ never བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས།

- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.'
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I often play golf.'
- My mother has never traveled by air.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've never seen him before.'

## ག gone and been གཉིས་ཀྱི་བྱེད་པར།



Bill has gone to Spain.  
(=ད་ལྟ་ཁོ་ཞུ་པ་ན་ཡ་རུ་ཡོད་)



Bill has been to Spain.  
(=ད་ལྟ་ཁོ་ཞུ་པ་ན་ཡ་རུ་ཟིན་)

## བཞུགས་པ།

- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (=ད་ལྟ་གང་དུ་ཡོད་དམ)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

17.1 Have you ever... ཚོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་ཚུན་དུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཁ་བར་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. (London?) <b>Have you ever been to London?</b> | No, never.        |
| 2. (play/golf?) <b>Have you ever played golf?</b> | Yes, many times.  |
| 3. (Australia?) Have.....                         | No, never.        |
| 4. (lose/ your passport?).....                    | Yes, once.        |
| 5. (fly/ in a helicopter?).....                   | No, never.        |
| 6. (eat/ Chinese food?).....                      | Yes, a few times. |
| 7. (New York?).....                               | Yes, twice.       |
| 8. (drive/ a bus?).....                           | No, never.        |
| 9. (break/your leg?).....                         | Yes, once.        |

17.2 གཤམ་ཐུང་17.1 ཡི་ནང་གི་ལན་ལ་བཞུས་ཇེས་ཏེ་ལྟན་གྱི་སྐར་ཚོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (New York) **Helen has been to New York twice.**
- (Australia) Helen.....
- (Chinese food).....
- (drive/ a bus).....

ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ལས་ཀ་དེ་དག་ངེ་ལྟར་སྐབ་ཀྱིན་ཡོད་པ་ཚོག་གྲུབ་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (New York) I.....
- (play/tennis).....
- (fly/in a helicopter).....
- (be/ late for work or school).....

17.3 ལྷན་རས་ནི་ད་ལ་ལ་65 ཡིན་ལ། མོར་མཆོན་ན་མོར་དག་གི་མི་ཆེ་ནི་སྤྱད་གིས་ཁེངས་པའི་མི་ཆེ་ཞིག་ཡིན།

འདས་ཟིན་པའི་ལ་ལྷན་ནང་མོར་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་ཡོད། (ལོག་གི་རེད་ཟིག་ནང་གི་ཚོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།)

|        |       |
|--------|-------|
| have   | be    |
| do     | write |
| travel | meet  |

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| all over the world  | a lot of interesting things |
| many different jobs | a lot of interesting people |
| ten books           | married three times         |

- She has had many different jobs.**
- She.....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

17.4 gone / been གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་སྟངས་དགོས།

- Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's **gone** to Spain.
- 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I think she's.....to the bank.
- Hello, Sue. Where have you.....? Have you.....to the bank?
- 'Have you ever..... to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- My parents aren't at home this evening. They've.....out.
- There's a new restaurant in town. Have you.....to it?
- Ann knows Paris well. She's .....there many times.
- Helen was here earlier but I think she's .....now.





## གཤམ་སྒྱུར་།

### 18.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill is in hospital. She has been in hospital since Monday.
2. I know Sarah. I have known her for a long time.
3. Linda and Frank are married. They .....married since 1999.
4. Brian is ill. He .....ill for the last few days.
5. We live in Scott Road. We .....there for ten years.
6. Catherine works in a bank. She .....in a bank for five years.
7. Alan has headache. He .....a headache since he got up this morning.
8. I'm learning English. I .....English for six months.

### 18.2 How long..བཤོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Jill is on holiday.          | <u>How long has she been on holiday?</u> |
| 2. Mike and Judy are in Brazil. | How long.....?                           |
| 3. I know Margaret.             | How long.....you.....?                   |
| 4. Diana is learning Italian    | .....?                                   |
| 5. My brother lives in Canada.  | .....?                                   |
| 6. I'm a teacher.               | .....?                                   |
| 7. It is raining.               | .....?                                   |

### 18.3 དེ་མོར་བཤམ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས་ལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མཐུག་ཏུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ལས་གང་རུང་འཛིན་དགོས།

For ten minutes    all day    all her life    for ten years    since he was 20    since Sunday



1. They have been married for ten years.
2. She .....
3. They.....
4. The sun.....
5. She .....
6. He .....

### 18.4 བརྟན་ཤིག་ཆོང་བ།

1. Mark is / has been in Canada since April. **Has been** is right.
2. Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.
3. Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.
4. 'Sorry I'm late. How long are you / have you been waiting?' 'Not long. Only five minutes.'
5. Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job very much.
6. Linda is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.
7. How long do you live / have you lived in this house? 'About ten years.'
8. 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for long time.'
9. Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / has been there for the last three days.



ཆེན་བརྒྱ་དགུ་བ། FOR, SINCE དང་ AGO

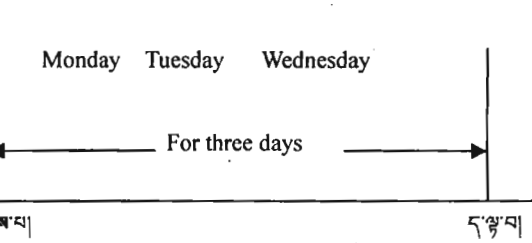
for དང་ since

ཆེས་ལས་ཀྱི་ཞིག་དུས་ཡུན་ཅི་ཙམ་གྱི་རིང་དུ་སྐབས་མིན་སྐར་སྐང་སྐབས་སུ་since/for བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད།

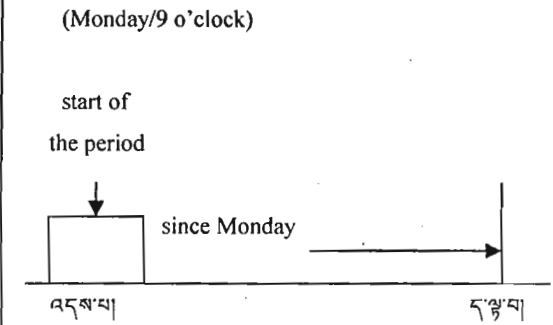
is in Ireland. She has been there { for three days.  
since Monday.

ཆེས་for ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་དུས་ཚད་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བཀོལ། since ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་ལས་མགོ་བརྩམས་པའི་དུས་ཚད་བཀོལ།

three days/two years)



| for        |             |
|------------|-------------|
| Three days | ten minutes |
| An hour    | two hours   |
| A week     | four weeks  |
| A month    | six months  |
| Five years | a long time |



| since     |                     |
|-----------|---------------------|
| Monday    | Wednesday           |
| 9 o'clock | 12.23               |
| 24 July   | Christmas           |
| January   | I was ten years old |
| 1985      | we married          |

Richard has been in Canada for six months.  
for six months (ཞེས་འབྲི་མེད་ཅུང་)  
We've been waiting for two hours.  
for (since two hours (ཞེས་འབྲི་མེད་ཅུང་))  
I've lived in London for a long time.

Richard has been in Canada since January. (=from January to now.)  
We've been waiting since 9 o'clock.  
(=from 9 o'clock to now)  
I've lived in London since I was ten years old.

ago = སྟོན་དུ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།

- > Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (=གསལ་འཁོར་གསུམ་གྱི་སྟོན་དུ)
- > When did Tom go out? Ten minutes ago. (=སྐར་ཆ་བརྒྱ་ཡི་སྟོན་དུ)
- > I had dinner an hour ago.
- > Life was very different a hundred years ago.

ཆེས་ago དང་མཉམ་དུ་འདས་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་བཤེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས།

དང་ for གཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

- > When did Jill arrive in Ireland?
- > She arrived in Ireland three days ago.
- > How long has she been in Ireland?
- > She has been in Ireland for three days.



## གཤམ་ལྷུང་།

19.1 for ཡང་ན་ since བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill has been in Ireland...since...Monday.
2. Jill has been in Ireland...for...three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia.....15 years.
4. Margaret is in her office. She has been there.....7 o' clock.
5. India has been an independent country .....1947.
6. The bus is late. We've been waiting.....20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty .....many years.
8. Mike has been ill.....a long time. He has been in hospital.....October.

19.2 ago བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ངི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. When was your last meal? Three hours ago
2. When was the last time you were ill? .....
3. When did you last go to the cinema? .....
4. When was the last time you were in a car? .....
5. When was the last time you went on holiday? .....

19.3 ago/ for གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆེག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་

བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill arrived in Ireland three days ago. (three days)
2. Jill has been in Ireland for three days. (three days)
3. Linda and Frank have been married.....(20years)
4. Linda and Frank got married.....(20years)
5. Dan arrived.....(ten minutes)
6. We had lunch.....(an hour)
7. Silvia has been learning English .....(six months)
8. Have you known Lisa.....( a long time)
9. I bought these shoes.....(a few days)

19.4 for ཡང་ན་ago གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill is in Ireland now. She arrived there three days ago. She has been there for three days.
2. Jack is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has.....
3. It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been.....
4. I know sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I've.....
5. I have a camera. I bought it in 1989. I've.....
6. They are married. They got married six months ago. They've.....
7. Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago. She has.....
8. Dave plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Dave has.....

19.5 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆེག་དག་ཆེག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མགོར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཁྱོད་རང་ཉིད་སྒྲིམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (I've lived).....
2. (I've been) .....
3. (I've been learning) .....
4. (I've known) .....
5. (I've had) .....





ཟླ་ཆོན་ཉི་ཤུ་ལ། I HAVE DONE གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་། I DID སྒྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།

༡ འདས་པའི་དུས་ཚིག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ང་ཚོས་ལས་ཆོག་འདས་པ་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

འདས་པ། + འདས་པའི་དུས་ཚིག་།

|            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| We arrived | yesterday.      |
|            | last week.      |
|            | at 3 o'clock.   |
|            | in 1991.        |
|            | six months ago. |

\_\_\_\_\_

|                  |
|------------------|
| འདས་པའི་དུས་ཚིག་ |
| yesterday        |
| last week        |
| six months ago   |

\_\_\_\_\_

འདས་པ།

ད་ལྟ་བ།

ང་ཚོས་གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་འདས་པའི་དུས་ཚིག་བཤམ་སྒྱུད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་། དཔེར་ན།

- I saw Paula yesterday. ('I have seen' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? ('where have you been?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We didn't have a holiday last year. ('we haven't had' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What did you do last night? I stayed at home.
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

སྒྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་ནི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་དུས་ནམ་ཞིག་ལ་ལས་མིན་སྐར་འདྲི་སྐབས་བཤམ་སྒྱུད་བྱེད།

- When did they arrive?(not 'When have they arrived?')

ཁ གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་སྒྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ།

I have lost my key.

(=I can't find it now.)

Bill has gone home.

(=He isn't here now)

Have you seen Ann?

ད་ལྟ་འོ་བར

འདས་པ།

ད་ལྟ་བ།

Have you ever been to Spain?

(=in your life, until now)

My friend is a writer. He has written many books.

The letter hasn't arrived yet.

We've lived in Singapore for six years.

(=we live there now.)

སྒྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།

I lost my key last week.

Bill went home ten minutes ago.

Did you see Ann on Saturday?

སྒྱིག་པའི་དུས།

འདས་པ།

ད་ལྟ་བ།

Did you go to Spain last year?

Shakespear wrote many plays and poems.

The letter didn't arrive yesterday.

We lived in Glasgow for six years but now we live in Singapore.



## གཤམ་ཁྱེད་

20.1 སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. Have you seen Ann? (5 minutes ago) **Yes, I saw her 5 minutes ago.**
2. Have you started your new job? (last week) Yes, I ..... last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? (at 5 o'clock) Yes, they.....
4. Has Sarah gone away? (on Friday) Yes,.....
5. Have you worn your new shoes? (yesterday) Yes,.....

20.2 འཕྲིད་ཐིག་བཀོད་ཡོད་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་འགྲིག་མིན་ལ་བལྟ་དགོས།

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it. **Right**
2. Have you seen Ann yesterday? **Wrong: did you see...**
3. I've finished my work at 2 o'clock. ....
4. I'm ready now. I've finished my work. ....
5. What time have you finished your work? ....
6. Sue isn't here. She's gone out. ....
7. Jim's grandmother has died in 1989. ....
8. Where have you been last night? ....

20.3 སྟོང་ཁྱིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་འདས་པའམ་འདས་པའི་འདས་པར་བཞོས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་

ཡང་དག་པར་བཞོ་དགོས།

1. My friend is a writer. He **has written** (write) many books.
2. We **didn't have** (not/have) a holiday last year.
3. I .....(play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time .....(you/go) to bed last night?
5. ....(you/ever/meet) a famous person?
6. The weather.....(not/be) very good yesterday.
7. My hair is wet. I .....(just/wash)
8. I .....(wash) my hair before breakfast this morning.
9. Kathy travels a lot. She .....(visit) many countries.
10. 'Is Sonia here?' 'No, she .....(not/ come) yet.

20.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་ཡང་ན་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ནམ་པར་བཞོ་དགོས།

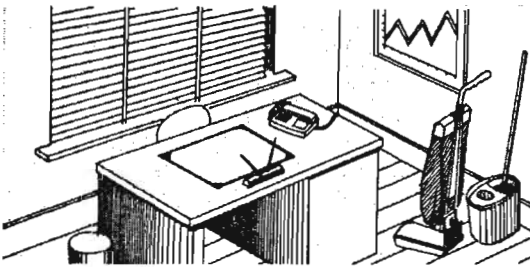
|   |   |
|---|---|
| A: have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida?     | Rose works in a factory. She .....(work) there for six months. Before that she.....                         |
| B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday to years ago. | (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She .....(work) there for two years but she .....(not/enjoy) it very much. |
| A: .....(you/have) a good time?                     |   |
| B: Yes, it.....(be) great.                          |   |
| A: Where's Alan?.....(you/see) him?                 | A: Do you know Martin's sister?   |
| B: Yes, he .....(go) out a few minutes ago.         | B: I .....(see) her a few times but I .....(never/speak) to her. ....( you/ ever/ speak) to her?            |
| A: And Julia?                                       |   |
| B: I don't know. I .....(not/ see) her.             | A: Yes. I .....meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.   |



སྒྲིལ་ཆེན་ཉེར་གཅིག་ལ། IS DONE དང་། WAS DONE གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ། །

། The office is cleaned every day. The office was cleaned yesterday.

རང་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་དང་གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པལ་ཚུན་བསྐྱར་བ།



Somebody cleans the office every day. (རང་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

The office is cleaned every day. (གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (རང་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

The office was cleaned yesterday. (གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

། གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་སྒྲིལ་འགྲོས་ནི།

བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་ + རྒྱུ་ཆེག་ལས་ཆེག་ + ལས་ཆེག་གི་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ + by + བྱེད་པ་པོ།

སྒྲིལ་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ།

སྒྲིལ་བཏང་འདས་པ།

Am/is/are (not)

Was/were (not)

Cleaned done

Invented built

Injured taken

གཞུགས་འཇུག་ལས་ཆེག་གི་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ནི done/built/taken སྒྲིལ་ལྟ་བུའོ།། ཟུར་བཀོད་2-3 ལ་སྒྲིལ།

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the phone invented?
- We weren't invited to the party last week.
- 'Was anybody injured in the accident?' 'Yes, two people were taken to hospital.'

། was/were born

- I was born in London in 1972. (I am born ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Where were you born?

། གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བྱེད་པ་པོ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས་ཆོ། ང་ཚོས་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མཆུག་ཏུ་བེད་

སྤྱད་བྱེད་ལ་དེའི་སྒྲིལ་ཏུ་ང་ཚོས་ངེས་པར་ཏུ་ by བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- We were woken up by a loud noise. (སྒྲིལ་དང་ཆོ་གཉིད་ལས་བསྐྱངས་སང་ཞེས་བའི་དོན་དུ་)
- The phone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1879.
- My brother was bitten by a dog last week.



## གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

21.1 སྒྲིམ་ཁང་གི་ཆེག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས། ཆེག་གྲུབ་1 ནས 7 བར་ད་ལྟ་བ་ཡིན།

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. (the office/ clean/ every day)    | <u>The office is cleaned every day.</u>   |
| 2. (these rooms/ clean/ every day?)  | <u>Are these rooms cleaned every day?</u> |
| 3. (glass/make/ from sand)           | Glass.....                                |
| 4. (stamps / sell/ in a post office) | .....                                     |
| 5. (this room/ not/ use/ very often) | .....                                     |
| 6. (we/ allow/ to park here?)        | .....                                     |
| 7. (how/ this word/ pronounce?)      | .....                                     |

ཆེག་གྲུབ་8 ནས 15 བར་འདས་བ་ཡིན།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 8. (the office/ clean/ yesterday)           | <u>The office was cleaned yesterday.</u> |
| 9. (the house/ paint/ last month)           | .....                                    |
| 10. (three people/ injure/ in the accident) | .....                                    |
| 11. (my bicycle/ steal/ a few days ago)     | .....                                    |
| 12. (when/ this bridge/ build?)             | .....                                    |
| 13. (you/ invite/ to the party last week?)  | .....                                    |
| 14. (how/ these windows / break?)           | .....                                    |
| 15. (I / not / wake up/ by the noise)       | .....                                    |

21.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་རྒྱུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. <u>This house built</u> 100 years ago.            | <u>This house was built...</u> |
| 2. Football plays in most countries of the world.    | .....                          |
| 3. Why did the letter sent to the wrong address?     | .....                          |
| 4. A garage is a place where cars repair.            | .....                          |
| 5. Where are you born?                               | .....                          |
| 6. How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?   | .....                          |
| 7. Somebody broke into our house but nothing stolen. | .....                          |
| 8. When was invented the bicycle?                    | .....                          |

21.3 གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་འདས་བ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་རྒྱུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

clean damage find give invite make show steal take

- The room is cleaned every day.
- I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital.
- Paper.....from wood.
- There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms.....
- 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It.....to me by a friend of mine.'
- Many American programmes.....on British TV.
- 'Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No, they .....but they didn't go.'
- 'How old is this film?' 'It.....in 1965.'
- My car .....last week but the next day it.....by the police.

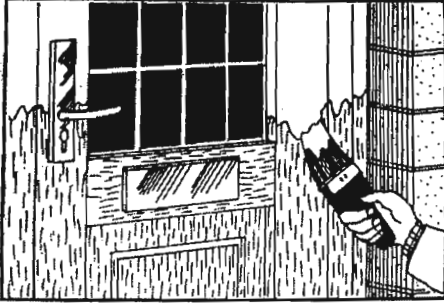
21.4 ཁོང་ཆོས་གནས་གང་དུ་སྐྱེས་བ་ཡིན།

- |                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (Ian/Edinburgh)       | <u>Ian was born in Edinburgh.</u> |
| 2. (Sally/Birmingham)    | Sally.....                        |
| 3. (her parents/Ireland) | Her.....                          |
| 4. (you/???)             | I .....                           |
| 5. (your mother/???)     | .....                             |



## ཐེ་ཚན་ཉེར་གཉིས་པ། IS BEING DONE AND HAS BEEN DONE. གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ། ༢

༧



གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞིན་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་ནི།

བྱ་བའི་ལྟལ་ + is/are being + ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ + by + བྱ་བ་པོ།

Somebody is painting the door. (རང་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་)

The door is being painted. (གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་)

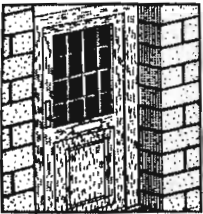
- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་བཟོ་བཅས་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་དོན་)
- Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་ཅིག་བཞིན་པའི་དོན་)

སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- The office is being cleaned at the moment. (བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་)
- The office is cleaned every day. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་བ་)
- In Britian football matches are usually played on Saturday, but no matches are being played next Saturday.

སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞིན་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་སྤངས་ལྗེ་ཚན་ 26, 28 ལ་སྟོན།

## ཁ གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་སྤྱི་འགྲོས་ནི།



BEFORE



NOW

བྱ་བའི་ལྟལ་ + has/have been + ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ + by + བྱ་བ་པོ།

Somebody has painted the door. (རང་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་)

The door has been painted. (གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་)

- My key has been stolen. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་བརྐྱས་པའི་དོན་)
- My keys have been stolen. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་དེ་དག་བརྐྱས་པའི་དོན་)
- I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (=ཁུ་ཞིག་གིས་ཀྱང་ང་འགྲན་དུ་མ་ཐོས་པའི་དོན་)
- Has this shirt been washed? (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་དེ་བརྐྱས་ཡོད་དམ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན་)

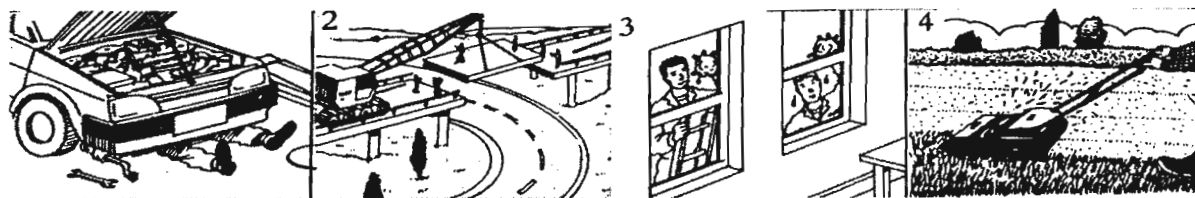
གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བུ་)
- The room was cleaned yesterday. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་)
- I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བུ་)
- My keys were stolen last week. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་)

གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཤད་སྟེང་བྱེད་སྒྲུབ་ལྗེ་ཚན་ 20 ལ་སྟོན།

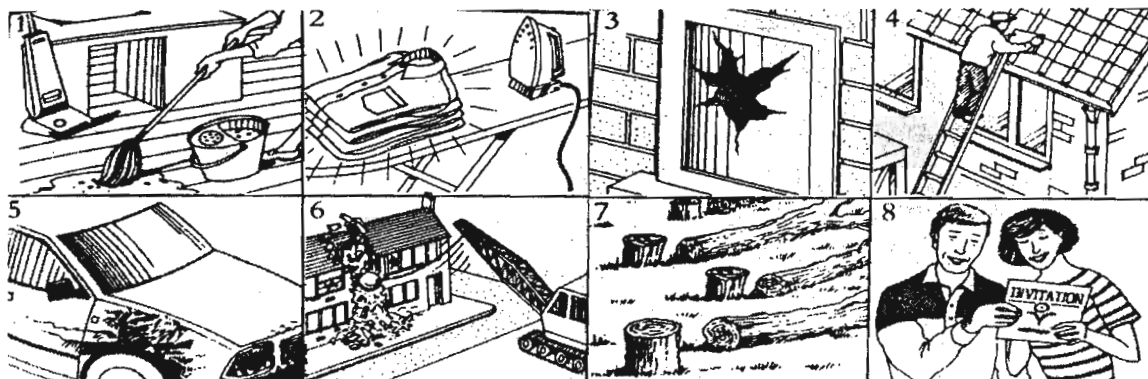
གཤམ་ལྷོད་

22.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་ཆིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1 The car **is being repaired**.                      2 A bridge.....
- 2 The windows.....                                      4 The grass.....

22.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གནས་ཚུལ་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱུང་བ་ཞིན་ཡོད་པ་འཕ་ཡར་ན་བྱུང་ཟིན་པ་དག (ལྷ་མཁན་དུ་ལྷ་པ་དང་ཚུར་བཏང་དུ་ལྷ་པ་གཉིས་བསྐལ་ནས་) ཟོག་སྒྲུབ་པ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- |    |                           |  |
|----|---------------------------|--|
| 1. | (the office/ clean)       | <b><u>The office is being cleaned.</u></b> |
| 2. | (the shirts / iron)       | <b><u>The shirts have been ironed.</u></b> |
| 3. | (the window /break)       | The window.....                            |
| 4. | (the roof/ repair)        | The roof.....                              |
| 5. | (the car/ damage)         | .....                                      |
| 6. | (the houses/ knock/down)  | .....                                      |
| 7. | (the trees / cut/down)    | .....                                      |
| 8. | (they/invite/ to a party) | .....                                      |

22.3 སྒོར་ཁྱིམ་ནང་གི་ཆེག་དག་པེད་ལྟུང་དེ་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་ཆུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས། (ཉིམ་ནི་21 དང་22 ལ་བརྟུལ་ནས།)

1. I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
2. We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited. (not/ invite)
3. The washing machine was broken but it's OK now. It .....(repair).
4. The washing machine.....(repair)yesterday afternoon.
5. A factory is a place where things.....(make).
6. How old are these houses? When.....(they/build)?
7. A: .....(the computer/ use) at the moment?  
B: Yes, Jim is using it.
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What.....(they call)?
9. Some trees.....(blow) down in the storm last night.
10. The bridge is closed at the moment. It.....(damage) last week and it .....(not/repair) yet.



**ཁྱེ་ཚེན་ཉེར་གསུམ་པ།** BE/HAVE/DO སྐད་སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་པའི་ནང་དུ་བཀོལ་སྤངས།

**be** (= am/is/are/was/were) ཡི་རྩེས་སྤྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ཡོད་ཆོ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྩེས་སྤྱི་ ing ལྷོན་དགོས། དཔེར་ན། cleaning

Am/is/are + -ing

(ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ) ཁྱེ་ཚེན།

3-4 དང་26 ལ་སྟོན།

- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- It isn't raining at the moment.
- What are you doing this evening?

Was/were + -ing

(འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)

ཁྱེ་ཚེན། 13

- I was working when she arrived.
- It wasn't raining, so we went out.
- What were you doing at three o'clock.

**be** ཡི་རྩེས་སྤྱི་ལས་ཆོག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཀོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

Am/is/are + past participle

གཞན་དབང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཕྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་ཁྱེ་ཚེན། 21

- The room is cleaned every day.
- I'm never invited to parties.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.

Was/were + past participle

(གཞན་དབང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཕྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ) ཁྱེ་ཚེན།

21

- The room was cleaned yesterday.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- How was the window broken?
- Where were you born?

**have/has** ཡི་རྩེས་སྤྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ཡོད་ཆོ་ལས་ཆོག་དེ་ངེས་པར་དུ་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ཡིན་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Have/has + འདས་པའི་འདས་པ

(གྲུབ་ཐོན་ད་ལྟ་བུ) ཁྱེ་ཚེན། 15-18

- I've cleaned my room.
- Tom has lost his passport.
- Barbara hasn't been to Canada.
- Where have Paul and Linda gone?

**do/does/did** ཡི་རྩེས་སྤྱི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Do/does + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས

ཕྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་དགག་ཆོག་དང་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཁྱེ་ཚེན། 6-7

- I like coffee but I don't like tea.
- Chris doesn't go out very often.
- What do you usually do at weekends?
- Does Barbara live alone?

Did + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས

ཕྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་དགག་ཆོག་དང་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཁྱེ་ཚེན། 12

- I didn't watch TV yesterday.
- It didn't rain last week.
- What time did Paul and Linda go out?



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

23.1 is/are/do/does སྟེང་གི་ཐ་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ཚུལ་ཆ་ཚུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Do</u> you work in the evening? | 6 Where <u>are</u> they going? |
| 2. Why .....you looking at me?        | 7 .....Bill live near you?     |
| 3. ....you like cooking?              | 8 .....the sun shining?        |
| 4. What time .....the shops close?    | 9 .....Ann working today?      |
| 5. What .....this word mean?          | 10 .....you feeling all right? |

23.2 am not/isn't/aren't/doesn't/don't སྟེང་གི་ཐ་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཚུལ་དགག་ཆོག་གི་ཆ་ཚུལ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Tom doesn't work in the evening.
2. I'm very tired. I .....want to go out this evening.
3. I'm very tired. I.....going out this evening.
4. George .....working this week. He's on holiday.
5. My parents are usually at home. They.....go out very often.
6. Barbara has traveled a lot but she...speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the TV. I.....watching it.
8. There's a party next week but we.....going.

23.3 was/were/did/have/has སྟེང་གི་ཐ་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ཚུལ་ཆ་ཚུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Where <u>were</u> your shoes made? | 6 .....you go out last night?       |
| 2. What .....you doing at 10.30?      | 7 where.....your mother born?       |
| 3. ....Barbara gone home?             | 8 What time.....she go?             |
| 4. When.....these houses built?       | 9 .....Jim arrived yet?             |
| 5. Why .....you go home early?        | 10 How long .....they been married? |

23.4 is/are/was/were/have/has སྟེང་གི་ཐ་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ཚུལ་ཆ་ཚུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Joe <u>has</u> lost his passport.      | 6 I.....just made some coffee    |
| 2. This bridge.....built ten years ago.   | Would you like some?             |
| 3. ....you finished your work yet?        | 7 Glass ...made from sand.       |
| 4. This town is always clean. The streets | 8 This is a very old photograph. |
| .....cleaned every day.                   | It .....taken a long time ago.   |
| 5. . Where .....you born?                 | 9 Joe .....bought a new car.     |

23.5 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ཆ་ཚུལ་ཐ་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ཚུལ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Damage eat enjoy go go away listen open pronounce rain understand use

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates: have you .....them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you .....it?
5. My car was badly .....in the accident but I was OK.
6. Chris has got a car but she doesn't .....it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has .....for a few days.
8. I don't.....the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Martin is in his room. He's .....to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it .....?
11. How do you .....this window? Can you show me?





ཐེ་ཚན་ཉེར་བཞི་བ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་དང་གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་

༡། གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་

གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་གི་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་-ed ལྟར་དགོས།

Clean —cleaned live—lived paint—painted study—studied

འདས་པ། (ཉེ་ཚན་11 ལ་སྟོན་)

- > I cleaned my shoes yesterday.
- > Charlie studied engineering at university.

འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།

གྲུབ་ཐོན་དུ་བཞུགས་པ་ have / has +ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་པ་ (ཉེ་ཚན་15-18 ལ་སྟོན་)

- > I have cleaned my shoes.
- > Jane has lived in London for ten years.

གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་ is/are/were/has been + ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་པ་ (ཉེ་ཚན་21-22 ལ་སྟོན་)

- > These rooms are cleaned every day.
- > My car has been repaired.

༢། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་

གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་གི་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་ -ed ལྟར་མི་ཚོགས་པ་དཔེར་ན།

|                |      |       |        |     |
|----------------|------|-------|--------|-----|
| འདས་པ།         | make | find  | buy    | cut |
| འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། | made | found | bought | cut |

ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། སྐབས་རེར་ལས་ཚིག་གི་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གཞུགས་གཅིག་པ་ཡང་ཡོད་དེ། དཔེར་ན།

|                |      |        |     |
|----------------|------|--------|-----|
|                | make | break  | cut |
| འདས་པ།         | made | broke  | cut |
| འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། | made | broken | cut |

- > I made a cake yesterday. (ཐུར་བཟང་འདས་པ་)
- > I have made some coffee. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གྲུབ་ཐོན་དུ་བཞུགས་པ་)
- > Butter is made from milk. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཞན་དབང་ཚན་གྱི་དུ་བཞུགས་པ་)

སྐབས་རེ་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གཞུགས་མི་འདྲ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

|                |        |       |       |      |
|----------------|--------|-------|-------|------|
|                | Break  | know  | begin | go   |
| འདས་པ།         | broke  | knew  | begin | went |
| འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། | broken | known | began | gone |

- > Somebody broke this window last night. (ཐུར་བཟང་འདས་པ་)
- > Somebody has broken this window. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གྲུབ་ཐོན་དུ་བཞུགས་པ་)
- > This window was broken last night. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཞན་དབང་ཚན་གྱི་འདས་པ་)



## གཤམ་སྒྱུར་།

### 24.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་གི་འདས་ཆོག་ཟློས་།

- 1 make **made** 2 cut **cut** 3 get..... 4 bring..... 5 pay..... 6 enjoy..... 7 buy..... 8 sit....  
9 leave..... 10 happen..... 11 hear..... 12 put..... 13 catch..... 14 watch..... 15 understand.....

### 24.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་གི་འདས་ཆོག་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ཟློས་།

- |                                    |            |         |
|------------------------------------|------------|---------|
| 1 break <b>broke</b> <b>broken</b> | 4 drink    | 7 speak |
| 2 begin                            | 5 drive    | 8 write |
| 3 eat                              | 6 run      | 9 come  |
| 10 know                            | 13 give    |         |
| 11 take                            | 14 throw   |         |
| 12 go                              | 15 forget. |         |

### 24.3 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (ལས་ཆོག་རྣམས་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ཆོག)

1. I **washed** my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has **broken** this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I .....very well last night. (sleep)
4. We ..... a very good film yesterday. (see)
5. It ..... a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6. I've .....my bag. (lose) Have you .....it?(see)
7. Rosa's bicycle was .....last week. (steal)
8. I .....to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you .....your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping center was .....about 20 years ago.(build)
11. Ann .....to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12. I've never.....a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I've .....her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I .....and .....my leg. (fall/hurt)

### 24.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་སྒྲིམ་ཆ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (ལས་ཆོག་རྣམས་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ཆོག)

cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win

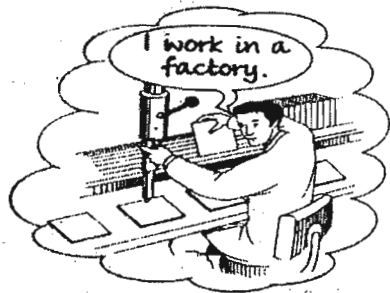
1. I have **made** some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you .....John about your new job?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we.....
4. I know Gary but I've never.....his wife.
5. We were ....by loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river and .....to the other side.
7. 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I ..... it was very good.'
8. Many different languages are .....in the Philippines.
9. Our holiday.....a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you ever .....a very fast car.
11. All the tickets for the concert were ..... very quickly.
12. A bird.....in through the open window while we were having our dinner.



ཕ་ཚེན་ཉིད་ལྔ་བ། I USED TO.....

५

ལ་ཤམ་རྩོད་གྱི་ལྷ་བའེ།

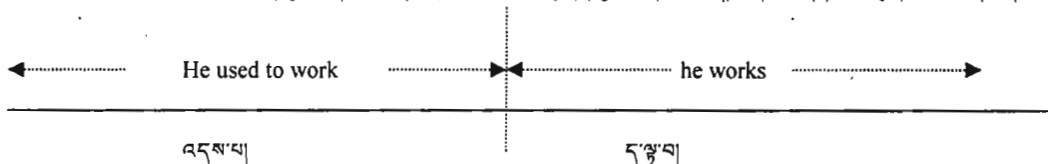


ད་ལྟའི་དུས་ཀྱི་སྤྱོད་པ་ལྟེ།



**Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.**

Dave used to work in a factory. རྟེན་སྲིད་པའི་ནང་སྐབས་ལོ་མང་གི་ཞིག་རྒྱ་ལས་ཀ་ལས་མོད། འོན་ཏུང་ད་ལྟོ་མང་གི་ཕྱིན་མེད་པའི་དོན་ནི།



བ ར་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚོགས་ལྟེ། I used to work...../she used to have .....they used to be...

|                             |         |                            |
|-----------------------------|---------|----------------------------|
| I/you/we/they/<br>he/she/it | Used to | Be<br>Work<br>Have<br>Play |
|-----------------------------|---------|----------------------------|

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we often used to see them. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Ann used to have a piano but she sold it a few years ago.

**used to** ཡི་དགག་ཆེག་ནི **didn't use to** ཡིན།

- When I was a child I didn't use to like tomatoes.

**Used to** ཡི་འདྲི་ཚེག་ནི **did you use to** ཡིན།

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

ག ར་ཆོས་<sup>used to</sup> ཞི་འདས་པ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བརྟེན་ཕྱིན་པ་ལས་ད་ལྟ་བར་བརྟེན་ཕྱིན་མི་ཏུ་།

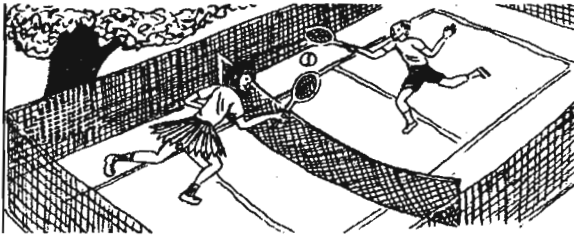
- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (I use to play golf ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We usually get up early. (we use to get up early ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)





# ཟླ་ཚེན་ཉེར་བྱུག་པ། WHAT ARE YOU DOING TOMORROW?

ག



They are playing tennis (ད་ལྟ་བུ་).



He is playing tennis tomorrow.

ང་ཚོས་**am/is/are** + ལས་ཆོག་ + **ing** (get + ing = getting) འི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ད་ལྟ་དང་སྐབས་བཞིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་ཆུང་བྱེད།

- Where are Sue and Caroline? They're playing tennis in the park.
- Please be quite. I'm working.

གཞན་ང་ཚོས་ད་དུང་**am/is/are** + ལས་ཆོག་ + **ing** འི་མ་འོངས་པར་བཤད་ཆུང་བྱས་ཆོག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm not working next week.

## ཁ I am doing something tomorrow འི་མ་འོངས་པའི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་བཞོད་སྒྲིག་བྱས་ཟིན་པའམ་ཡང་ན་འཆར་གཞི་

བཅོས་ཚར་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཞོལ།

- Alice is going to the dentist on Friday. (= she has an appointment to see the dentist)
- We're having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting tomorrow evening?
- I'm not going out tonight. I'm staying at home.

གཞན་ཚིང་གྱི་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཟེ། **'I'm going to do something'** (ཞིབ་ཐོར་ལྟེ་ཚན་27 ལ་སྟོན།)

## ག འཆར་གཞིའམ་བཞོད་སྒྲིག་བྱས་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པའི་ལས་ཀར་ང་ཚོས་སྒྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བཞོལ་མི་ཆོག

- I'm staying at home this evening. (I stay ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)
- Are you going out tonight? (do you go ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)
- Ann isn't coming to the party next week. (Ann doesn't come ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)

གཞན་ཡང་། ང་ཚོས་སྐད་ཀྱི་འཁོར་རམ་མེ་འཁོར་སྐབས་ཀྱི་འབྲུལ་བཞུད་ཀྱི་དུས་ཚིང་གཏན་འཁེལ་བྱས་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་སྒྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བཞོལ་ཆོག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- The train arrives at 7:30.
- What time does the film finish?

བསྐྱར་བ།

|  |  |
|--|--|
| ང་ཚོས་མི་ལ་ད་ལྟ་བཞིན་པ་བཤད་ཆུང་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན། | ང་ཚོས་དུས་ཚིང་དམ་ལེ་ཚན་སྐབས་ལ་སྒྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བཤད་ཆུང་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན། |
| ➤ I'm going to a concert tomorrow.             | ➤ The concert starts at 7.30.  |
| ➤ What time are you leaving?                   | ➤ What time does your train leave?                                     |



## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

26.1 རི་མོ་འཛིན་པ་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་གཟུང་ཆེས་མཐོང་གཟུང་པ་སངས་ཉིན་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྟུང་བ་རྒྱུ་འཆར་གཞི་ཡོད་པའི་སྐོར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་དགོས།

1 ANDREW



2 RICHARD



3 BARBARA



4 DENISE



5 TOM AND SUS



- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. <b>Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.</b> | 4 .....lunch with Ken. |
| 2. Richard .....to the cinema.                | 5 .....                |
| 3. Barbara.....                               |                        |

26.2 སྐོར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་མ་འོངས་པའི་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཅོ་དགོས།

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (you/go/out/tonight?)             | <b>Are you going out tonight?</b> |
| 2. (you/work/next week?)             | .....                             |
| 3. (what/you/do/tomorrow evening?)   | .....                             |
| 4. (what time/ your friends arrive?) | .....                             |
| 5. (when/Liz/ go/on holiday?)        | .....                             |

26.3 རྩིས་མཐོང་གཟུང་པ་སངས་ཉིན་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་རྒྱུ་འཆར་གཞི་ཡོད་མེད་སྐོར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་དགོས།

1. **I'm staying at home tonight.**
2. **I'm going to the theatre on Monday.**
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

26.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞིན་པའམ་ཡང་ན་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་ནམ་པར་བསྟུར་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

1. **Are you going** (you/go) out this evening? No, I'm too tired.
2. **We are going** (we/go) to a concert this evening. **It starts** (it/start) at 7.30.
3. Do you know about Sally?.....(she/get) married next month!
4. A: My parents.....(go) on holiday next week.  
B: Oh, that's nice. Where .....(they/go)?
5. Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course.....(finish) on Friday.
6. There's a football match tomorrow but .....(I /not/go).
7. ....(I /go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too?.....(we/meet) at John's house at 8 o'clock.
8. A: How .....(you/ get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?  
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus .....(leave) at midnight.
9. A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?  
B: Yes, what time.....(the film/ begin)?
10. A: What .....(you/do) on Monday afternoon?  
B: .....(I/work).



ཞི་ཚེན་ཉིད་བརྟན་པ། I AM GOING TO...

༡ I'm going to (do something)

ཞིགས་པར

དགོང་མོར



She is going to watch TV this evening.

ང་ཚོས་ ( am/is/are going to + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་ ) བྱི་མ་འོངས་པར་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

|                 |                |          |
|-----------------|----------------|----------|
| I am            | (not) going to | do...    |
| He/she/it is    |                | drink... |
| We/you/they are |                | watch... |

|                 |          |          |
|-----------------|----------|----------|
| Am I            | going to | buy...?  |
| Is he/she/it    |          | eat...?  |
| Are they/you/we |          | wear...? |

༢ I am going to do something བྱི་ད་ལྟ་འི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་མ་འོངས་པར་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ལས་རྒྱུ་འི་ཐག་གཅོད་གནང་

པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

I decided to do it \_\_\_\_\_ I'm going to do it \_\_\_\_\_

འདས་པ།

ད་ལྟ་བ།

མ་འོངས་པ།

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- Your hands are dirty. Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་བརྟན་གྱི་བྱས་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པར་བཞུགས་པ། དཔེར་ན། (ཞིབ་མོར་ཤེ་ཚན་ 26 ལ་སྟོས་)

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

༣ Something is going to happen བྱི་དོན་དེ་བྱུང་རྒྱུ་ཡིན་པའི་རྟགས་མཚན་ད་ལྟ་གསལ་པོ་ཡིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་

བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

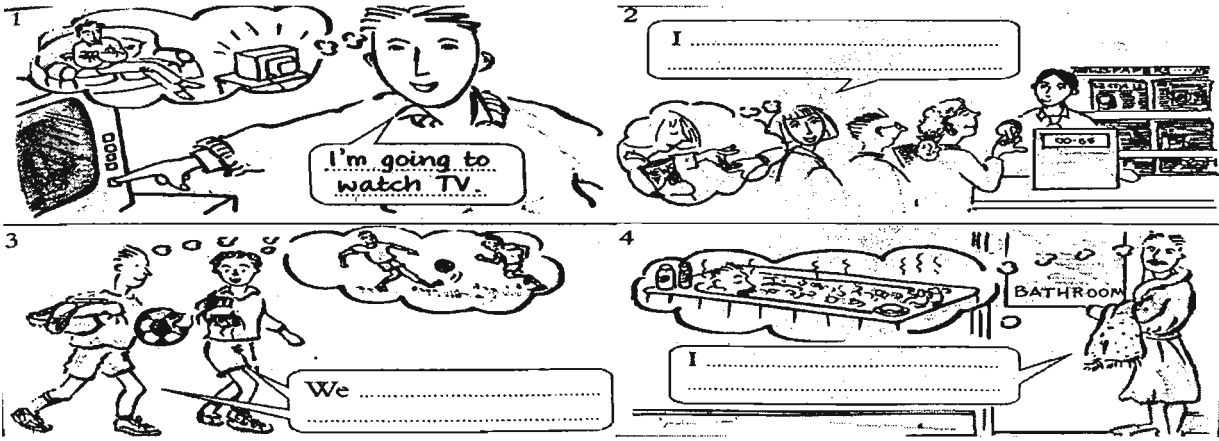
- Look at the sky! It's going to rain. (ད་ལྟ་ཐིན་ནག་འཕྲིགས་བཞིན་པའི་དོན་)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
- I'm going to be late. (ད་ལྟ་ཤ་སྐྱིག་བྱས་ཐེད་པས་ཇེས་ལུས་ཐེབས་དེས་བའི་དོན་)





# གཤམ་སྒྱུད།

27.1 རི་མོ་འོ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བཤད་ཀྱིན་ཡོད་པ་ཆོག་གྱུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

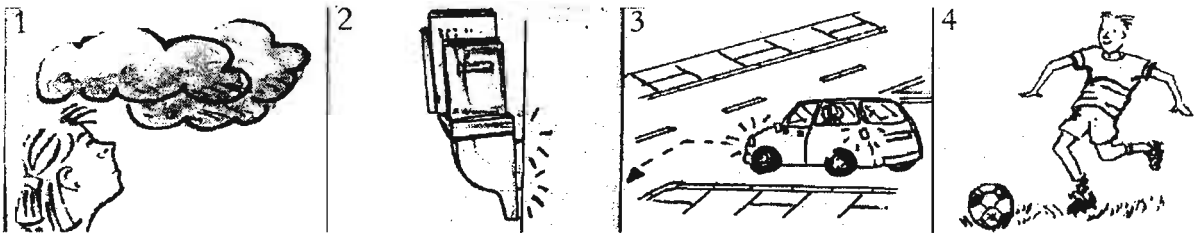


27.2 going to ཡི་རྩེས་སུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་གང་རུང་འོ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

eat do give lie down stay walk wash watch wear

1. My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2. What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3. I don't want to go home by bus. I .....
4. John is going to London next week. He.....with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I .....this sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We .....her a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She.....for an hour.
8. There's a good film on TV this evening. ....you.....it?
9. What .....Rachel.....when she leaves school?

27.3 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་མ་འོངས་པར་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་འབྱུང་གི་དམིན་སྟོར་ཆོག་གྱུ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1 It's going to rain.
- 2 The shelf .....
- 3 The car.....
- 4 He.....

27.4 སྟོང་ཀྱིས་དེ་རིང་ངམ་ཡང་ན་སང་ཉིན་ཅི་ཞིག་སྒྱུ་རྒྱུ་འཆར་གཞི་ཡོད་མེད་སྟོར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྱུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 I'm.....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....





## མེ་ཚན་ཉེར་བརྒྱད་པ། SHALL / WILL 7

༡



སྤར་ནི་ནམ་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཀར་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ཡོད་ལ། ཁོ་མོས་  
རྒྱུ་དུ་ཞོགས་པའི་ཆུ་ཚོད་ 8:30 ནས་ཕྱི་དྲོ་ 4:30 བར་ལས་  
ཀ་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད།

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

Will + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

|                             |                     |      |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|------|
| I/we/you/<br>they/he/she/it | will ('ll)          | be   |
|                             | will not<br>(won't) | win  |
|                             |                     | eat  |
|                             |                     | come |

|      |                             |       |
|------|-----------------------------|-------|
| will | I/we/you/<br>they/he/she/it | be?   |
|      |                             | win?  |
|      |                             | eat?  |
|      |                             | come? |

'll གི་will ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམས་ཡིན། I'll གི་I will ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམས་ཡིན། you'll /she'll སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བཞིན་ནོ།

won't གི་will not ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམས་ཡིན། I won't གི་I will not ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམས་ཡིན། you won't / she won't སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བཞིན་ནོ།

ཁ ང་ཚོས་ will གི་མ་འོངས་པར་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། (tomorrow/ next week སྐད་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་མ་འོངས་པ་སྟོན་པའི་དུས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞོལ།)

- > Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- > You can phone me this evening. I'll be at home.
- > Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- > We'll probably go out this evening.
- > Will you be at home this evening?
- > I won't be here tomorrow. (=I will not be here)
- > Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

ནམ་རྒྱུ་དང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཟེ། I think... will...

- > I think Diana will pass the exam.
- > I don't think it will rain the afternoon.
- > Do you think the exam will be difficult?

ག བཞོད་སྒྲིག་བྱས་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པའམ་ཡང་ན་ཐག་བཅད་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པར་ང་ཚོས་will བཞོལ་སྤྱད་

བྱས་མི་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན། (ཟེ་ཚན་ 26 དང་ 27 ལ་སྟོས་)

- > We're going to the cinema on Saturday. (not we will go ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > I'm not working tomorrow. (not I won't work ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > Are you going to do the exam? (not will you do ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཟེ། I shall (= I will) དང་ we shall (=we will)

- > I shall be late tomorrow. ཡང་ན་ I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- > I think we shall win. ཡང་ན་ I think we will (we'll) win.

ཡིན་ནའང་shall གི་you/ they/ he/ she/it སྐད་སྒྲུབ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > Tom will be late. (Tom shall be ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)





# ཐེ་ཚན་ཉིད་དགྲུ་བ།

WILL/SHALL ༡

ག



**I'll... (I will)** བི་ང་ཚོས་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་སྐབས་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་རྒྱུ་འཕྲིན་མཁུ་ཐག་བཅད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་

སྤྱད་ཅིང། དཔེར་ན།

- My bag is very heavy. I'll carry it for you.
- I'll phone you tomorrow, ok? Ok, good-bye.

**ང་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུ་ཐག་བཅད་ཟིན་པའི་ལས་ཀར་** I think I'll... དང་ I don't think I'll... ཞེས་བཤད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit in the garden.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

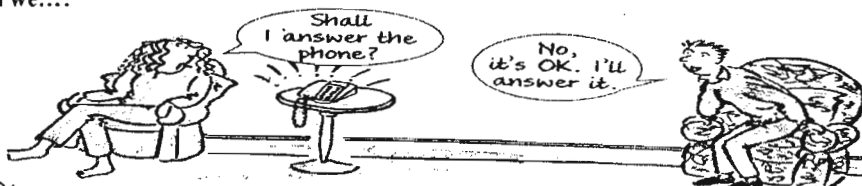
**གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ནང་དུ་ང་ཚོས་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་ཉེ (I go/ I phone མོག་མོ)** བཞོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་མི་རུང་།

- I'll phone you tomorrow, Ok? (I phone you ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)
- I think I'll go to bed early. (I go to bed ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)

**ཁ ང་ཚོས་སྤྱིར་ནས་ཐག་བཅད་ཟིན་པའི་ལས་ཀར་** I'll... ཞེས་བཞོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་མི་ཚོགས། (ཐེ་ཚན་ 26-27 ལ་སྟོན།)

- I'm working tomorrow. (I'll work ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (I'll watch ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (what will you do ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

**ག shall I...? Shall we...?**



**Shall I / we + ལས་ཆོག** དེའི་དོན་ནི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབས་ན་བཟང་ངམ་ཞེས་བའི་དོན་ནི་ནམ། དྲན་ཚུལ་ལམ་བཟམས་སྒོ་དེ་ཡག་པོ་ཞིག་རེད་དམ་ཞེས་བའི་དོན་ནི།

- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- Shall I phone you this evening? Yes, please.
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- Let's go out this evening. OK, what time shall we meet?



## གསལ་བཤད་

29.1 I'll (I will) ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལྟ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཞོལ་ནས་སྤྲོད་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

carry do eat send show sit stay

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| My bag is very heavy.       | I'll <b>carry</b> it for you.   |
| Enjoy your holiday.         | Thank you. ....you a postcard.  |
| I don't want this banana.   | Well, I'm hungry. ....it        |
| Do you want a chair?        | No, it's OK. .... on the floor  |
| Did you phone Jenny?        | Oh no, I forgot. ....it now.    |
| Are you coming with me?     | No, I don't think so. ....here. |
| How do you use this camera? | Give it to me and ....you.      |

29.2 I think I'll... འཕྲིན་ལྟ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཞོལ་ནས་སྤྲོད་ཆ་ཁ་སྤྲོད་དགོས།

Buy go have play

1. it's cold today. I **don't think I'll go** out.
2. I'm hungry. I..... something to eat.
3. I feel tired. ....tennis.
4. This camera is too expensive. ....it.

29.3 བཅར་ཤ་གཅོད་པ།

1. I phone/ I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? I'll phone is right.
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do/ I'll do it later.
3. I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go/ I'll go for a walk.
5. Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. This letter is for Rose. 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.
7. A : Are you doing/ will you do anything this evening?  
B : Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.

29.4 རེ་བྱ་མིག་ A དང་ B ལས་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་བཅའ་མས་རྒྱུ་ shall I ... བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

|    |                                 |                                 |                                |
|----|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A  | Turn on make                    | B                               | Some sandwiches the television |
|    | Turn off open                   |                                 | The window the light           |
| 1. | It's very warm in this room.    | <b>Shall I open the window?</b> |                                |
| 2. | This programme isn't very good. | .....                           |                                |
| 3. | I'm hungry.                     | .....                           |                                |
| 4. | It's dark in this room.         | .....                           |                                |

29.5 རེ་བྱ་མིག་ A དང་ B ལས་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་བཅའ་མས་རྒྱུ་ Shall we... བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

A: What where  
What time who

B: Buy invite  
Go meet

1. Let's go out tonight. OK, what time shall we meet?
2. Let's have a holiday. OK, .....
3. Let's spend some money. OK, .....
4. Let's have a party. OK, .....



# སྒྲིལ་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ MIGHT

༡



He might go to New York.  
(མ་འོངས་པར་ཉིད་ཡོད་འཇིགས་པའི་དོན)



It might rain.  
(ཆར་བ་འབབ་པ་ལྟོ་པའི་དོན)

Might + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཞོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

|                            |             |                          |
|----------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| I/we/you/they<br>he/she/it | Might (not) | be<br>go<br>play<br>come |
|----------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|

༢ I might བྱི་ང་ཆོས་མ་འོངས་པར་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྐབས་སྤྱིང་པའམ་ཡང་ན་འབྱུང་སྤྱིང་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སྤྱིང་པའོ།

- I might go to the cinema this evening. (དོན་བཤད་སྐབས་ལ་ཕྱི་ལོ་འཇིགས་པའི་དོན)
- A: When is Barbara going to phone you?  
B: I don't know. She might phone this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ཁྱེད་རང་ལ་རྒྱུང་ན་ཡག་པོ་འདུག་ཞེས་པའི་དོན)
- Are you going out tonight? I might. (ང་ཕྱི་ལོ་འཇིགས་པའི་དོན)

གཤམ་ཕྱི་ཆོག་སྐབས་དག་གི་མི་འདྲ་སར་སྤྱིང་པའོ།

- I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (དོན་དངོས་ཡིན་པའམ་ལས་སྐབས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་པའི་དོན)
- I might play tennis tomorrow. (ཆེད་མོ་ཆེ་སྤྱིང་པའི་དོན)
- Barbara is going to phone later. (དོན་དངོས་ཡིན་པའོ)
- Barbara might phone later. (ལ་པར་གཏོང་སྤྱིང་པའི་དོན)

༣ might ཡི་དགག་ཆོག་ནི་might not ཡིན།

- I might not go to work tomorrow. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ང་ཕྱི་ལོ་འཇིགས་པའི་དོན)
- Sue might not come to the party. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་མི་མེ་ཡོང་བའི་དོན)

༤ ང་ཆོས་may བྱི་might ལྟར་བཤད་སྤྱིང་པའོ། I may ...

- I may go to the cinema this evening. (I might go གཅིག་དོན་གཅིག་ཡིན)
- Sue may not come to the party. (Sue might not come གཅིག་དོན་གཅིག་ཡིན)

May I ...? ལས་དེ་སྐབས་ན་འགྲིག་གམ་ཡང་ན་ལས་དེ་སྐབས་སྐབས་བམ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།

- May I ask a question? ( can I ask ཞེས་པའི་དོན་འདྲོ)
- May I sit here? Yes, of course.



# གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

30.1 might བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema)
2. (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow.)
3. (it's possible that Ann will forget to phone)
4. (it's possible that it'll snow today)
5. (it's possible that I'll be late tonight.)

**I might go to the cinema.**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**might not བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།**

6. (it's possible that Mary will not be here.)
7. (it's possible that I won't have to meet you)

.....  
.....

30.2 གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལུ་མིག་ནང་གི་འདྲི་ཆོག་དག་ཚུ་དྲུག་གི་ཐོག་གིས་ཚུ་དང་ལ་མ་འོངས་པའི་འཆར་གཞིའི་

སྐོར་དྲིས་པ་ཡིན་པས། ཚུ་དྲུག་ I might བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་དེ་ནམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

**Fish go away Italy Monday new car taxi**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Where are you going for your holidays?                       | I'm not sure. <b>I might go to Italy.</b> |
| 2. What are you doing at the weekend?                           | I don't know. I .....                     |
| 3. When will you see Ann again?                                 | I'm not sure. ....                        |
| 4. What are you going to have for dinner?                       | I don't know. ....                        |
| 5. How are you going to get home tonight?                       | I'm not sure. ....                        |
| 6. I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it? | I haven't decided yet. ....               |

30.3 ཚུ་དྲུག་དོན་གྲུབ་ལ་ཁོའི་མ་འོངས་པའི་འཆར་གཞི་སྐོར་འདྲི་ཆོག་དྲིས་དང་། སྐབས་རེར་ཁོར་མ་འོངས་བར་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་རྒྱ་གཏན་འཁེལ་ཡོད་ན་འང་མང་ཆེ་བར་གཏན་ཁེལ་ཡོད་མི་སྲིད།

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| 1. Are you playing tennis tomorrow?      | Yes, in the afternoon. |
| 2. Are you going out in the evening?     | Possibly.              |
| 3. Are you going to get up early?        | Perhaps.               |
| 4. Are you working tomorrow?             | No, I'm not.           |
| 5. Will you be at home tomorrow morning? | Maybe.                 |
| 6. Are you going to watch television?    | I might.               |
| 7. Are you going out in the afternoon?   | Yes, I am.             |
| 8. Are you going shopping?               | Perhaps.               |

གོང་གི་སྐད་ཆར་གཞིགས་ནས་might བཀོལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. **He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.**
2. **He might go out this evening.**
3. He .....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....

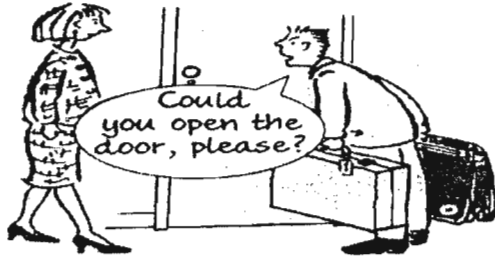
30.4 ཚུ་དྲུག་སང་ཉིན་ཅི་ཞིག་སྐབས་མིན་སྐོར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གསུམ་རེ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....



# སྒྲིམ་མཁོ་གཅིག་ལ། CAN དང COULD

༡



Can + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། ( can do / can play / can come )

|                            |                       |                            |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| I/we/you/they<br>he/she/it | can<br>can not(can't) | do<br>play<br>see<br>come. |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|

|     |                            |                               |
|-----|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Can | I/we/you/they<br>He/she/it | do?<br>play?<br>see?<br>come? |
|-----|----------------------------|-------------------------------|

༢ I can do something = བྱ་སྲུབ་ཤེས་པའི་དོན་ནམ་ཡང་ན་སྲུབ་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན།

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
- Can you swim? Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- Can you change twenty pounds? I'm sorry, I can't.
- I'm having a party next week but Paul and Jenny can't come.

༣ ང་ཆོས་ can ཡི་འདས་པར་ could བེད་སྤྱད་ཐེད་ལ། དེའི་དགག་ཆོག་ནི་ couldn't ཡིན། དཔེར་ན།

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Anna came to Britain, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week but Paul and Jenny couldn't come.

༤ Can you ...? Could you...? Can I ....? Could I ....? སྐད་གས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ང་ཆོས་མི་གཞན་ལ་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ཆེད་དུ་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྲུབ་པར་སྐུལ་བའམ་རེ་ཞུ་བྱེད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ can you...? འཕ་

ཡང་ན་ could you...? ཞིབ་བཀོལ།

- Can you open the door, please? ཡང་ན་ Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? ཡང་ན་ Could you wait....?

ང་ཆོས་ can I have...? could I have ....? སྐད་གས་ནི་མི་གཞན་ལ་རེ་སྐུལ་བྱེད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད།

- Can I have these postcards, please? ཡང་ན་ could I have...?

Can I ....? could I ...? =ངས་ལས་དེ་སྲུབ་ན་ཆོག་གམ་ཡང་ན་འགྲིག་གམ་ཐུས་པའི་དོན།

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? ཡང་ན་ Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- Hello, can I speak to Gerry, please? ཡང་ན་ Could I speak ...? (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ་)

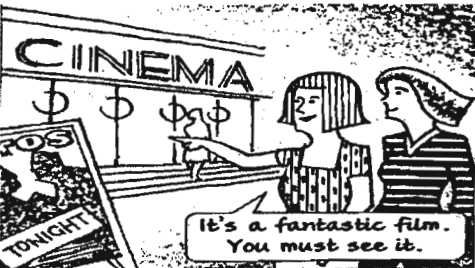






མེ་ཆེན་སོ་གཉིས་ལ། MUST MUSTN'T NEEDN'T

༡



must + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས།

|                            |      |                           |
|----------------------------|------|---------------------------|
| I/we/you/they<br>He/she/it | must | do<br>stop<br>go<br>write |
|----------------------------|------|---------------------------|

ཁ must བྱི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྟབ་དགོས་པའམ་བསྟབ་འོས་པར་སྟམ་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཀོལ་དགོས།

- The windows are very dirty. I must clean them.
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
- We must go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

must ཡི་འདས་པར་ང་ཆོས་had to བཀོལ་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

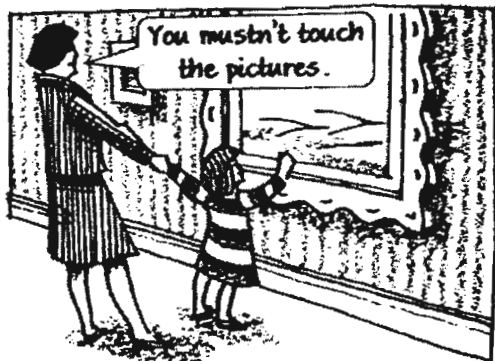
- We had to go to the bank yesterday. (we must go yesterday ཞེས་བཀོལ་མི་ཆོག)
- I had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (I must walk ཞེས་བཀོལ་མི་ཆོག)

ག mustn't བྱི must not ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན།

I mustn't + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། (ལས་དེ་སྟབ་མི་ཅུང་བའམ་ཡང་ན་སྟབ་ན

མི་འགྲིགས་པའི་དོན)

- I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- I mustn't forget to phone Julia. (= རྒྱུ་ལུ་ཁ་ཁ་པར་གཏོང་རྒྱུ་ནི་བཟེད་མི་ཅུང་བའི་དོན)
- Be happy! You mustn't be sad. (=མི་ཡིད་སྦྱུ་མི་དགོས་པའི་དོན)
- You mustn't touch the pictures. (=ནི་རེག་མི་ཅུང་བའི་དོན)



ང needn't བྱི need not ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན།

I needn't + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། (ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྟབ་དགོས་དོན་མེད་པའི་དོན)

- I needn't clean the windows. They aren't very dirty.
- You needn't go to the bank today. I can give you some money.

གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་པེ་don't need to ... (= needn't དང་དོན་འདྲ)

- I don't need to clean the windows.
- You don't need to go to the bank today.

needn't དང་mustn't གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- You needn't go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn't go. You must stay here.



## གསལ་བྱུང་།

32.1 **must** དང་མཉམ་དུ་གསལ་བྱུང་ལས་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཞོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

be go go learn meet wash win

1. We **must go** to the bank today. We haven't got any money.
2. Marilyn is a very interesting person. You ..... her.
3. My hands are dirty. I ..... them.
4. You ..... to drive. It will be very useful.
5. I ..... to the post office. I need some stamps.
6. The game tomorrow is very important for us. We .....
7. You can't always have things immediately. You ..... patient.

32.2 **I must** འཕྲུལ་དུ་ **I had to** བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

1. I **had to** go to the bank yesterday to get some money.
2. It's late. .... go now.
3. I don't usually work on Saturdays but last Saturday ..... work.
4. .... get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
5. I went to London by train last week. The train was full and ..... stands all the way.
6. I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. .... run to get there on time.
7. I forgot to phone David yesterday. .... phone him later today.

32.3 **mustn't** དང་ **needn't** མཉམ་དུ་གསལ་བྱུང་ལས་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཞོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

clean forget hurry lose wait write

1. The windows aren't very dirty. You **needn't clean** them.
2. We have a lot of time. We .....
3. Keep these documents in a safe place. You ..... them.
4. I'm not ready yet but ..... for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5. We ..... to turn off the lights before we leave.
6. I ..... the letter now. I can do it tomorrow.

32.4 བཞོལ་དུ་ཆ་མཆུང་ས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པའི་ཚུན་ཐིག་གིས་སྐྱེལ་དགོས།

1. We can leave the meeting early.
2. We must leave the meeting early.
3. We **mustn't** leave the meeting early.
4. We **needn't** leave the meeting early.
5. We had to leave the meeting early.

- A. We must stay until the end.
- B. We **couldn't** stay until the end.
- C. We can't stay until the end.
- D. We **needn't** stay until the end.
- E. We can stay until the end.

1. .... D.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....

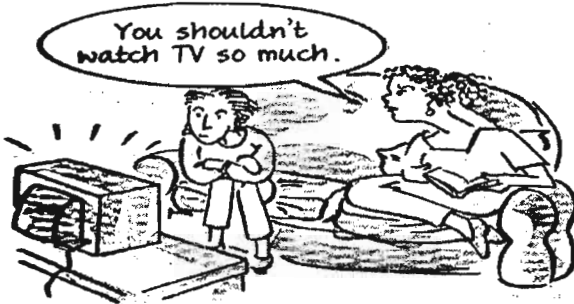
32.5 **must/had to /mustn't/ needn't** སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་སྟོང་ཆའི་ཁག་ནུས་ཁ་སྟོང་དགོས།

1. You **needn't** go. You can stay here if you want.
2. It's fantastic film. You **must** see it.
3. We've got enough food, so we ..... go shopping.
4. We didn't have any food yesterday, so we ..... go shopping.
5. I want to know what happened. You ..... tell me.
6. You ..... tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know.
7. I ..... hurry or I'll be late.
8. Why were you so late? I ..... wait half an hour for a bus.
9. We ..... decide now. We can decide later.



## ཐོབ་ཐོབ་ཀྱི་གཞུགས་པ། SHOULD

ག



should + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་པ།

|                            |                     |                              |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| I/we/you/they<br>he/she/it | should<br>shouldn't | do.<br>stop.<br>go.<br>watch |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|

ཁ (You) should + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་པ། དེ་ནི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབས་དགོས་པའམ་ཡང་ན་སྐབས་ན་ཁོས་པའི་དོན།

- Tom should go to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
- It's a good film. You should go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you should always watch the ball.

ག (you) shouldn't + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་པ། དེ་ནི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབས་མི་དགོས་པའམ་སྐབས་མི་ཁོས་པའི་དོན།

Shouldn't ནི་ should not ཡི་བསྐྱེད་འབྲིང་ནམ་པ་ཡིན།

- Tom shouldn't go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You shouldn't watch TV so much.

ང ང་ཆོས་ནམ་ཟུག་think ནི་ should དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ་དཔེར་ན།

I think... should....

- I think Carol should buy some new clothes. (དེ་ནི་དགོས་པའམ་ནི་ཁོས་པའི་དོན།)
- It's late. I think I should go home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?  
B: Yes, I think you should.

I don't think... should...

- I don't think you should work so hard. (ལས་ཀ་དེ་འདྲིའི་རྒྱར་བྱ་གཞིས་སྐབས་མི་ཁོས་པའམ་སྐབས་མི་དགོས་པའི་དོན།)
- I don't think we should go yet. It's too early.

Do you think ... should...?

- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- What time do you think we should go home?



ཅ must ནི་ should ལས་རྒྱུད་ཅམ་གྱགས་ཆེ་སྟེ།

- It's a good film. You should go and see it.
- It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.

ཆ should ཡི་འབྲི་སྤངས་གཞན་ཞིག་ནི་ought to ཡིན།

- It's a good film. You ought to go and see it. (you should go དང་མཚུངས་)
- I think Carol ought to buy some new clothes. (Carol should buy དང་མཚུངས་)



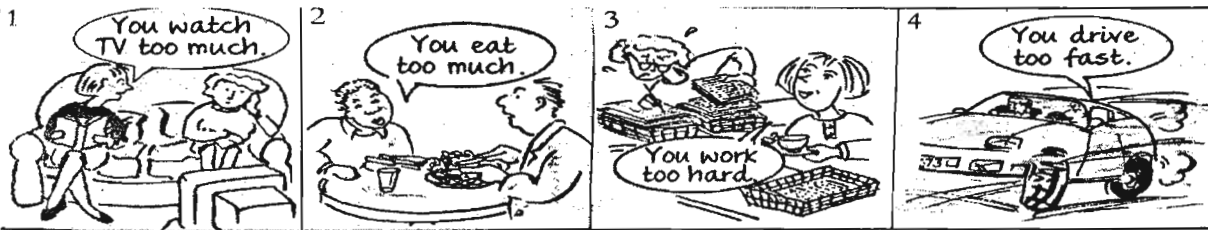
## གསར་ཁྱེད།

33.1 you should ཡི་རྩེས་སུ་གསུམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྤྲོད་ཆ་སྤོང་དགོས།

clean go take visit watch wear

1. When you play tennis, **you should watch** the ball.
2. It's late and you are tired. .... to bed.
3. .... your teeth twice a day.
4. If you have time, ..... the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you are driving, ..... a seat belt.
6. It's too far to walk from here to the station. .... a taxi.

33.2 He/She shouldn't ... so སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་རིམ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་འབྲི་དགོས།



1. **She shouldn't watch TV so much.**
2. He .....
3. .... hard..
4. ....

33.3 འདྲི་ཆོག་གྱི་མགོ་རྒྱུ་ do you think I should...? བཀོལ་ནས་སྤྲོད་གྱི་གྲགས་པ་ཞིག་གི་བསམ་ཚུལ་འདྲི་དགོས།

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
2. You ask your friend: **Do you think I should buy this jacket.**
3. You can't drive. (learn?)
4. You ask your friend: **Do you think** .....
5. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
6. You ask your friend: .....
7. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
8. You ask your friend: .....

33.4 I think... should... ཡང་ན་ I don't think...should... བཀོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཞུགས་དགོས།

1. It's late. (go home now) **I think we should go home now.**
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) **I don't think you should buy it.**
3. You don't need your car. (sell it) .....
4. Diane needs a rest. (have a holiday) .....
5. Sally and Colin are too young. (get married) .....
6. You are not well this morning. (go to work) .....
7. James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) .....
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) .....

33.5 should མཉམ་དུ་སྤྲོད་གྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བསམ་པ་བཀོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཞུགས་དགོས།

1. I think **everybody should learn another language.**
2. I think everybody .....
3. I think .....
4. I don't think .....
5. I think I should .....



## ཕྱི་ཆོན་སྟོབ་ཞི་བ། I HAVE TO...

༡



have to (do) ཞི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་མི་བྱེད་ཀ་མེད་ཡིན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཏོན།

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| I/ we/ you/ they have | to do<br>to work |
| He/ she/ it has       | to go<br>to wear |

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving license.

## ཁ have to ཡི་འདས་པ་ནི had to...ཡིན།

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

ག འདྲི་ཆོག་དང་དགག་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོས་སྐབས། ང་ཚོས do/does བྱི་ད་ལྟ་བུར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པའི་དེ་འདས་པར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

ད་ལྟ་ག།

|                     |             |
|---------------------|-------------|
| do I/ we/ you/ they | Have to...? |
| does he/ she/ it    |             |

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| I/ we/ you/ they don't | Have to... |
| he/ she/ it doesn't    |            |

འདས་པ།

|     |                          |             |
|-----|--------------------------|-------------|
| Did | I/we/ you/they he/she/it | Have to...? |
|-----|--------------------------|-------------|

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| I/ we/ you/ they | didn't have to... |
| he/ she/ it      |                   |

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jill have to work on Sunday?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do) ཞི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབས་དགོས་ངེས་ཞིག་མིན་པའམ་ཡང་ན་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྐབས་མི་དགོས་པའི་དོན།

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus.

ང ང་ཚོས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་སྒྲུབ་པའི་འདུག་སྟེང་ལ་བརྟེན་ནས་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྐབས་དགོས་སྟེང་པའི་

སྐབས་སུ must དང་ have to གཉིས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག། དཔེར་ན།

- It's a fantastic film. You must see it. ཡང་ན་ you have to see it.

ང་ཚོས་གཞན་ཞིག་གི་བཀོད་སློག་དང་ཡང་ན་སློག་བྲིམས་ལ་བརྟེན་ནས་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྐབས་དགོས་པའི་

སྐབས་སུ have to བཀོལ་དགོས། ( must བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག )

- Jill won't be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (འདི་ནི་ངའི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་ཡིན་པར་དོན་དངོས་སོ)
- In many countries, men have to do military service. (འདི་ནི་ངའི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་ཡིན་པར་བྱུང་བའི་བྱིས་སོ)





## ཇི་ཚེན་སྟོང་ལྟ་བུ། WOULD YOU LIKE...? I'D LIKE...

### ༡ Would you like...? ཁྱོད་ལ་དགོས་སམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན།

Would you like ...? བློ་ཆོས་དངོས་པོ་སྐད་མཁོ་འདོན་བྱེད་སྐབས་

སྐབས་ལ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- A: Would you like some coffee?
- B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
- B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
- B: Tea, please.



Would you like to...? བློ་ཆོས་མགོན་འཕོད་བྱེད་སྐབས་སྐབས་ལ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?
- B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?

### ཁ I'd like ... བློ་ཆོས་དགོས་ཞེས་པའི་གྲུས་སྟོང་རང་བཞིན་གྱི་བཤད་སྐབས་ཤིག་ཡིན།

I'd like བློ་ I would like ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་ནམ་པ་ཡིན།

- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

### ༢ Would you like ...? དང And do you like ...? གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱུང་པར།

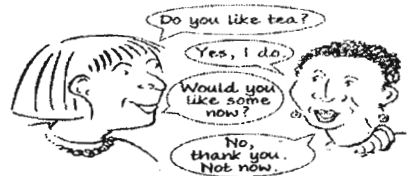
Would you like...? /I'd like...



Would you like some tea? བློ་ཆོད་རང་ལ་ཐུག་འདོད་ཡོད་ནམ། ཡང་ན་ཇ་དགོས་སམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན།

- A: would you like to go to the cinema tonight? (ནི་དོན་ལྟ་བུ་ཆོད་འགྲོ་འདོད་དམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན)
- B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like an orange, please. (= Can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like...? / I like...



Do you like tea? བློ་ཆོད་ཀྱིས་བསམ་པར་ཇ་བཟང་ངམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན།


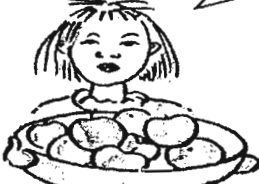




Do you think tea is nice?

- A: Do you like going to the cinema? (སྦྱིར་བསྟན་པ་)
- B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (སྦྱིར་བསྟན་པ་)
- What do you like to do at weekends?



# གཤམ་སྒྱུད།

35.1 I would you like...? བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བཤད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་འབྲི་དགོ།

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <p>1</p> <p>Would you like a chocolate?</p>  | <p>2</p>  | <p>3</p>  |
| <p>4</p>                                     | <p>5</p>  | <p>6</p>  |

35.2 གཤམ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་འག་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་མི་གཞན་ལ་དེ་ལྟར་དེ་བའདི་རྒྱ། would you like to... བཞོལ་ནས་འདི་

ཆོག་བཟོད་གོས།

- You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Tsering will go with you. (go)  
You say: .....
- You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Tsering will play too. (play)  
You say: .....
- You've got some holiday photographs. Tsering hasn't seen them yet. (see)  
You say: .....
- You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Tsering will go. (go)  
You say: .....
- It's raining and Tsering is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella but you have one. (borrow)  
You say: .....

## 35.3 བརྒྱུ་གཤམ་ཅི་དཔ།

- 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'
- 'What do you like / Would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. perhaps later.'
- I like / I'd like tomatoes but I don't eat them very often.
- What time do you like / Would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
- I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.

Would you like is right .





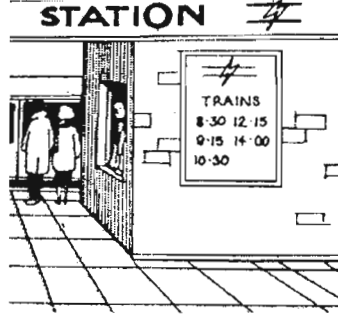
# ཆེ་ཆེན་པོ་ལྟག་པ། THERE ARE

ག



There's a man on the roof.

ཁྱེད་ཀྱངས་



There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY  
MONDAY  
TUESDAY  
WEDNESDAY  
THURSDAY  
FRIDAY  
SATURDAY

7

There are seven days in a week.

There is ... (there's)  
Is there....?  
There is not... (there is not)

མཐུན་ཀྱངས་

There are...  
Are there....?  
There are not... (There are not)

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's good film on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money?  
B: Yes there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me; is there a hotel near here?  
B: Yes, there is./ No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any letters for me today?  
B: Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

འ ཐུག་པའི་དུང་ ཐུག་པའི་དུང་ it is

There is



There's a book on the table.

(it's a book on the table ཐུག་པའི་དུང་ཐུག་པའི་དུང་)

It is



I like this book. It's interesting

It = this book

བཟུང་བ།

- 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (it ཐུག་པའི་དུང་)
- There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it ཐུག་པའི་དུང་ 10.30 ཡི་ཐོག་ཐུག་པའི་དུང་)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
- I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it ཐུག་པའི་དུང་)



## ཐེ་ཆ་ན་མི་བྱུག་པ། THERE ARE

༡



There's a man on the roof.

ཐུང་གྲངས་

There is ... (there's)

Is there....?

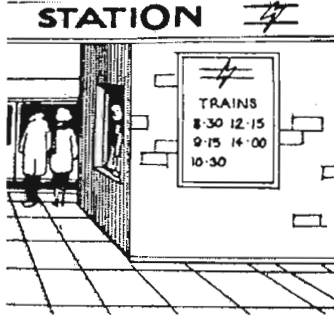
There is not... (there is not)

མང་གྲངས་

There are...

Are there....?

There are not... (There are not)



There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY  
MONDAY  
TUESDAY  
WEDNESDAY  
THURSDAY  
FRIDAY  
SATURDAY

7

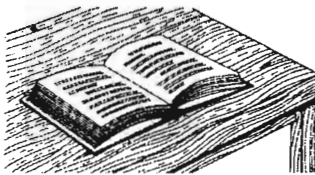
There are seven days in a week.

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's good film on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money?  
B: Yes there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me; is there a hotel near here?  
B: Yes, there is./ No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any letters for me today?  
B: Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

འདྲ་མཉམ་གྱི་ there is དང་ it is

There is



There's a book on the table.

(it's a book on the table ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

It is



I like this book. It's interesting

It = this book

བསྐྱུར་པ།

- 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (it གྱི་སྒྱུ་དེ་ལག་)
- There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it གྱི་10.30 ཡི་མེ་འཕྲེང་ལག་)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
- I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it གྱི་ལུ་བ་ལག་)



## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

36.1 མར་ཁྱུང་ཐང་ནི་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་ཆུང་ཆུང་ཞིག་ཡིན། གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལྷ་མོ་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་ there is/are ཡང་ན་ there isn't/aren't སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|   |                  |             |
|---|------------------|-------------|
| 1 | a castle?        | No          |
| 2 | any restaurants? | Yes (a lot) |
| 3 | a hospital?      | Yes         |
| 4 | a swimming pool? | NO          |
| 5 | any cinemas?     | Yes (two)   |
| 6 | a university?    | No          |
| 7 | any big hotels?  | No          |

1. There isn't a castle.
2. There are a lot of restaurants.
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....

36.2 there is/ are/isn't/ aren't སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཁྱོད་ཆོད་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་ལམ་ཡང་ན་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཤེས་པའི་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་གཞན་ཞིག་གི་སྐོར་བྲིས།

1. There are a few restaurants.
2. There's a big park.
3. ....

4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

36.3 There is / there isn't/ is there/ there are/ there aren't/ are there སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆའི་ཁག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 Kenham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
- 2 Look! .....a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
- 3 'Excuse me, .....a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
- 4 .....five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
- 5 'How many students..... in the class?' 'Twenty.'
- 6 'Can we take a photograph?' 'No,.....a film in the camera.'
- 7 '.....a bus from the city center to the airport?' 'Yes. Every 20 minutes.'
- 8 '.....any problems?' 'No, everything is OK.'
- 9 .....nowhere to sit down. ....any chairs.

36.4 There are... དང་མཉམ་དུ་གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལྷ་མོ་ལ་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|         |            |         |        |              |                      |
|---------|------------|---------|--------|--------------|----------------------|
| seven   | twenty-six | letters | days   | September    | the solar system     |
| nine    | thirty     | players | days   | The USA      | a week               |
| fifteen | fifty      | planets | states | a rugby team | the English alphabet |

- 1 There are seven days in a week.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....

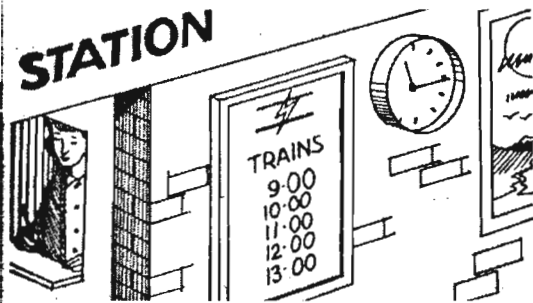
36.5 There's/ is there/ it's/ is it སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 'There's a train at 10.30.' 'Is it a fast train?'
- 2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. ....very expensive.
- 3 'What's wrong?' .....something in my eye.'
- 4 .....a red car out side the house. ....yours?
- 5 '.....anything on television tonight?' 'Yes,.....a film at 8.15.'
- 6 'What's that building?' '.....a school.'
- 7 '.....a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'



མེ་ཆེན་ལོ་བརྒྱན་པ། THERE WAS/ WERE དང་ THERE HAS/ HAVE BEEN THERE WILL BE

༡ there was/ there were (ནི་འདས་པ་ཡིན)



There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15.

There was a train at 11 o'clock.

བཟུར་བ།

There is / are (ད་ལྟོ་ལ)

- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 250 rooms
- Are there any letters for me this morning?
- I'm hungry but there isn't anything to eat.

There was / were (འདས་པ)

- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 250 rooms.
- Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.

༢ there has been/ there have been (ནི་ཁྱབ་ཐིན་ད་ལྟོ་ལ་ཡིན)



- Look! There's been an accident. (there's been ནི་ there has been ཡི་བཟུས་འབྱེད་ནམ་པ་ཡིན)

- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

there was དང་བཟུར་བ

- There was an accident last night. ( 'there has been an accident last night' ཞེས་འབྱེད་ཅུང་)

ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་འདས་པ་དང་ཁྱབ་ཐིན་ད་ལྟོ་ལ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར་ལྟོ་ཆེན་20 ལ་སྟོས།

༣ there will be



- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Sunday?

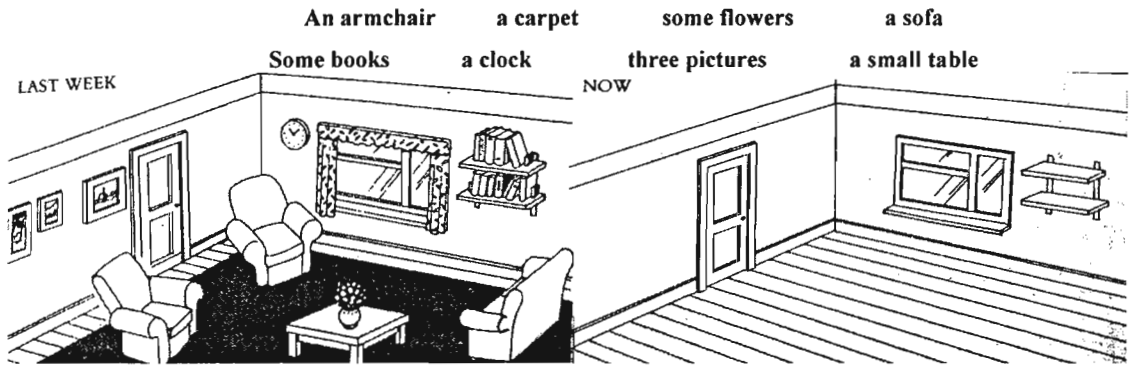
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manger soon.

- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because there won't be time tomorrow. (there won't be ནི་there will not be ཡི་བཟུས་འབྱེད་ནམ་པ་ཡིན)

གཤམ་པ་ལྟུང་།

37.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་ there was...འམ་there were...གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཤམ་སྤྱད་ནས་

ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1 **There was a clock** on the wall near the window.  
2 ..... on the floor.  
3 ..... on the wall near the door.  
4 ..... in the middle of the room.  
5 ..... on the table.  
6 ..... on the shelves.  
7 ..... in the corner near the door.  
8 ..... opposite the door.

37.2 there was/there wasn't/was there/there were/there weren't/were there སྤྱི་མཆོག་གི་ཁོ་ལ་ཅན་གྱི་སྤྱི་མཆོག་ཅན་དག་གིས་

- 1 I was hungry but ~~there wasn't~~ anything to eat.  
2 **Were there** any letters for me yesterday?  
3 .....a football match on TV last night. Did you see it?  
4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Did you? .....a swimming pool?'  
5 'Did you buy any eggs?' 'No, .....any in the shop.  
6 The wallet was empty. ....any money in it.  
7 '.....many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'  
8 We didn't visit the museum. ....enough time.  
9 I'm sorry I'm late.....a lot of traffic.  
10 Twenty years ago.....many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

37.3 there + is/ are/ was/were/has been/have been/will be སྟེན་པ་ཡོད་ནས་གསུང་གི་ཆོད་པ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་ར་པར་བརྒྱ

དཔྱེས།

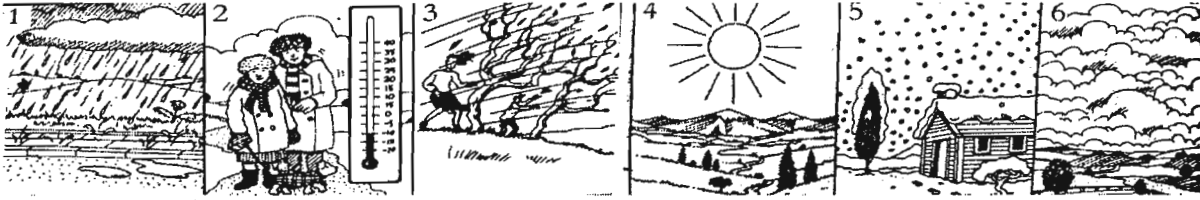
- 1 **There was** a good film on TV yesterday evening.  
2 ..... 24 hours in a day.  
3 ..... a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.  
4 'Where can I buy a newspaper?' '..... a shop at the end of the street.'  
5 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' '..... a robbery.'  
6 When we arrived at the cinema, ..... a long queue to see the film.  
7 When you arrive tomorrow ..... somebody at the station to meet you.  
8 Ten years ago ..... 500 children at the school. Now ..... more than a thousand.  
9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. .... a lot of changes.  
10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think ..... any problems.





# གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

38.1 it's ..བཀོལ་ནས་རི་མོའི་ཕྱིང་གི་གནམ་གཤམ་སྒྲིབ་འབྲི་དགོས།



1. It's raining.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

38.2 it is འམ་ཡང་ན is it བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. What time is it?
2. We must go now. .... very late.
3. .... true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. What day ..... today? Tuesday? No ..... Wednesday.
5. .... ten kilometers from the airport to the city center.
6. .... possible to phone you at your office?
7. Do you want to walk to the restaurant? I don't know. How far ..... ?
8. .... Linda's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! ..... Impossible.

38.3 How far...? དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྒྲིབ་ནང་གི་ཆིག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་འབྲི་ཆིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. (here / the station)       | <u>How far is it from here to the station?</u> |
| 2. (the hotel / the beach)    | How .....                                      |
| 3. (New York / Washington)    | .....  |
| 4. (your house / the airport) | .....  |

38.4 it འམ་ཡང་ན there བཀོལ་ནས་སྒྲིབ་ཆ་སྒྲིབ་དགོས།

1. It rains a lot in winter.
2. There was a strong wind yesterday.
3. .... was a nice day yesterday.
4. We can't go skiing. .... isn't any snow.
5. ....'s hot in this room. Open a window.
6. I was afraid because .... was very dark.
7. .... was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
8. ....'s a long way from here to the nearest shop.

38.5 གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་འཁྱུག་ལས་ལས་ཆིག་བདམས་ནས་ཆིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|      |            |             |    |                        |              |
|------|------------|-------------|----|------------------------|--------------|
| It's | easy       | dangerous   | to | Work in this office    | get up early |
|      | difficult  | nice        |    | Visit different places | go out alone |
|      | impossible | interesting |    | See you again          | make friends |
|      |            |             |    |                        |              |

1. If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2. Hello, Jill. .... how are you?
3. .... There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work, .....
5. I like traveling. ....
6. A lot of cities are not safe. ....



## ཐེ་ཚན་སོ་དགུ་བ། I AM དང་I DON'T སྟགས།

༧



She isn't tired but he is.  
(he is ཡི་མེ་he is tired ལྟོན)



He likes tea but she doesn't.  
(she doesn't ཡི་མེ་she doesn't like tea ལྟོན)

མང་གི་དཔེ་བཟོ་ལས་ང་ཚོས་ཤེས་པ་ནི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་གི་ནང་དུ་ལས་ཚིག་གཅིག་པ་གཉིས་བྱུང་ཆོ། ལས་ཚིག་  
ཇི་སྐད་དུ་སྐད་ནས་མ་བྲིས་ཀྱང་ཚིག་ ང་ཚོས་འོག་གི་ཚིག་འདི་དག་གི་སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བཞིན་བཀོལ་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

|             |
|-------------|
| am/is/are   |
| was/ were   |
| have/ has   |
| do/does/did |
| can         |
| well        |
| might       |
| must        |

- I haven't got a car but **my sister has.** (ནི་my sister has got a car ཡི་དོན)
- A: Please help me.  
B: I'm sorry. **I can't.** (ནི་ I can't help you ཡི་དོན)
- A: Are you tired?  
B: **I was,** but **I am not** now. (ནི་ I was tired but I am not tired now ཡི་དོན)
- A: Do you think Ann will phone this evening?  
B: She **might.** (ནི་ she might phone ཡི་དོན)
- A: Are you going now?  
B: Yes. I'm afraid I **must.** (ནི་ I must go ཡི་དོན)

ལས་ཚིག་བསྐྱར་བསྐྱོར་མི་བྱེད་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཁྲོད་དུ་ང་ཚོས་བསྐྱར་འབྲིའི་ནམ་པ་སྟེ་ 'm/'s/'ve སྟགས་ལྟ་བུ་འབྲི་མི་

ཅུང་།

- Sue isn't tired but he is. ( but he's ལྟར་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)

ཡིན་ནའང་ང་ཚོས་དགག་ཚིག་འབྲི་སྐབས་སྐད་ཚིག་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཚིག་སྟེ་ isn't / haven't / won't

- My sister has got a car but I haven't.
- 'Are you and Jim working tomorrow?' 'I am but Jim isn't.'

ཁ yes དང་no གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇི་སྐད་སྐད་ཚིག་ I am འཕྲ་ཡང་ན་ I'm not ཞེས་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཚིག་

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am/ no I am not.'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he will /no, he won't.'
- 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there is/ no, there is not.'

ག ང་ཚོས་སྒྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བར་do དང་does གཉིས་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན། ( ཐེ་ཚན་ 6-7 ལ་སྟོན)

- I don't like hot weather but **Sue does.** (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard but **I don't.** (= I don't work hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, **I do.**'

ང་ཚོས་འདས་པར་did བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན། (ཐེ་ཚན་ 12 ལ་སྟོན)

- A: Did you and John enjoy the film?  
B: I did but **John didn't.** (I enjoyed it but John didn't enjoy it)
- 'I enjoyed the film.' 'I **did too.**' (= I enjoyed it too)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No. **it didn't.**'





## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

39.1 **Is/ have/ can** སྐད་ཀྱི་འདུག་པུ་མེད་པུ་མེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་ཆུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Kate wasn't hungry but we <u>were</u> ..... | 4. I haven't seen the film but Tom'..... |
| 2 I'm not married but my brother.....         | 5. Diane won't be here but Chris .....   |
| 3 John can't help you but I .....             | 6. You weren't late but I .....          |

39.2 **Isn't/ haven't/ can't** སྐད་ཀྱི་འདུག་པུ་མེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་ཆུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 My sister can play the piano but I <u>can't</u> ..... | 4. Richard has got a car but I ..... |
| 2 Ann is working today but I .....                      | 5. I'm ready to go but Tom.....      |
| 3 I was working but my friends .....                    | 6. I've got a key but Sally .....    |

39.3 **do/ does/did or don't/ doesn't/ didn't** སྐད་ཀྱི་འདུག་པུ་མེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་ཆུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I don't like hot weather but Sue does.....
- Sue likes hot weather but I don't.....
- My mother wears glasses but my father .....
- You don't know Paul very well but I .....
- I didn't enjoy the party but my friends .....
- I don't watch TV much but Peter .....
- Kate lives in London but her parents .....
- You had a shower this morning but I .....

39.4 རང་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ཏེ་yes, I have / no, I'm not སྐད་ཀྱི་འདུག་པུ་མེད་ཀྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

དགོས།

- I didn't go out last night but my friends did.....
- I like .....but .....
- I don't .....but .....
- I'm .....
- I haven't .....

39.5 དགག་ཆོག་གམ་ཡང་ན་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་ཀྱི་འདུག་པུ་མེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་ཆུང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

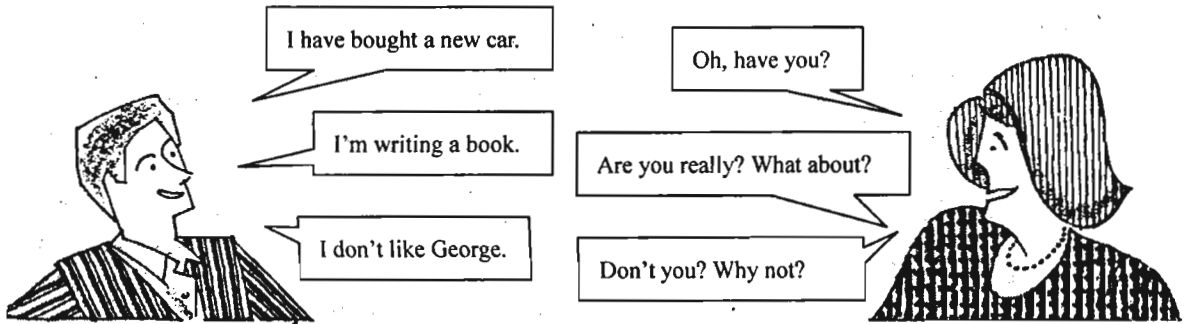
- 'Are you tired?' 'I was earlier but I'm not now'.
- John is happy today but he .....yesterday.
- The post office isn't open yet but the shops .....
- I haven't got a video camera but I know somebody who .....
- I would like to help you but I'm afraid I .....
- I don't usually go to work by car but I .....yesterday.
- A: Have you ever been to the United States?
- B: No, but Sandra ..... She went there on holiday last year.
- 'Do you and Ann watch TV a lot?' 'I .....but Ann doesn't.
- I've been invited to the party but Kate .....
- 'Do you think Diane will pass here exams?' 'Yes, I am sure she .....
- 'Are you going out this evening?' 'I ..... I don't know for sure.'

39.6 **yes, I have/ no, I'm not** སྐད་ཀྱི་འདུག་པུ་མེད་རང་གི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Are you British? <b>No, I'm not</b> ..... | 6. Do you like classical music? .....    |
| 2 Have you got a car? .....                 | 7. Will you be in Paris tomorrow? .....  |
| 3 Do you feel well? .....                   | 8. Have you ever been in hospital? ..... |
| 4 Is it snowing? .....                      | 9. Did you buy anything yesterday? ..... |
| 5 Are you hungry? .....                     | 10. Were you asleep at 3 a.m.? .....     |



ཕྱི་ཕྱོད་བཞི་བརྒྱ་བ། HAVE YOU? དང ARE YOU? DON'T YOU?



have you?/is it/can't he? མེགས་བཞེད་ཀྱིས་རང་ཉིད་དོན་དེར་སྒྲིག་ཡོད་པའམ་ངོ་མཆར་བཞིན་པ་ཉོན་པར་

ཕྱིད། དཔེར་ན།

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I am sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes go.'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

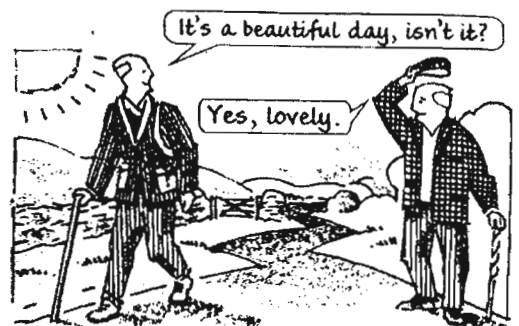
ང་ཚོས་do /does བོ་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་did བོ་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པར་བཞུགས་ཏེ་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you?' Which ones?
- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.' Does he? Does he eat fish?
- Linda got married last week. Did she? Really?

ཁ རྩལ་འདྲ།

ང་ཚོས་'have you?/ is it?/ can't she? སྐད་ས་ཚོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མཆུག་དུ་

བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཟོས་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།



དགག་མིན་ཆེག་པུབ       $\rightarrow$       དགག་ཆེག་འདྲི་ཆེག (ལྷག་འདྲི)

དགག་ཅིག་ཅིག་ལྟར      →      ཏང་ཅིག་འདྲི་ཅིག (ལྟག་འདྲི)

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་ཡུལ → དགག་ཆོག

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| It's a beautiful day, <b>isn't it?</b>     | Yes, it's lovely.  |
| Sally lives in London, <b>doesn't she?</b> | Yes, that's right. |
| You closed the window, <b>didn't you?</b>  | Yes, I think so.   |
| Those shoes are nice, <b>aren't they?</b>  | Yes, very nice.    |
| Tom will be here soon, <b>won't he?</b>    | Yes, probably.     |

དགག་ཆེག      དགག་མེན་ཆེག་ལྷུང་།

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| That isn't your car, <b>is it?</b>          | No, my car is white. |
| You haven't met my mother, <b>have you?</b> | No, I haven't.       |
| Sally doesn't smoke, <b>does she?</b>       | No, she doesn't.     |
| You won't be late, <b>will you?</b>         | No, I'm never late.  |



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

40.1 do you?/ doesn't she?/ did they? སྤྲོད་པ་བཞུགས་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                                   |                         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I speak for languages.         | Do you? Which ones?     |
| 2. I work in a bank.              | ? I work in a bank too. |
| 3. I didn't go to work yesterday. | ? Were you ill?         |
| 4. Jill doesn't like me.          | ? Why not?              |
| 5. You look tired.                | ? I feel fine.          |
| 6. Julia phoned me last night.    | ? What did she say?     |

40.2 have you?/ haven't you? Did she? སྤྲོད་པ་བཞུགས་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I've bought a new car.          | Have you? What make is it?    |
| 2. Tim doesn't eat meat.           | Doesn't he? Does he eat fish? |
| 3. I've lost my key.               | ? When did you last have it?  |
| 4. Sue can't drive.                | ? She should learn.           |
| 5. I was born in Italy.            | ? I didn't know that.         |
| 6. I didn't sleep well last night. | ? Was the bed uncomfortable?  |
| 7. There's a film on TV tonight.   | ? Are you going to watch it?  |
| 8. I'm not happy.                  | ? Why not?                    |
| 9. I met Paula last week.          | ? How is she?                 |
| 10. Margaret works in a factory.   | ? What kind of factory?       |
| 11. I won't be here next week.     | ? Where will you be?          |
| 12. The clock isn't working.       | ? It was working yesterday.   |

40.3 isn't it/ haven't you? སྤྲོད་པ་བཞུགས་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཕྱི་འདྲིའི་ནམ་པ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. It's a beautiful day, isn't it? | Yes, it's lovely.               |
| 2. These flowers are nice, .....?  | Yes, what are they?             |
| 3. Judy was at the party, .....?   | Yes, but I didn't speak to her. |
| 4. You've been to Paris, .....?    | Yes, many times.                |
| 5. You speak German, .....?        | Yes, but not very well.         |
| 6. Martin looks tired, .....?      | Yes, he works very hard.        |
| 7. You'll help me, .....?          | Yes, of course I will.          |

40.4 ཕྱི་འདྲི་ཡི་དགག་མིན་ཆེག་ (is it?/ do you?) དང་དགག་མིན་ཆེག་ (isn't?/ don't you?) སྤྲོད་པ་བཞུགས་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. You haven't got a car, have you?           | No, I can't drive.                |
| 2. You aren't tired, .....?                   | No, I feel fine.                  |
| 3. Carol is a very nice person, .....?        | Yes, everybody likes her.         |
| 4. You can play the piano, .....?             | Yes, but I'm not very good.       |
| 5. You don't know Mike's sister, .....?       | No, I've never met her.           |
| 6. Sally went to university, .....?           | Yes, she studied economics.       |
| 7. The film wasn't very good, .....?          | No, it was terrible.              |
| 8. Ann lives near you, .....?                 | That's right. In the same street. |
| 9. You won't tell anybody what I said, .....? | No, of course not.                |





## གཤམ་ལྷན་པ།

41.1 too དང either གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I'm happy.                  | I'm happy <u>too</u> .        |
| 2. I'm not hungry.             | I'm not hungry.....           |
| 3. I'm going out.              | I'm going out.....            |
| 4. It rained on Saturday.      | It rained on Sunday .....     |
| 5. Jenny can't drive a car.    | She can't ride a bicycle..... |
| 6. I don't like shopping.      | I don't like shopping.....    |
| 7. Jane's mother is a teacher. | Her father is a teacher.....  |

41.2 so... I ཉེ (so am I/ so do I/ so can I) ལྟར་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

|                                   |                  |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. I went to bed late last night. | <u>So did I.</u> |
| 2. I'm thirsty.                   | .....            |
| 3. I've just had dinner.          | .....            |
| 4. I need a holiday.              | .....            |
| 5. I'll be late tomorrow.         | .....            |
| 6. I was very tired this morning  | .....            |

neither བཀོལ་ནས་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

|                                    |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| 7. I can't go to the party.        | ..... |
| 8. I didn't phone Alex last night. | ..... |
| 9. I haven't got any money.        | ..... |
| 10. I'm not going out tomorrow.    | ..... |
| 11. I don't know what to do.       | ..... |

41.3 གཤམ་གྱི་དཔེ་བཞིན་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་ so... I དང neither I སྟེགས་བཀོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལྟར་

ལ་དྲང་མོར་བཞིན་དགོས།



I am tired.

You can answer:

So am I.

ཡང་ན

I am not.

I don't work hard.

You can answer:

Neither do I.

ཡང་ན

I do.

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. I am learning English.            | ..... |
| 2. I can ride a bicycle.             | ..... |
| 3. I'm not American.                 | ..... |
| 4. I like cooking.                   | ..... |
| 5. I don't like cold weather.        | ..... |
| 6. I slept well last night.          | ..... |
| 7. I've never been to Scotland.      | ..... |
| 8. I don't write letters very often. | ..... |
| 9. I'm going out tomorrow evening.   | ..... |
| 10. I haven't got a headache.        | ..... |
| 11. I didn't watch TV last night.    | ..... |
| 12. I often go to the cinema.        | ..... |



མི་ཚུ་ཞིག་གིས་པ། ISN'T དང HAVEN'T གཞན་ཡང DON'T སྟགས།

༧ ང་ཚོས་not (n't)འཛིན་སྟངས་ཡོད་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ལ་དགག་ལྡན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཟེར། དཔེར་ན།

|        | དགག་ཚིག་                    | དཔེ་བཞིན་                          |
|--------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| am     | am not (' m not)            | I'm not tired.                     |
| is     | is not (isn't or 's not)    | it isn't (or it's not) raining.    |
| are    | are not (aren't or 're not) | they aren't (or they're not) here. |
| was    | was not (wasn't)            | Julian wasn't hungry.              |
| have   | have not (have't)           | I haven't finished my work.        |
| has    | has not (hasn't)            | Sue hasn't got a car.              |
| will   | will not (won't)            | we won't be here tomorrow.         |
| can    | can not (can't)             | George can't drive.                |
| could  | could not (couldn't)        | I couldn't sleep last night.       |
| must   | must not (mustn't)          | I mustn't forget to phone Ann.     |
| should | should not (shouldn't)      | you shouldn't work so hard.        |
| would  | would not (wouldn't)        | I wouldn't like to be an actor.    |

བ don't དང doesn't གཞན་དང་didn't སྟགས་དགག་ལྡན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་པའི་ལུགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།

I / we/ you/ they སྟགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་do not (don't)

ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་དང་ལྟ་བུའི་དགག་ཚིག་

he/ she/ it གསུམ་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་does not (doesn't)

work/ live/ go སྟགས་ལྟ་བུའི་ལུགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།

ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་འདས་པའི་དགག་ཚིག་

I / they/ he/ she སྟགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་did not (didn't) work/ live/ go ལྟ་བུའི་ལུགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།

| དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་            | དགག་ཚིག་                            |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| I want to go out.            | I don't want to go out.             |
| They work hard.              | They don't work hard.               |
| Liz plays the guitar.        | Liz doesn't play the guitar.        |
| My father likes his job.     | My father doesn't like his job.     |
| I got up early this morning. | I didn't get up early this morning. |
| They worked hard yesterday.  | They didn't work hard yesterday.    |
| We played tennis.            | We didn't play tennis.              |
| Diane had a bath.            | Diane didn't have a bath.           |

Don't...

|              |                    |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Look!        | Don't look!        |
| Wait for me. | Don't wait for me. |

སྟགས་པའི་do བྱི་ལས་ཚིག་གཙོ་བོ་ཡིན་སྟངས་ལ་ང་ཚོས་don't do དང་doesn't do ལྟ་བུའི་ལུགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་དཔེར་ན།

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Do something!               | Don't do anything!               |
| Sue does a lot at weekends. | Sue doesn't do much at weekends. |
| I did what you said.        | I didn't do what you said.       |



## གསལ་སྒྱུར་

### 42.1 གསལ་སྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྱུ་ཆུས་དགག་ལུན་ཆོག་གྱུ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. He's gone away. <b>He hasn't gone away.</b> | 4 It's cold today. .... |
| 2. They're married. ....                       | 5 We'll be late. ....   |
| 3. I've had dinner. ....                       | 6 You should go. ....   |

### 42.2 don't/ doesn't/ didn't སྐད་སྐད་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྱུ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. She saw me. She didn't see me. | 4 He lives here. ....      |
| 2. I like cheese. ....            | 5 Go away. ....            |
| 3. They understood. ....          | 6 I did the shopping. .... |

### 42.3 གསལ་སྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྱུ་དགག་ལུན་ཆོག་གྱུ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. She can swim. <b>She can't swim.</b> | 6 He'll be pleased. ....    |
| 2. They've arrived. ....                | 7 Phone me tonight. ....    |
| 3. I went to the bank. ....             | 8 It rained yesterday. .... |
| 4. He speaks German. ....               | 9 I could hear them. ....   |
| 5. We were angry. ....                  | 10 I believe you. ....      |

### 42.4 དགག་ཆོག་ isn't/ haven't/ don't སྐད་སྐད་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་གྱུ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- They aren't rich. They **haven't** got much money.
- 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I ..... hungry.
- I ..... find my glasses. Have you seen them?
- George ..... write letters very often. He prefers to use the phone.
- We can walk to the station from here. It ..... very far.
- 'Where's Jill?' 'I ..... know. I ..... seen here today.'
- Be careful! ..... fall!
- We went to the cinema last night. I ..... like the film very much.
- I've been to Spain many times but I ..... been to Portugal.
- Julia ..... be here tomorrow. She's going away.
- 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I ..... do it.'
- We didn't see what happened. We ..... looking at the time.

### 42.5 བྱོན་གྱི་བྱ་ཤིས་ལ་གསལ་སྒྱུ་དེ་བཟོ་དགོས་ཀྱིས་ཁོའི་ལུན་དེ་དག་དགག་མིན་ཆུས་དགག་ཆོག་གང་གསལ་བོར་འབྲི་དགོས།

#### གསལ་བོར་འབྲི་དགོས།

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Are you married?                       | No. <b>He isn't married.</b> .....    |
| 2. Do you live in London?                 | Yes. <b>He lives in London.</b> ..... |
| 3. Were you born in London?               | No. ....                              |
| 4. Do you like London?                    | No. ....                              |
| 5. Would you like to live in the country? | Yes. ....                             |
| 6. Can you drive?                         | Yes. ....                             |
| 7. Have you got a car?                    | No. ....                              |
| 8. Do you read newspapers?                | No. ....                              |
| 9. Are you interested in politics?        | No. ....                              |
| 10. Do you watch TV most evening?         | Yes. ....                             |
| 11. Did you watch TV last night?          | No. ....                              |
| 12. Did you go out last night?            | Yes. ....                             |







## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

### 43.1 གཤམ་གྱི་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་དེ་དག་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བསྐོ་དགོས།

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I can swim.                   | (and you?) <b>Can you swim?</b>       |
| 2. I work hard.                  | (and Jim?) <b>Does Jim work hard?</b> |
| 3. I was late this morning.      | (and you?) .....                      |
| 4. I've got a key.               | (and Ann?) .....                      |
| 5. I'll be here tomorrow.        | (and you?) .....                      |
| 6. I'm going out this evening.   | (and Paul?) .....                     |
| 7. I like my job.                | (and you?) .....                      |
| 8. I live near here.             | (and Linda?) .....                    |
| 9. I enjoyed my holiday.         | (and you?) .....                      |
| 10. I had a shower this morning. | (and you?) .....                      |

### 43.2 རེ་ལུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ཁྱོད་གྱི་གྲོགས་པོས་རྒྱང་ས་འཁོར་གཏོང་བའི་སྐོར་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཏུ་བསྐོ་དགོས།

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| (have / car?) <b>Have you got a car?</b> | Yes, I have.           |
| (use / a lot?) .....it.....              | Yes, nearly every day. |
| (use/ yesterday?).....                   | Yes, to go to work.    |
| (enjoy driving?).....                    | Not very much.         |
| (a good drive?).....                     | I think I am.          |
| (ever/ have / an accident?) .....        | No, never.             |

### 43.3 གཤམ་གྱི་སྐོར་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་དག་གི་རེམ་སྒྲིག་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བསྐོ་དགོས།

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. (has/ gone/ where/ David?)                   | <b>Where has David gone?</b>    |
| 2. (working/ Rachel/ is/ today?)                | <b>Is Rachel working today?</b> |
| 3. (the children / what / are/ doing)           | what .....                      |
| 4. (made / is/ how/ cheese?)                    | .....                           |
| 5. (to the party / coming/ is/ your sister?)    | .....                           |
| 6. (you/ the truth/ tell/ don't/ why?)          | .....                           |
| 7. (your guests/ have/ yet/ arrived?)           | .....                           |
| 8. (leave/ what time/ your train/ does?)        | .....                           |
| 9. (your car / in the accident/ was / damaged?) | .....                           |
| 10. (to work/ Ann/ why/ go/ didn't?)            | .....                           |

### 43.4 གཤམ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བསྐོ་དགོས།

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. I want to go out.                       | Where <b>do you want to go?</b> |
| 2. Ann and Paul aren't going to the party. | Why <b>aren't they going?</b>   |
| 3. I'm reading.                            | What.....                       |
| 4. Sue went to bed early.                  | What time.....                  |
| 5. My parents are going on holiday.        | When.....                       |
| 6. I met Tom a few days ago.               | Where .....                     |
| 7. Tina has gone away.                     | Where.....                      |
| 8. I can't come to the party.              | Why .....                       |
| 9. I need some money.                      | How much.....                   |
| 10. Angela doesn't like me.                | Why .....                       |
| 11. It rains sometimes.                    | How often.....                  |
| 12. I did the shopping.                    | When.....                       |



ཕྱི་ཆོན་ཞི་བཞི་བ། WHO SAW YOU? དང WHO DID YOU SEE?

༧



Sylvia saw Paul.  
Who saw Paul.  
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)  
Who did Sylvia see?  
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Sylvia saw Paul

ཕྱི་ཆོན་པ།

Somebody saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?

Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him)

'who' གི་ཕྱི་ཆོན་པ་པོ་ཡིན།

'Paul' གི་ཕྱི་ཆོན་པའི་ཡུལ་ཡིན།

ཕྱི་ཆོན་ཡུལ།

Sylvia saw somebody.

Who did Sylvia see?

Paul. (she saw Paul.)

'who' གི་ཕྱི་ཆོན་པའི་ཡུལ་ཡིན།

'Sylvia' གི་ཕྱི་ཆོན་པ་པོ་ཡིན།

འདྲི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་ནང་ཏུ who དང what གཉིས་ནི་ཕྱི་ཆོན་པ་པོ་ཡིན།

- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?) ('who does lives'? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What happened? (= something happened – what?) ('what did happen? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What's happening? (what's = what is?)
- Who's got my key? (who's = who has)

འདྲི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་ཁྲིད་ཏུ who དང what གཉིས་ནི་ཕྱི་ཆོན་པའི་ཡུལ་ཡིན།

- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Sylvia wearing?

བསྐྱུར་བ།

- George likes oranges. **Who likes oranges?** – George.
- Jill won some money. **What does George like?** – oranges.
- **Who won** some money? – Jill.
- What did Jill win?** – A hundred pounds

ག ང་ཆོས་ who གི་མི་ལ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ཕྱི་ཆོན་དགོས་ཤིང་། what གི་ཅ་ལག་དང་དངོས་སོར་བཀོལ་དགོས།

- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?



## གཤམ་ལྷུང་།

44.1 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས་པ་དང་། དེ་གཉིས་ངེས་བར་དུ་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་དགོས།

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Somebody broke the window.    | <u>Who broke the window?</u> |
| 2. Something fell off the shelf. | What ..... me?               |
| 3. Somebody wants to see you.    | .....                        |
| 4. Somebody took my umbrella.    | .....                        |
| 5. Something made me ill.        | .....                        |
| 6. Somebody is coming.           | .....                        |

44.2 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས་པ་དང་། དེ་གཉིས་བྱེད་པ་པོ་དང་བྱ་ཡུལ་གཉིས་ལས་

གང་རུང་ཡིན་ཆོག

|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I bought something.            | <u>What did you buy?</u>       |
| 2. Somebody lives in this house.  | <u>Who lives in this house</u> |
| 3. I phoned somebody.             | .....                          |
| 4. Something happened last night. | .....                          |
| 5. Somebody knows the answer.     | .....                          |
| 6. Somebody did the washing-up.   | .....                          |
| 7. Jill did something.            | .....                          |
| 8. Something woke me up.          | .....                          |
| 9. Somebody saw the accident.     | .....                          |
| 10. I saw somebody.               | .....                          |
| 11. Somebody has got my pen.      | .....                          |
| 12. This word means something.    | .....                          |

44.3 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་སྐོང་ཆོག་དག་ལ་དྲི་བ་འདྲིན་དགོས།

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I lost XXX yesterday but fortunately XXX found it and gave it back to me.                           | <u>What did you lose?</u><br><u>Who found it?</u> |
| 2. XXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXX.   | .....<br>.....                                    |
| 3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXX. He said XXX.  | .....<br>.....                                    |
| 4. I hear that XXXX got married last week. XXX told me   | .....<br>.....                                    |
| 5. I met XXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXX.   | .....<br>.....                                    |
| 6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXX won. After the game we XXX.                                | .....<br>.....                                    |
| 7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXX. | .....<br>.....                                    |



ཕྱི་ཆ་ན་ཞེ་ལཱ་། WHO IS SHE TALKING TO? དང WHAT IS IT LIKE?

༡



Julia is talking to somebody.  
Who is she talking to?

who/ what/ where/ which...? སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གི་སྟུན་དུ་ཡོད་སྐབས་ད་ཆོས་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་སྟེ to/ from/ with སྐད་ཀྱི་ན་མ་

ཐུན་ཆོག་གུ་བ་ཀྱི་མཇུག་དུ་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'John was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with? / Who is she going with?'
- 'I want to talk to you.' 'What about?' 'What do you want to talk to me about?'

༢ what is it like? དང what are they like? སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།



What's (= what is) it like? བེ་བྱ་དངོས་ཞིག་གི་སྐོར་ཏེ། དེའི་ཆོ་ཆུང་། རིང་ཐུང་། བཟང་དན་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཅི་འདྲ་ཡིན་པའི་

དོན། ད་ཆོས་ what is it like? ཞེས་བརྗོད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་like བེ་ལས་ཆོག་མ་ཡིན་པར་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་ཡིན་པ་ཤེས་དགོས།

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.  
B: What's it like? Is it good?  
A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: What's your new teacher like?  
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.  
B: Did you? What are they like?  
A: They're very friendly.
- A: Did you have a nice holiday? What was the weather like?  
B: It was lovely. The sun shone every day.



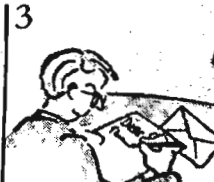
## གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

45.1 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་སྐོང་ཚིག་དག་ལ་དྲི་བ་འདྲིན་དགོས།

|                                   |                         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. The letter is from XXXX        | Who is the letter from? |
| 2. I'm looking for a XXXX         | What ..... You .....    |
| 3. I went to the cinema with XXXX | .....                   |
| 4. The film was about XXXX        | .....                   |
| 5. I gave the money to XXXX       | .....                   |
| 6. The book was written by XXXX   | .....                   |

45.2 དེ་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་དེ་དེའི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་དེ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྐོང་ཚིག་སྐོང་དགོས།

listen look talk talk wait write



1 Who is she talking to? .....

2 What .....

3 Who .....

4 What .....

5 What .....

6 Which bus .....

45.3 which ཚིག་གྲུབ་གྱི་སྔན་དུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྐོང་ཚིག་སྐོང་དགོས།

1. Tom's father is in hospital.

Which hospital is he in?

2. We stayed at a hotel.

.....you.....

3. Jack plays for a football team.

.....

4. I went to school in this town.

.....

45.4 what is / are ...like? སྔགས་བཀོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་འགོ་འདྲིང་ཆེ་བའི་རྒྱལ་ཁབ་ཞིག་གི་སྐོར་མི་གཞན་ལ་དྲི་བ་

འདྲིན་དགོས།

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?

(the people) .....

2. (the food) .....

(the weather) .....

45.5 What was / were... like? སྔགས་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.

What was the weather like?

2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.

.....

3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.

.....

4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.

.....



**ཚན་ཞི་བྱུག་པ།** WHAT...? དང WHICH...?/HOW...?

**what +** མིང་ཚིག་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཙུག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- > What colour is your car?      What colour are your eyes?
- > What size is this shirt?      What make is your TV set?
- > What time is it?      What day is it today?
- > What kind of job do you want? (What type of job...? / What sort of job ...?)

**what** ཡི་རྩེས་སྐུ་མིང་ཚིག་མེད་པར་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > What's your favorite colour?      What do you want to do this evening?

**which +** མིང་ཚིག་སྟེ་ཅ་ལག་དང་མི་བཞོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲིན་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- > Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- > Which doctor did you see – doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

**ཚས་which** ཡི་རྩེས་སྐུ་མིང་ཚིག་མེད་པར་དངོས་པོར་བཞོལ་བ། (མི་ལ་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)

- > Which is bigger- Canada or Australia?

**ཚས་who** རྟི་གང་ཟག་ལ་བཞོལ་སྐབས་སྐུ་མིང་ཚིག་མི་སྦྱར་བ་དཔེར་ན།

- > Who is taller – Bill or Gerry? ('which is taller?' ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)

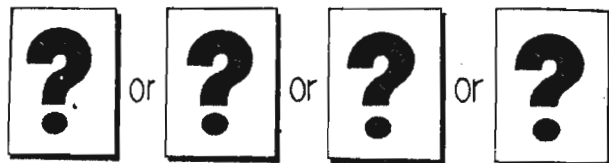
**what** དང **which** གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཐེད་སྦྱད་བྱེད་སྟངས།

**ཚས་which** རྟི་དངོས་པོ་གང་རུང་ཞིག་གི་གྲངས་འཁོར་ཁྱད་བའམ་བར་ཐག་སྤྱད་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སྐུ་བཞོལ།

- > We can go this way or that way.  
Which way shall we go?
- > There are four umbrellas here.  
Which is yours?

**ཚས་what** རྟི་གང་བདེར་བཞོལ་སྦྱད་བྱས་ཚིག་པ།

- > What is the capital of Argentina?
- > What sort of music do you like?



WHICH?

**ཐུར་བ།**

- > What colour are his eyes? ('which colour? ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- > What is the longest river in the world?
- > Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

**how...?** ཡི་ཐེད་སྦྱད་བྱེད་སྟངས།

- > 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
- > 'How do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

**ས་how +** བྱད་ཚས་ལྟན་པའི་ཚིག་གམ་ནམ་པ་ལྟན་པའི་ཚིག་གང་མཁོ་བཞོལ་སྦྱད་བྱས་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

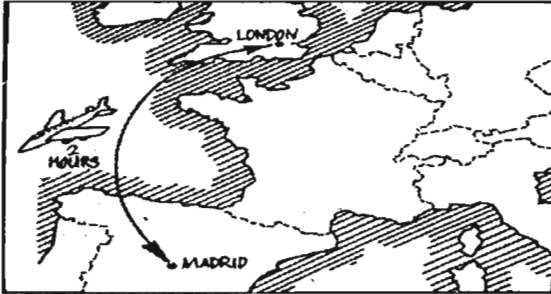
How { Tall are you? 'I'm 1 meter 70.'  
Big is the house? 'Not very big.'  
Old is your mother? 'She's 45.'  
Far is it from here to the airport? 'Five kilometers.'  
Often do you use your car? 'Every day.'  
Long have they been married? 'Ten years.'  
Much was the meal? 'Twenty pounds.'





ཆེ་ཆུང་གི་བརྒྱུན་པ། HOW LONG DOES IT TAKE...? .....དུས་ཡུན་ཅི་ཙམ་འགོར་རམ།

ག



|                       |             |          |                    |   |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------|--------------------|---|
| How long does it take |             | by plane | From....to<br>...? | ? |
| It takes              | two hours   | by train |                    |   |
|                       | Ten minutes | by car   |                    |   |
|                       | A long time |          |                    |   |

How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

ཁ ག་ལ་མཇུག་པའི་དུས་ཡུན་གྱི་མཇུག་པའི་དུས་ཡུན་ མཇུག་པའི་དུས་ཡུན་



|          |                     |         |                          |        |
|----------|---------------------|---------|--------------------------|--------|
| How long | does<br>did<br>will | it take | (you)<br>(Ann)<br>(them) | too... |
|----------|---------------------|---------|--------------------------|--------|

|    |                             |                           |                                      |       |
|----|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| It | Takes<br>took/<br>will take | (me)<br>( Ann)<br>( them) | a week<br>a long time<br>three hours | to... |
|----|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|

I started reading the book on Monday.

I finished to on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days to read it.

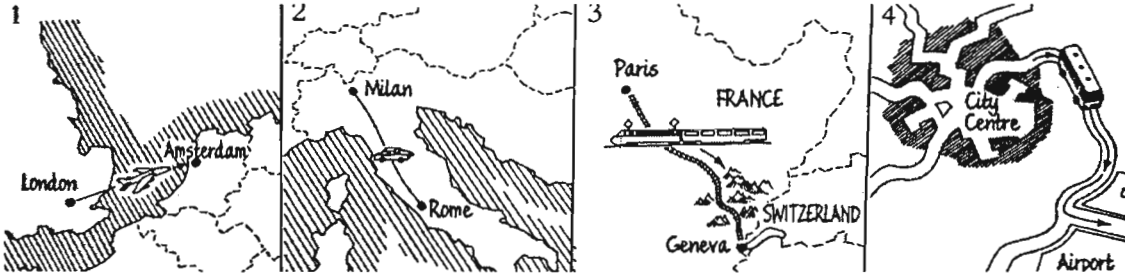
- How long does it take to fly from London to Madrid?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelet.
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work.
- 'I came by train'. 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- Did it take you a ling time to find a job?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It will take us an hour to cook the dinner.





## གསལ་བཟང་།

47.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་ how long...? བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

47.2 གསལ་བྱི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. fly from your city/ country to London.  
It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.
2. fly from your city/ country to new York.  
.....
3. study to be a doctor in your country  
.....
4. walk from you home to the nearest shop  
.....
5. get from your home to the nearest airport  
.....

47.3 How long did it take...? བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 (She found a place to live.) How long did it take her to find a place to live?
- 2 (I walked to the station.) .....you.....
- 3 (He cleaned the windows) .....
- 4 (I learnt to ski) .....
- 5 (They repaired the car.) .....

47.4 གསལ་བྱི་གནས་སྟངས་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་it took... བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་བྱུང་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.  
It took me three days to read the book.
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.  
.....
3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.  
.....
4. Mark drove to London yesterdays. He left home at 8 o'clock and got to London at 10.  
.....
5. Linda began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.  
.....
6. (རང་ཉིད་སྐོར་བྱི་ཆོག་བྱུང་གཅིག་བཟོས་ )  
.....



ཅི་ཞེས་བརྟུན་པ། DO YOU KNOW WHERE...? དང I DON'T KNOW WHAT...



ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ།

Where is Paula?

ཡིན་ནའང།

Do you know where Paula is?

(Do you know where is Paula? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

གོང་དང་འདྲ་བར་ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ།

I know / I don't know/ can you tell me where Paula is

ར་བ།

Who are those people?

How old is Linda?

What time is it?

Where can I go?

How much is this camera?

When are you going away?

Where have they gone?

What was Ann wearing?

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| Do you know<br>Can you tell me             | Who those people are?     |
|  | How old Linda is?         |
| I know<br>I don't know<br>I don't remember | What time it is?          |
|  | Where I can go?           |
|  | How much this camera is ? |
|  | When you're going away?   |
|  | Where they have gone?     |
|  | What Ann was wearing?     |

to/ does/ did སྐད་ཀྱིས་བཞུགས་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲེན་ཚུལ།

Where does he live?

Do you know where he lives? ('do you know where does he live?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ར་བ།

How do airplanes fly?

What does Jane want?

Why did she go home?

Where did I put the key?

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Do you know      | How airplanes fly?   |
| I don't know     | What Jane wants?     |
| I don't remember | Why she went home?   |
| I know           | Where I put the key? |

is...? / do...? / can...? སྐད་ཀྱིས་བཞུགས་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲེན་ཚུལ།

ར་བ།

Is Jack at home?

Have they got a car?

Can Brian swim?

Do they live near here?

Did anybody see you?

|              |                     |                      |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Do you know  | If<br>or<br>whether | Jack is at home?     |
| I don't know |                     | They've got a car?   |
|              |                     | Brian can swim?      |
|              |                     | They live near here? |
|              |                     | Anybody saw you?     |

ཅིས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་གྱུར་ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་དང་whether གཉིས་པོ་དེ་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་གྱུར་ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་

> Do you know if they've got a car? ཡང་ན Do you know whether they've got a car?



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

48.1 I don't know where/ when/ why... མིགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- |   |                                   |   |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Have your friends gone home?      | (where) I <u>don't know where they've gone.</u> |
| 2 | Is Kate in her office?            | (where) I don't know.....                       |
| 3 | Is the castle very old?           | (how old) .....                                 |
| 4 | Will Paula be here soon?          | (when) .....                                    |
| 5 | Was he angry because I was late?  | (why) .....                                     |
| 6 | Has Sally lived here a long time? | (how long) .....                                |

48.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཞོང་དགོས།

- |   |                                  |                                       |
|---|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | (How do airplanes fly?)          | <u>Do you know how airplanes fly?</u> |
| 2 | (Where does Susan work?)         | I don't know.....                     |
| 3 | (What did Peter say?)            | Do you remember.....                  |
| 4 | (Why did he go home early?)      | I don't know.....                     |
| 5 | (What time does the film begin?) | Do you know.....                      |
| 6 | (How did the accident happen?)   | I don't remember.....                 |

48.3 བཅར་ཤ་གཅོད་པ།

- |    |  |                                     |           |
|----|--|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. | Do you know what time is <u>it / it is?</u>                  | Do you know what time <u>it is?</u> | Is right. |
| 2. | Why <u>are you / you are</u> going away?                     |                                     |           |
| 3. | I don't know where <u>are they / they are</u> going?         |                                     |           |
| 4. | Can you tell me where <u>is the museum/ the museum is?</u>   |                                     |           |
| 5. | Where <u>do you want / you want</u> to go for your holidays? |                                     |           |
| 6. | Do you know what <u>do elephants eat/ elephants eat?</u>     |                                     |           |

48.4 do you know if...? བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཞོང་དགོས།

- |    |                                 |  |
|----|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. | (Have they got a car?)          | <u>Do you know if they've got a car?</u> |
| 2. | (Are they married?)             | Do you know.....                         |
| 3. | (Does Sue know Bill?)           | .....                                    |
| 4. | (Will George be here tomorrow?) | .....                                    |
| 5. | (Did he pass his exam?)         | .....                                    |

48.5 do you know...? ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མགོར་བཞོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་བཞོང་དགོས།

- |    |                                  |                                    |
|----|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. | (What does Ann want?)            | <u>Do you know what Ann wants?</u> |
| 2. | (Where is Paula?)                | Do.....                            |
| 3. | (Is she working today?)          | .....                              |
| 4. | (What time does she start work?) | .....                              |
| 5. | (Are the shops open tomorrow?)   | .....                              |
| 6. | (Where do Sarah and Tim live?)   | .....                              |
| 7. | (Did they go to Ann's party?)    | .....                              |









48.6 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིང་བསྟན་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྒྲིང་ཆ་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཞོང་དགོས།

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 1. | Do you know why <u>the bus was late?</u> |
| 2. | Do you know what time .....              |
| 3. | Excuse me, can you tell me where .....   |
| 4. | I don't know what .....                  |
| 5. | Do you know if .....                     |



# ཞེ་ཆ་ཀ་ཞེ་དགུ་བ། SHE SAID THAT...དང HE TOLD ME THAT ...

ག

|  |                                      |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| <p>གཟུང་འཁོར་སྒྲོན་མར་བྱོད་རང་སྒྲོ་ཆེགས་སུ་སྤང་ཞིང།<br/>གནས་དེར་བྱོད་ཀྱི་གྲགས་པ་མི་ཁྱེད་བཞིག་སྤེལ་འདུག།<br/>འདིར་ཁོ་ཆོས་བྱོད་ལ་བཤད་པའི་སྐད་ཆ་ཁ་ཤས་ཡོད།</p> <p>DIANE</p>  <p>I'm enjoying my new job.<br/>My father isn't very well.</p> | <p>Am<br/>is was</p>                 | <p>དེ་རིང་བྱོད་པ་ལ་གས་དང་མངལ་ཞིང།<br/>བྱོད་ཀྱིས་པ་ལ་ལགས་ལ་སྒྲོ་ཆེགས་དེའི་ཕྱིར་བྱོད་ཀྱི་གྲགས་པ་<br/>དེ་དག་གིས་བྱོད་ལ་ཅི་ཞིག་བཤད་པ་ན་མས་ཁོང་ལ་བཤད་དགོས།</p> <p>Dian said that she was enjoying her new job.<br/>She said that her father wasn't very well.</p> |
| <p>SARAH</p>  <p>house TIM</p> <p>We're going to buy a house.</p>   | <p>Are — were</p>                    | <p>Sarah and Tim said that they were going to buy a house.</p>   |
| <p>PETER</p>  <p>I have to go early.<br/>My sister has gone to Australia.</p>   | <p>Have had<br/>Has had</p>          | <p>Peter said that he had to go early.<br/>He said that his sister had gone to Australia.</p>  |
| <p>ANN</p>  <p>STEVE</p>  <p>I can't find a job.<br/>I'll phone you.</p>   | <p>Can/ could<br/>Will/ would</p>    | <p>Ann said that she couldn't find a job.<br/>Steve said that he would phone me.</p>   |
| <p>ANGELA</p>  <p>I don't like my job.<br/>My son doesn't like school.</p>   | <p>Do did<br/>Does</p>               | <p>Angela said that she didn't like her job.<br/>She said that her son didn't like school.</p>   |
|  <p>You look tired.</p>  <p>I feel fine.</p>   | <p>Look — looked<br/>Feel — felt</p> | <p>Mike said that I looked tired.<br/>I said that I felt fine.</p>   |

## ཁ say དང tell གཉིས་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་སྐབས།

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Say (said)</p> <p>Say + to + མིང་ཆོག ( that ཡོད་ཆེ་ཏེ་བེད་སྤྱད་མ་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག )</p> <p>(བྱ་ཡུལ་སྟོན་པའི་མིང་ཆོག)</p> | <p>tell (told)</p> <p>tell + མིང་ཆོག</p> <p>(བྱ་ཡུལ་སྟོན་པའི་མིང་ཆོག)</p> |
|--|---|

- > He said that he was tired. (he said me ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > He told me that he was tired. ('he told that...' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > What did she say to you? ( 'say you' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > What did she tell you? ('tell to you' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

he said me དང་ཡང་ན་I said Ann སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་། གཞན་དུང་he told to me དང་I told to Ann ཞེས་ཀྱང་འབྲི་མི་རུང་།

## ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- > He said that he was tired. ཡང་ན་ He said he was tired. ( 'that' མིང་པར་བཞོལ་ཀྱང་ཆོག )
- > Ann told me that she didn't like her job. ཡང་ན་ Ann told me she didn't like her job.



## གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

49.1 གཤམ་གྱི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་བཤད་པའི་སྐད་ཆ་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་ *he/ she/ they said (that)* སྐད་ཀྱི་ལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་

ཆམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. I've lost my watch.<br><b>He said he had lost his watch.</b> | 6 I don't feel very well.<br>.....           |
| 2. I'm very busy.<br>.....                                      | 7 We'll be home late.<br>.....               |
| 3. I can't go to the party.<br>.....                            | 8 I've just come back from holiday.<br>..... |
| 4. I have to go out.<br>.....                                   | 9 I'm going to buy a computer.<br>.....      |
| 5. I'm learning Russian.<br>.....                               | 10 We haven't got a key.<br>.....            |

49.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྐད་ཆ་ཆམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her now job.
- Betty didn't want anything to eat. She said .....
- I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder but he said.....
- Sally was invited to the party but she said .....
- Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said .....
- Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said .....
- I was looking for Robert. Linda said .....
- 'Why did Steve stay at home?' 'He said.....
- 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said .....

49.3 say/ said དང་ཡང་ན། tell/ told. སྐད་ཀྱི་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྐད་ཆ་ཆམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. He <u>said</u> he was tired.         | 7 The woman .....she was a reporter.                               |
| 2. What did she <u>tell</u> you?        | 8 The woman.....us she was a reporter.                             |
| 3. Ann .....she didn't like Peter.      | 9 They asked me a lot of questions but I didn't.....them anything. |
| 4. Jack .....me that you were ill.      | 10 They asked me a lot or questions but I didn't.....anything.     |
| 5. Please don't .....Jim what happened. |  |
| 6. Did Lucy .....she would be late?     |  |



ཐོ་ཚན་ལྟ་བུ་བྱ་བ། WORK/ WORKING དང་ GO/GOING ཡང་ན་ DO/ DOING སྟགས།

༡ work /go/ be སྟགས་ནི་ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ཡིན།

ང་ཚོས་ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ནི་will/ can/ must སྟགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

|        |                                  |   |                     |
|--------|----------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| will   | Ann will be here soon.           | } | ཐོ་ཚན་28-29 ལ་སྟོན། |
| shall  | Shall I open the window?         |   |                     |
| might  | I might phone you later.         | } | ཐོ་ཚན་30 ལ་སྟོན།    |
| may    | May I sit here?                  |   |                     |
| can    | I can't meet you tomorrow.       | } | ཐོ་ཚན་31 ལ་སྟོན།    |
| could  | Could you pass the salt, please? |   |                     |
| must   | It's late. I must go now.        |   | ཐོ་ཚན་32 ལ་སྟོན།    |
| should | You shouldn't work so hard.      |   | ཐོ་ཚན་33 ལ་སྟོན།    |
| would  | Would you like some coffee?      |   | ཐོ་ཚན་35 ལ་སྟོན།    |

|                     |                                |                       |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| do/ does            | Do you work?                   | ཐོ་ཚན་6 ན་མ་7 ལ་སྟོན། |
| (སྒྱུར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ) | They don't work very hard.     |                       |
|                     | Tina doesn't know many people. |                       |
|                     | How much does it cost?         |                       |
| did                 | What time did the train leave? | ཐོ་ཚན་12 ལ་སྟོན།      |
| (སྒྱུར་བཏང་འདས་པ)   | We did not sleep well.         |                       |

༢ to work/ to go/ to be སྟགས་ཏེ་ to + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

|                      |                                    |                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| (I'm) going to...    | I'm going to play tennis tomorrow. | ཐོ་ཚན་27 ལ་སྟོན། |
|                      | What are you going to do?          |                  |
| (I) have to...       | I have to go now.                  | ཐོ་ཚན་34 ལ་སྟོན། |
|                      | Everybody has to eat.              |                  |
| (I) want to...       | Do you want to go out?             | ཐོ་ཚན་31 ལ་སྟོན། |
|                      | They don't want to come with us.   |                  |
| (I) would like to... | I'd like to talk to you.           | ཐོ་ཚན་35 ལ་སྟོན། |
|                      | Would you like to go out?          |                  |
| (I) used to...       | Dave used to work in a factory.    | ཐོ་ཚན་25 ལ་སྟོན། |

༣ working/ going/ playing སྟགས།

|  |  |                                  |
|--|--|----------------------------------|
| Am/ is/ are + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ing དུ་བསྟོན་དགོས། | Please be quiet. I'm working.            | ཐོ་ཚན་3 ན་མ་4/ 8 /26 བཅས་ལ་སྟོན། |
| (ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)                                     | Tom isn't working today.                 |                                  |
|  | What time are you going out?             |                                  |
| Was/ were + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ing དུ་སྟོན་དགོས།    | It was raining, so we didn't go out.     | ཐོ་ཚན་13 ན་མ་14 ལ་སྟོན།          |
| (འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)                                  | What were you doing when the phone rang? |                                  |



## གསལ་བྱུང་།

50.1 ... phone Paul དང་ཡང་ན ... to phone Paul བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                    |                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I'll <u>phone</u> Paul.         | 6 Do you have..... |
| 2. I'm going <u>to phone</u> Paul. | 7 You should ..... |
| 3. Can you .....                   | 8 I want .....     |
| 4. Shall I .....                   | 9 I might .....    |
| 5. I'd like .....                  | 10 You must .....  |

50.2 གསལ་བྱེད་ལས་ཆོག་ཡང་དག་པ་རེ་བདམས་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བྱེད་དགོས་ལ། ལས་ཆོག་དེ་

ནམས་དགོས་མཁོའི་དབང་གིས་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་སམ་ཡང་ན་དེའི་ཐེས་སུ་ing ཟུར་ནས་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག་

|             |                   |                 |                 |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| do/ doing   | get/ getting      | sleep/ sleeping | watch/ watching |
| eat/ eating | go/ going         | stay/ staying   | wear/ wearing   |
| fly/ flying | listen/ listening | wait/ waiting   | work/ working   |

- Please be quite. I'm working.
- I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
- What time do you usually .....up in the morning?
- 'Where are you .....?' 'To the bank.'
- Did you .....television last night?
- Look at that plane! It's .....very low.
- You can turn off the radio. I'm not .....to it.
- They didn't .....anything because they weren't hungry.
- My friends were ..... for me when I arrived.
- 'Does Sharon always ..... glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
- 'What are you .....this evening?' 'I'm ..... at home.'

50.3 ཟློར་བྱེད་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

(དགོས་མཁོ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་མ་གཟུགས་སམ་ཡང་ན་to + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། ཡང་ན་ing སྟགས་བཞོལ་ནས་ཁ་སྐོང་དགོས་)

- Shall I open the window? (open)
- It's late. I have to go now. (go)
- Ann isn't working this week. she's on holiday. (work)
- I'm tired. I don't want .....out. (go)
- It might ....., so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
- What time do you have .....tomorrow morning? (leave)
- I'm afraid I can't .....you. (help)
- My brother is a student. He's .....physics. (study)
- Would you like .....on a trip round the world? (go)
- When you saw Janet, what was she.....? (wear)
- When you go to London, where are you going.....? (stay)
- I'm hungry. I must .....something to eat. (have)
- 'Where's George?' 'He's .....a bath.' (have)
- I used .....a car but I sold it last year. (have)
- He spoke very quietly. I couldn't .....him.(hear)
- You don't look well. I don't think you should .....to work today. (go)
- I don't know what he said. I wasn't .....to him. (listen)
- I'm sorry I'm late. I had.....a phone call. (make)
- I want.....what happened. (Know) You must .....me. (tell)
- May I .....your phone? (use)



ཐོ་ཆེན་དག་ཅིག་ལ། TO (I WANT TO DO) དང ING (I ENJOY DOING)

ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་to... བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་སྤངས་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

want plan decide try  
hope expect offer forget  
need promise refuse learn

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་གཞན་ཞིག་ཡོད་ཆེ་ངེས་  
པར་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་ཆེས་མཐོང་ན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- What do you **want to do** this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- You **forgot to switch off** the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to read** my book but I was too tired.

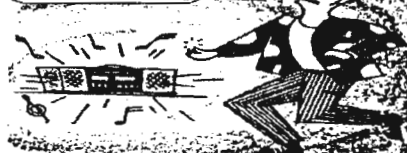
ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ing བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་སྤངས་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

enjoy stop  
mind finish suggest

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་གཞན་ཞིག་ཡོད་ཆེ་ངེས་  
པར་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་ཆེས་མཐོང་ན་དུ་ing སྤྱད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- I **enjoy dancing**. ('enjoy to dance' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I don't **mind getting up** early.
- Has it **stopped raining**?
- Sonia **suggested going** to the cinema.

I enjoy dancing.



ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ing འམ་ཡང་ན་to གཉིས་གང་བདེར་བཀོལ་ཆོག་པ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

like love start  
prefer hate begin continue

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་གང་རུང་ཞིག་ཡོད་ཆེ་ངེས་  
ཆོས་ing དང་to གཉིས་གང་བདེར་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་ཆོག་དཔེར་ན།

- Do you **like getting up** early? ཡང་ན། Do you like to get up early?
- I **prefer traveling** by car. ཡང་ན། I **prefer to traveling** by car.
- Ann **loves dancing**. ཡང་ན། Ann **loves to dance**.
- I **hate being** late. ཡང་ན། I **hate to be** late.
- It **started raining**. ཡང་ན། it **started to rain**.

would like to སྤྲོད་ཆུང་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་ཆུང་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

would like would love  
would prefer would hate

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ཆོས་ལས་ཆོག་གཞན་ཞིག་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་སྤངས་ལས་  
ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྤྱད་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་དགོས་པ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

- Julia **would like to meet** you. ('Would like meeting' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd ཅི་ I would ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་པ་ཡིན།)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd **prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- I **wouldn't like to be** a teacher.







ཐེ་ཆེན་འགན་ཁུར་། I WANT YOU TO དང I TOLD YOU TO

༡ I want you to ཡི་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ལྟངས།



The woman wants to go.  
The man doesn't want the woman to go.  
He wants her to stay.

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

I want { you / somebody / Ann } to do something.

➤ I want you to be happy. ('I want that you are happy' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

ང་ཆོས་would like ཡང་དེ་ལྟར་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག

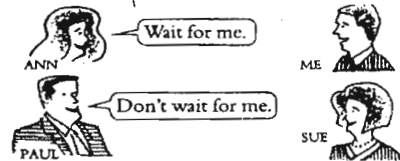
- Would you like me to lend you some money?

༢ ང་ཆོས་རེ་ལྟ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཆོག་སྟེ།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་ + གང་ཟག་ + to + ལས་ཆོག་ + བྱ་ལྟལ།

|          |             |           |          |         |                 |
|----------|-------------|-----------|----------|---------|-----------------|
| ask      | Sue         | asked     | a friend | to lend | her some money. |
| tell     | I           | told      |          | you     | to be           |
| advise   | careful.    |           |          |         |                 |
| expect   | What do you | advise    |          | me      | to do?          |
| persuade | I didn't    | expect    | them     | to be   | here.           |
| teach    | We          | persuaded | George   | to come | with us.        |

༣ I told you to དང I told you not to



Ann told me to wait for her.  
Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

༤ make དང let གནེས་ཀྱི་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཚུལ་གཤམ་གསལ་ལྟར།

make དང let གནེས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱས་མི་ཆོག

- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. ( 'makes me to laugh' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working. ( 'let me to use' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་མི་གཞན་ཞིག་རང་ཉིད་དང་མཉམ་ཁུ་ལས་ཀྱི་བྱེད་པར་སྐྱལ་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་let's ... (= let us )བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག དཔེར་ན།

- Come on! Let's dance.
- 'Shall we go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

401



ཐོ་ཚུགས་པ་གསུམ་ལ། I went to the shop to

ག

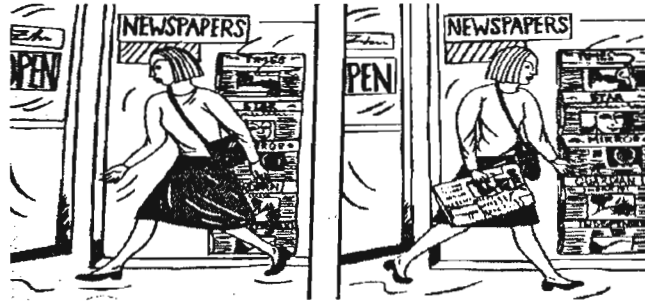
ཐོ་མི་ལགས་ལ་ཚགས་པར་ཞིག་དགོས་པས་ཁོ་མོ་ཚང་

ཁང་དུ་བྱིན།

Why did she go to the shop?

To buy a newspaper.

She went to the shop to buy a newspaper.



ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྒྲིབ་དུ་To...(to buy/ to see) བཞོལ་བ་ནི་རྒྱ་མཚན་སྒྲིབ་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱེད་ཅིང། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Why are you going to out?' 'To get some bread.'
- Ann went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

Money/ time to གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱེད་ཅིང། དཔེར་ན།

- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

ཁ ཏང་ for གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱེད་ཚུལ།

To ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཞོལ་དགོས།

I went to the shop to buy a newspaper.

(Not 'for buy)

They're going to Scotland to see their friends.

We need some money to buy food.

for ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཞོལ་དགོས།

I went to the shop for a newspaper.

They're going to Scotland for a holiday.

We need some money for food.

ག wait for ...

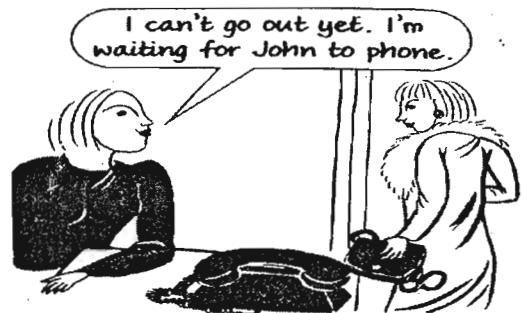
- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

Wait to ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཞོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

Wait for ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་ + གང་ཟག་གམ་དངོས་པོ་ + to + ལས་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱེད་ཅིང། དཔེར་ན།

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?





## གཤམ་བྱ་བ་

53.1 གཤམ་བྱ་འཁྲུག་ལས་ལས་ཆོག་བདམས་ཐོས། I went to...ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་ར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་  
དགོས།

the station      the post office  
the café      the supermarket

buy some food      get some stamps  
catch a train      meet a friend

1) I went to the station to catch a train.

2) I went \_\_\_\_\_

3) \_\_\_\_\_

4) \_\_\_\_\_

53.2 འཁྲུག་ལས་ལས་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་གཤམ་བྱ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཅོ་དགོས།

1) I turned on the television to watch the news.

2) Alice sat down in an armchair \_\_\_\_\_

3) Do I need a key \_\_\_\_\_

4) I went for a walk by the river \_\_\_\_\_

5) I knocked on the door of David's room \_\_\_\_\_

6) The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window \_\_\_\_\_

53.2 to བཀོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་དྲན་ཚུལ་ལྟར་གཤམ་བྱ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཅོ་དགོས།

to open this door      to wake him up      to see who it was  
to watch the news      to read the newspaper      to get some fresh air

1) I went to the shop to buy a newspaper.

2) I'm very busy. I haven't got time \_\_\_\_\_

3) I phoned Ann \_\_\_\_\_

4) I'm going out \_\_\_\_\_

5) I borrowed some money \_\_\_\_\_

53.4 to འཕང་ལང་ན་for བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་བྱ་སྤྱོད་ཆ་ནམས་ཁ་སྤྱོད་དགོས།

1) Paula went to a shop to buy some bread.

2) We went to go to restaurant.....have dinner.

3) Robert wants to go to university.....study economics.

4) I'm going to London.....an interview next week.

5) I'm going to London.....visit some friends of mine.

6) Have you got time .....a cup of coffee?

7) I got up late this morning. I didn't have time.....wash.

8) Everybody needs money.....live.

9) The office is very small. There's space only .....a desk and chair.

10) A: Excuse me, are you waiting .....use the phone?

B: No, I'm waiting .....somebody.

53.5 གཤམ་བྱ་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

John / phone      it / to arrive      you / tell me      the film / begin

1) I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.

2) I sat down in the cinema and waited \_\_\_\_\_

3) We called an ambulance and waited \_\_\_\_\_

4) 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting. \_\_\_\_\_



## ཟླ་ཆ་ན་འབཞེ་བ། GO TO... GO ON... GO FOR ... GO -ING

### ༡ go to ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to France** next week.
- Tom didn't **go to the concert**.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone to bed**.'
- I **went to the dentist** last week.

go to



### Go to sleep རི་གཉིད་པའི་དོན།

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

### Go home གཉིས་ཀྱི་བར་དུ་འཇོག་སྟེ་ཁྱེད་མི་རུང་།

- I'm **going home** now. ('going to home' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

### ༢ go on ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| go on | holiday      |
|       | a trip       |
|       | a tour       |
|       | an excursion |
|       | a cruise     |
|       | strike       |

- We're going on holiday next week.
- Children often go on school trips.
- When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
- The workers have gone on strike. (=they are refusing to work)

### ༣ go for ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

|                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| go (somewhere) for | a walk    |
|                    | a run     |
|                    | a swim    |
|                    | a drink   |
|                    | a meal    |
|                    | a holiday |
|                    |           |

- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone for a walk**.'
- Do you **go for a run** every day?
- The sea looks nice. Let's **go for a swim**.
- We **went for a drink** after work yesterday.
- Shall we **go out for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.
- They've **gone to Scotland for a holiday**.

(ང་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་on holiday ཞེས་བཀོལ་མིན་འོན་ཀྱང་holiday ཡི་ཚུན་དུ་མཛད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཚོས་for a holiday ཞེས་འབྲི་འོ)

### ང་ go + ལས་ཆེག་ + -ing བསྟོན་པའི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ང་ཚོས་go + ལས་ཆེག་ཉེ་ལུས་ཚུལ་གྱི་སྐོར་རམ་ཡང་ན། ཉེ་ཆར་གི་སྐོར་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ལས་ཆེག་དེ་དག་གི་ཚེས་སུ་

ing བཅུང་སྟེ་ཁྱེད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

|                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| I go            | shopping |
| He is going     | swimming |
| We went         | fishing  |
| They have gone  | sailing  |
| She wants to go | skiing   |
|                 | jogging  |
|                 | skiing   |

- **Are you going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (ཡང་ན་ let's go for a swim.)
- Rachel has a small boat and she often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.





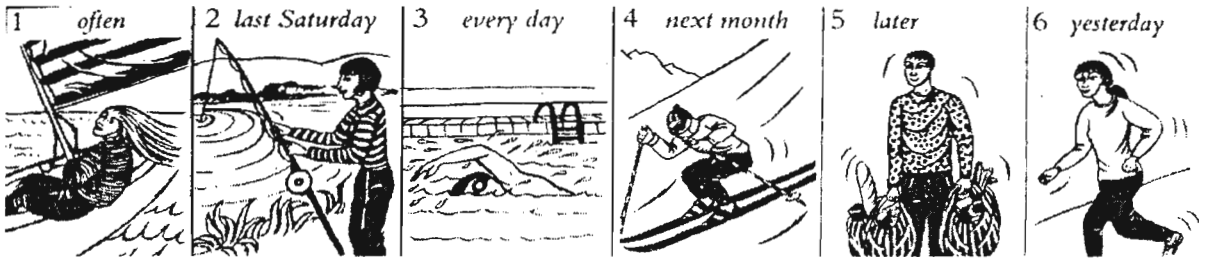
## གཤམ་སྒྱུད་

### 54.1. to/on/for སྐད་སྒྱུད་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

- 1) I'm going to France next week.
- 2) Rachel often goes....sailing.
- 3) Sue went .....Mexico last year.
- 4) Would you like to go .....the cinema this evening?
- 5) Jack goes.....jogging every morning.
- 6) I'm tired because I went to party last night and went .....bed very late.
- 7) Martin is going .....holiday .....Italy next week.
- 8) The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went .....a swim.
- 9) There will be no buses next week because the bus drivers are going .....strike.
- 10) I need some stamps, so I'm going .....the post office.
- 11) It's late. I must go .....home now.
- 12) Would you like to go .....a tour of the city?
- 13) Shall we go out .....a meal this evening?
- 14) My parents are going .....a cruise this summer.

### 54.2 go/goes/going/went སྐད་སྒྱུད་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་སྒྱུ་+ ing བཀོལ་བའི་ནུས་པ་བེད་སྤྱད་དེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཆ་ཆང་

#### བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1) Rachel has a boat. She often goes sailing.
- 2) Last Saturday Diane went.....
- 3) George .....every day.
- 4) Linda is going on holiday next month. She is .....
- 5) Peter is going out later. He has to .....
- 6) Sheila .....after work yesterday evening.

### 54.3 ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་དང་མཉམ་དུ to/on/for སྐད་སྒྱུད་ལ་ནས་

#### འོག་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཡང་དག་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Home/shopping/holiday/a swim/ sleep/ a walk/Portugal/riding/the bank/skiing

- 1) The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- 2) Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone .....to get some money.'
- 3) I'm going .....now. I have to buy some presents.
- 4) I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went .....
- 5) I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went .....early.
- 6) We live near the mountains. In winter we go .....every weekend.
- 7) Richard has got a horse. He often goes .....
- 8) The weather is nice. Shall we go .....in the park?
- 9) A: Are you going .....soon?
- 10) B: Yes, next month. We're going .....



## ཐྱེ་ཆེན་འཕྲ་བ། GET

ག get + མིང་ཆོག་བཞུགས་ཆེ་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་འབྱོར་བའམ་ཉིས་པ། འབྱོར་བ། རྟེན་པ་སྟགས་ཀྱི་དོན།  
you get it

You don't have something.

You have it.

- > 'Did you get my letter?' 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (འབྱོར་བའི་དོན།)
- > I like your pullover. Where did you get it? (ཉིས་བའི་དོན།)
- > (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ་) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll get her.' (འབྱོར་བའི་དོན།)
- > It's difficult to get a job at the moment. (རྟེན་པའི་དོན།)

གཞན་དང་ཆོས་ get + a bus / a train / a taxi སྟགས་ལྟར་བཞུགས་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག

- > 'Did you come here on foot?' 'No, I got the bus.'

ཁ get + བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བཞུགས་ཆེ་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་ཆགས་པའམ་གྲུབ་པའི་དོན།

you get hungry

You're not hungry

you are hungry

- > If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- > Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- > I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
- > We got very wet because we didn't have an umbrella.

གཞན་ཡང་།

get married བྱེ་གཉེན་གྱི་བྱས་པའི་དོན།

- > Linda and Frank are getting married soon.

Get dressed བྱེ་གྲོས་ཀྱི་བྱས་པའི་དོན།

- > I got up and got dressed quickly.

Get lost བྱེ་ (ལམ་) བོར་བའི་དོན།

- > We went for a walk and got lost.

ག Get + ཡི་རྒྱུས་སྟུས་ཆའི་མིང་བཞུགས་ཆེ་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་སྟགས་དེར་འབྱོར་བའི་དོན།

- > I usually get to work before 8.30. (འབྱོར་བའི་དོན།)
- > We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.
- > How did you get here? By bus?

GET TO



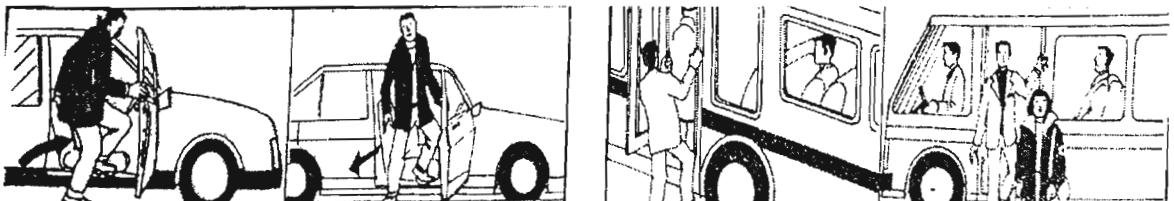
Get home (to བེད་སྟུང་བྱེད་མཆོག)

- > What time did you get home last night?

ཁ get in / out / on / off སྟགས་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་ཆུ་ལ།

get in དང་ get out གཉིས་ནི་ཆང་ས་འཁོར་ཆུང་བར་བེད་སྟུང་བྱེད་ལ། get on དང་ get off གཉིས་ནི་སྒྱུ་སྟུང་ཆང་ས་

འཁོར་དང་མེ་འཁོར། གནམ་སྟུ་སྟགས་ལ་བེད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།



- > A car stopped and a man got out. (ཡང་ན་ a man got out of the car.)
- > We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.





## གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

55.1 **get(s)** དང་མཉམ་དུ་རེའུ་མིག་ལས་ལས་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|             |               |           |          |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|----------|
| a taxi      | my letter     | some milk | a doctor |
| your jacket | a good salary | a ticket  | the job  |

- 1) I wrote to you last week. Did you **get my letter**?
- 2) Where did you .....? It's very nice.
- 3) Quick! This man is ill. We must .....
- 4) I don't want to walk home. Let's .....
- 5) I had an interview with the manager but I didn't.....
- 6) When you go out, can you .....?
- 7) 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can.....'
- 8) Margaret has got a well-paid job. She .....

55.2 **getting** ཡི་ཇེས་སུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

dark late cold ready married

- 1) Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- 2) Turn on the light. It's .....
- 3) I'm .....next week,' 'Ohm really? Congratulations!'
- 4) 'Where's Sally?' 'She's .....to go out.'
- 5) It's ..... It's time to go home.

55.3 **get/ got** ཡི་ཇེས་སུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

angry better hungry lost married nervous old wet

- 1) If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- 2) Don't go out in the rain. You'll .....
- 3) My brother.....last year. His wife's name is Julia.
- 4) Why did you.....with me? I didn't do anything wrong.
- 5) We tried to find the hotel but we .....
- 6) Everybody wants to stay young but we all .....
- 7) Most people.....before examinations.

55.4 **I left ...and got to ....** བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Home/ 7.30—work/ 8.15 **I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.**
- 2) London / 10.15—Bristol / 11.45  
I left London at 10.15 and .....
- 3) The party/ 11.15—home/ midnight  
.....
- 4) Write a true sentence about yourself.  
I left .....

55.5 **got in / got out of / got on / got off** སྐོག་ས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Kate **got in** the car and drove away.
- 2) I .....the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
- 3) Ann.....the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
- 4) I made a stupid mistake. I.....the wrong train.



## མེ་ཚན་བཟོ་བ་ DO MAKE

### ༡ Do ཡིས་སྒྱུར་བཅང་འགུལ་སྒྱུར་གྱི་ནམ་པ་སྟོན། དཔེར་ན།

- What are you **doing** this evening? ('what are you making' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's ok. I'll **do** it.'
- Julia's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

### What do you do? དང་'What's your job? གཉིས་གྱི་དོན་འདྲའོ།

- What do you do? 'I work in a bank.'

### ༢ make བྱི་བཟོས་པའི་དོན། དཔེར་ན།



She's **making** coffee.



He has **made** a cake.



They **make** umbrellas.



It was **made** in France.

### do དང་ make གཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

- I **did** a lot of things yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
- B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for children.

### ༣ do ཡི་བཀོལ་སྟུང་།

Do  
an exam / a test  
a course  
homework  
somebody a favour  
exercises  
housework

- I'm doing my driving test next week.
- John has just done a training course.
- Have the children done their homework?
- Ann, could you do me a favor?
- I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.

### གཞན་ཡང་འདི་ལྟར་'do the shopping / the washing / the washing -up / the ironing / the cooking.

- I did the washing but I didn't do the shopping.

### ༤ make ཡི་བཀོལ་སྟུང་།

Make  
a mistake  
an appointment  
a phone call  
a list  
a noise  
a bed

- I'm sorry. I **made** a mistake.
- I must **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me; I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- It's late. We mustn't **make** a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.

### བཞོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚུགས་ཏེ་'make a film ཡིན་ནའང་བཞོས་' take a photograph:

- When was **this** film **made**? ཡང་ན་ When was **this** photograph **taken**?



## གཤམ་སྒྱུར་

56.1 make / making / made ཡང་ན do / doing / did / done སྒྲིག་སྒྱུ་བཞུགས་པའི་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཞོན་

དགོས།

- 1) 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's ok. I'll do it.
- 2) What did you .....at the weekend? Did you go away?
- 3) Do you know how to .....bread?
- 4) Paper is .....from wood.
- 5) Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and .....nothing.
- 6) What do you.....?' 'I'm a doctor.'
- 7) I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you .....it?
- 8) What do they .....in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
- 9) I'm .....some coffee. Would you like some?
- 10) Why are you angry with me? I didn't .....anything wrong.
- 11) What are you .....tomorrow afternoon? 'I'm working.'

56.2 གཤམ་གྱི་རིམ་འཛིན་ཀྱི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་འཕྲིན་ཐོག་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས།



- 1) He's making a cake. ....
- 2) They..... ....
- 3) ..... ..
- 4) ..... ..
- 5) ..... ..
- 6) ..... ..

56.3 make འཕྲིན་ཡང་ན do གཉིས་བཞུགས་པའི་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཞོན་དགོས།

- 1) I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- 2) Why do you always .....the same mistake?
- 3) 'Can you .....me a favor?' 'It depends what it is.'
- 4) 'Have you .....your homework?' 'Not yet.'
- 5) I need to see the dentist but I haven't .....an appointment.
- 6) I'm .....a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
- 7) The last time I .....an exam was ten years ago.
- 8) When you've finished Exercise 1, you can .....Exercise 2.
- 9) There's something wrong with the car. The engine is .....a strange noise.
- 10) It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever.....
- 11) Let's .....a list of all the thing we have to .....today.



## ཐོ་ཚན་པ་བཟུང་བ། HAVE

གྱི་ have དང have got (ཐོ་ཚན་པ་ལྟ་སྟེ།)

I've got ཡང་ན I have (དངོས་པོ་, བོ་རང་ལ་དངོས་པོ་ཡོད་པའི་དོན།)

- I've got a new car. ཡང་ན I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. ཡང་ན Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? ཡང་ན Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. ཡང་ན Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? ཡང་ན How much time do you have?

## གཞན་ཡང་།

- I've got a headache. ཡང་ན I have a headache.
- Have you got a cold? ཡང་ན Do you have a cold?

I have ཡི་འདས་པ་ནི་ I had ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་རྗེས་སུ་ got བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- How much time did you have?

ཁ་ have breakfast དང have a shower སྐགས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད།

have བོ་ཐ་མ་སྐགས་ཐོས་པ་འཕེལ་བཟུང་བའི་དོན་ཡིན་པས་འདིའི་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཚོས་ got བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད།

|      |                                       |
|------|---------------------------------------|
| have | breakfast/ lunch/ dinner              |
|      | a meal/ a sandwich/ a pizza           |
|      | a cup of coffee/ a glass of milk etc. |
|      | something to eat/ drink               |

- Where's Ann? 'She's having lunch.
- I don't usually have breakfast.
- I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་ have བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག

|      |                                     |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| have | a bath/ a shower                    |
|      | a rest/ a holiday/ a party          |
|      | a nice time / a good journey        |
|      | a walk/ a swim / a game/(of tennis) |
|      | a dream/ an accident                |
|      | a baby                              |
|      | a look(at)                          |

- I had a shower this morning.
- We're having a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time.
- Did you have a good time in London?
- Sandra has just had a baby.
- Can I have a look at your newspaper?

གྱི་ I've got དང I have གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good. (འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་  
ནང་དུ་ I've got དང I have གཉིས་དོན་གཅིག་ཡིན།)
- I have a shower every morning. ('I've got ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- A: Where's Paul?  
B: He's having a shower. (ད་ལྟ་ཞོས་ལུས་པོ་འབྲུང་བཞིན་པའི་དོན།)



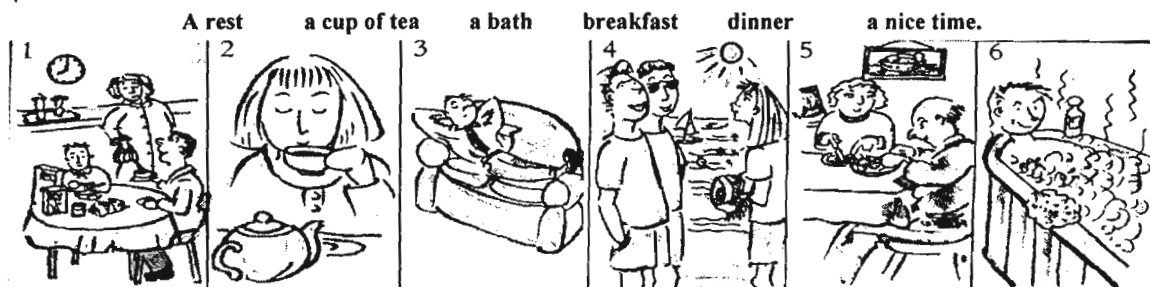


## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

57.1 haveཡང་ན་have gotགཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
- 2) Has Lisa got (or does Lisa have) a car? 'No, she can't drive.' (Lisa / have)
- 3) He can't open the door. ....a key. (he / not / have)
- 4) .....a cold last week. He's better now. (George / have)
- 5) What's wrong? .....a headache? (You / have?)
- 6) We wanted to go by taxi but we .....enough money. (We / not / have)
- 7) Liz is very busy. ....much free time. (She / not / have)
- 8) .....any problems when you were on holiday? (You / have?)

57.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བདམས་ནས་རིམ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1) They're having breakfast.
- 2) She.....
- 3) He.....
- 4) They.....
- 5) .....
- 6) .....

57.3 གནས་ཚུལ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཇི་ལྟར་བཤད།

- 1) Ann is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?  
Have a nice holiday.
- 2) You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about to flight.  
Did you have a good flight?
- 3) Tom is going on a long journey. What do you say to him before he leaves?  
.....
- 4) It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.  
.....
- 5) Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.  
.....
- 6) Rachel is going out for a meal tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?  
.....

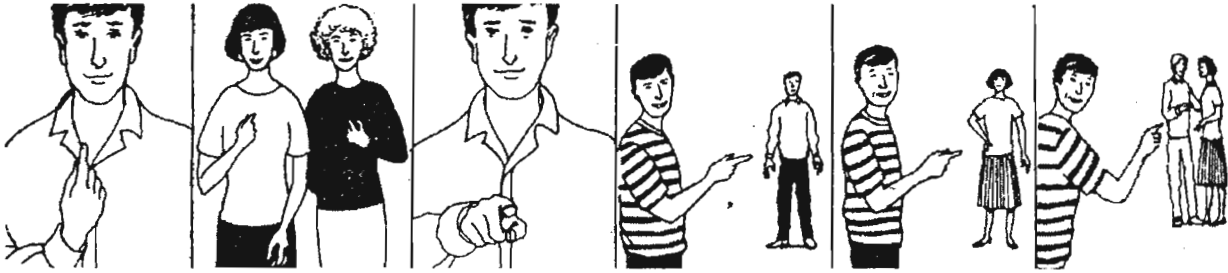
57.4 haveདང་hadགཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇི་སྟེ་སྟེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།  
an accident a glass of water a look a walk a party something to eat

- 1) We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.
- 2) Shall we .....? 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- 3) I was thirsty, so I .....
- 4) I like to get up early and .....before breakfast.
- 5) Tina is a very good driver. She has never.....
- 6) There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you .....at it?



## ཐོ་ཚན་དཔལ་ལོ་མ་འབྲེལ་བྱེད་པ། I/ME HE/HIM THEY/THEM

ག མི།



བྱེད་པ་ལ། I we you he she they  
བྱེད་པའི་ལྟལ། me us you him her them

| བྱེད་པ་ལ། |                |                 | བྱེད་པའི་ལྟལ། |
|-----------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| I         | I know Ann.    | Ann knows me.   | Me            |
| We        | We know Ann.   | Ann knows us.   | Us            |
| You       | You know Ann.  | Ann knows you.  | You?          |
| He        | He knows Ann.  | Ann knows him.  | Him           |
| She       | She knows Ann. | Ann knows her.  | Her           |
| They      | They know Ann. | Ann knows them. | Them          |

ཁ དངོས་པོ།



བྱེད་པ་ལ། it they  
བྱེད་པའི་ལྟལ། it them

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

ག ང་ཚོས་ me/her/them སྐད་ཀྱི་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་ (preposition) གི་རྗེས་སུ་བཤེད་ཐུང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- Where's the newspaper? You're sitting on it.

Give it དང them ཏེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert wants these books. Can you give them to him, please?



## གསལ་སྤྱད།

58.1 him/ her/ them སྤྲུལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I don't know those girls. Do you know them?
- 2) I don't know that man. Do you know.....?
- 3) I don't know those people. Do you know .....
- 4) I don't know David's wife. Do you know.....?
- 5) I don't know Mr. Stevens. Do you know.....?
- 6) I don't Sarah's parents. Do you know.....?
- 7) I don't know the women with the black coat. Do you know.....?

58.2 I / me / you / she / her སྤྲུལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I want to see her but she doesn't want to see me.
- 2) They want to see me but ..... doesn't want to see .....
- 3) She wants to see him but ..... doesn't want to see .....
- 4) We want to see them but ..... don't want to see .....
- 5) He wants to see us but ..... don't want to see .....
- 6) They want to see her but ..... doesn't want to see .....
- 7) I want to see them but ..... don't want to see .....
- 8) You want to see her but ..... doesn't want to see .....

58.3 I like..., I don't like..., do you like སྤྲུལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མགོ་ར་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

## བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them.
- 2) George is a very nice man. I like .....
- 3) This jacket isn't very nice. I don't .....
- 4) This is my new car. Do .....
- 5) Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I .....
- 6) These are my new shoes. ....?

58.4 I / me / he / him སྤྲུལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- 2) Do you know that man? 'Yes, I work with.....'
- 3) Where are the tickets? I can't find.....
- 4) I can't find my keys. Where are.....?
- 5) We're going out. You can come with.....
- 6) Margaret likes music. .... plays the piano.
- 7) I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of .....
- 8) I'm talking to you. Please listen to.....
- 9) Where is Ann? I want to talk to .....
- 10) My brother has a new job. .... doesn't like ..... very much.

58.5 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I want that book. Can you give it to me?
- 2) He wants the key. Can you give.....
- 3) She wants the keys. Can you .....
- 4) I want that letter. Can you .....
- 5) They want the money. Can you .....
- 6) We want the photographs. Can you.....



# ཐེ་ཚན་པ་དབྱེ་བ། MY / HIS / THEIR

ག

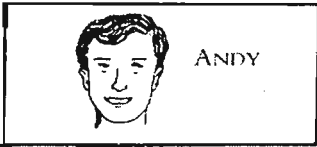
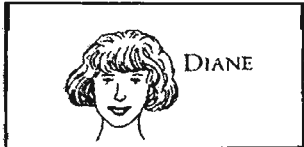


|      |       |   |
|------|-------|---|
| I    | my    | I like my job.                            |
| We   | our   | We like our jobs                          |
| You  | your  | You like your job.                        |
| He   | his   | He likes his job.                         |
| She  | her   | She likes her job.                        |
| They | their | They like their jobs                      |
| It   | its   | Oxford(=it) is famous for its university. |

## ང་ཚོས་ my / your / his སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སུ་མིང་ཚིག་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- my hands                      his mother                      her new car
- our house                      your best friend                      their room

## ཁ སྐད་ / her / their སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་ཕྱིན་པ།



**her car**  
(= Diane's car)

**her husband**  
(= Diane's husband)

**her children**  
(= Diane's children)

**his bicycle**

**his sister**

**his parents**

**their son**

**their daughter**

**their children**

## ག its ངང་ it's གཉིས་ཀྱི་བྱུང་པར།

- > Its                      Oxford is famous for its university. (དེའི་ཞེས་བའི་དྲན་)
- > It's                      I like Oxford. It's a nice city. (དེ་ནི་ཞེས་བའི་དྲན་)





## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

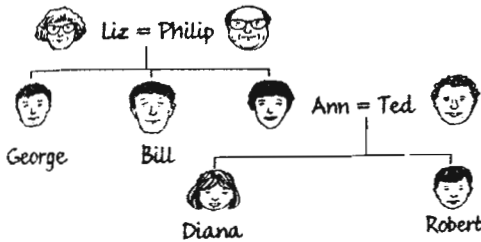
### 59.1 གཤམ་ཁྱུང་གི་ཆོག་ཁྱུང་ནུབ་ནུམ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I'm going to wash **my hands**. He's going to wash.....
- 2) She's going to wash..... They're going to wash.....
- 3) We're going to wash..... Are you going to wash.....?

### 59.2 གཤམ་ཁྱུང་གི་ཆོག་ཁྱུང་ནུབ་ནུམ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) He **lives with his parents**. I .....parents.
- 2) They live with.....parents. John .....
- 3) We .....parents. Do you live.....?
- 4) Julia lives..... Most children.....

### 59.3 རི་མོར་བཞུས་ཇེས་his/ her / their སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་ཁྱུང་ནུབ་ནུམ་ཆ་ཆང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1) I saw Liz with **her** husband, Philip.
- 2) I saw Ann and Ted with children.
- 3) I saw Ted with .....wife, Ann.
- 4) I saw George with .....brother, Bill.
- 5) I saw Liz and Philip with .....son, Bill.
- 6) I saw Diana and Robert with .....parents.

### 59.4 my / our / your / his / her / their/ its སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་ཁྱུང་ནུབ་ནུམ་ཆ་ཆང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Do you like **your** job?
- 2) I know Mr. Watson but I don't know.....wife.
- 3) Mr. and Mrs. Baker live in London. ....son lives in Australia.
- 4) We're going to have party. We're going to invite all .....friends.
- 5) Ann is going out with .....friends this evening.
- 6) I like tennis. It's .....favorite sport.
- 7) Is that .....car? No, I haven't got a car.
- 8) I want to phone Ann. Do you know .....phone number?
- 9) Do you think most people are happy in .....jobs?
- 10) I'm going to wash..... hair before I go out.
- 11) This is a beautiful tree. ....leaves are a beautiful color.
- 12) John has a brother and a sister. ....brother is 25 and .....sister is 21.

### 59.5 my / his / their སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་ཁྱུང་ནུབ་ནུམ་ཆ་ཆང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

## དགོས།

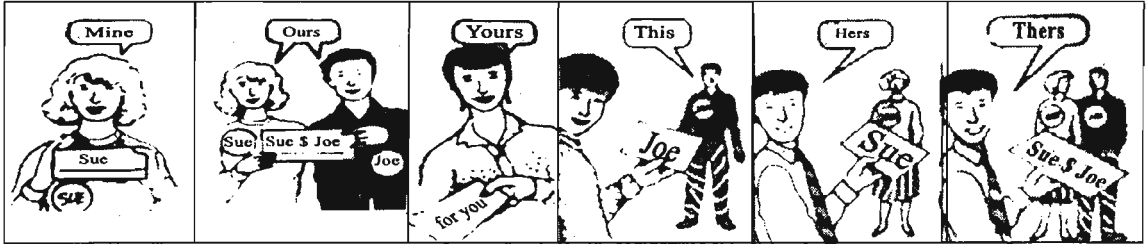
coat      homework      house      husband      job      key      name

- 1) Jim doesn't enjoy **his job**. It's not very interesting.
- 2) I can't open the door. I haven't got .....
- 3) Sally is married. ....works in a bank.
- 4) It's very cold today. Put on .....when you go out.
- 5) What are the children doing? They're doing.....
- 6) Do you know that man? Yes, but I don't know.....
- 7) We live in Barton Street. ....is at the end on the left.



## ཞིང་ཆ་རྒྱུ་ཅུ་བ། WHOSE IS THIS? IT'S MINE / YOURS / HERS སྟགས།

༡



|      |       |        |                   |              |
|------|-------|--------|-------------------|--------------|
| I    | my    | mine   | It's my money.    | It's mine.   |
| We   | our   | ours   | It's our money.   | It's ours.   |
| You  | your  | yours  | It's your money.  | It's yours.  |
| He   | his   | his    | It's his money.   | It's his.    |
| She  | her   | hers   | It's her money.   | It's hers.   |
| They | their | theirs | It's their money. | It's theirs. |

### ཁ ང་ཆ་སྟགས་ my / your + མིང་ཆོག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Ann gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

### mine/ yours སྟགས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སྟུ་མིང་ཆོག་བཤོལ་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་རུང་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- Is this book mine or yours? (ནི་ངའི་དེའི་བཟ་ཡང་ན་ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་དེའི་)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me hers. (ནི་མོའི་ཆར་གདུགས་)
- It's their problem, not ours. (ནི་ང་ཆའི་དཀའ་ངལ་མིན་)
- We went in our car and they went in theirs. (ནི་ཁོང་ཆའི་རྒྱུང་ས་འཁོར་)

### ང་ཆ་སྟགས་ his/ her སྟུ་མིང་ཆོག་བཤོལ་ཆོག་ལ་མ་བཤོལ་གྱུང་ཆོག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'

### ག a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours སྟགས།

- I went out to meet a friend of mine. ( 'a friend of me.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Tom was with a friend of his. ( friends of you' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Are those people friends of yours? ( 'friends of you' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

### ང Whose...? ཡི་བཤོལ་ཚུལ།

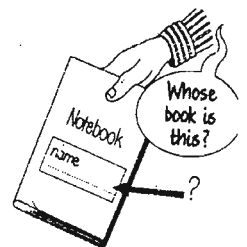
- Whose book is this? (ནི་དེའི་འདི་ཚུད་ཀྱི་ཁོང་གི་ང་ཡི་ཤེད་དམ་ཞེས་བཤད་དོན་ནི་)

### Whose ཡི་རྩིས་སྟུ་ང་ཆ་སྟགས་མིང་ཆོག་བཤོལ་ཆོག་ལ་མ་བཤོལ་གྱུང་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

- Whose money is this? }
- Whose is this? }
- Whose shoes are these? }
- Whose are these? }

It's mine.

They're John's.





## གསལ་བྱུང་།

60.1 mine/ yours སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1) It's your money. It's <u>yours</u> . | 5. It's their house. It's.....      |
| 2) It's my bag. It's .....              | 6. They're your books. They're..... |
| 3) It's our car. It's .....             | 7. They're my glasses. They're..... |
| 4) They're her shoes. They're.....      | 8. It's his coat. It's.....         |

60.2 འོག་ཏུ་འབྲེད་ཐིག་བཀོད་ཡོད་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ལས་ཡང་དག་པ་གང་ཡིན་འདེམས་དགོས།

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1) It's <u>their</u> / <u>theirs</u> problem, not <u>our</u> / <u>ours</u> .      | <u>Their and ours are right.</u> |
| 2) This is a nice camera. Is it <u>your</u> / <u>yours</u> ?                      |                                  |
| 3) That's not my / mine umbrella. <u>My</u> / <u>mine</u> is black.               |                                  |
| 4) Whose books are these? <u>Your</u> / <u>yours</u> or <u>my</u> / <u>mine</u> ? |                                  |
| 5) Catherine is going out with <u>her</u> / <u>hers</u> friends this evening.     |                                  |
| 6) My / Mine room is bigger than <u>her</u> / <u>hers</u> .                       |                                  |
| 7) They've got two children but I don't know <u>their</u> / <u>theirs</u> names.  |                                  |
| 8) Can we use your washing machine? <u>our</u> / <u>ours</u> is broken.           |                                  |

60.3 friend(s) of mine / yours སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
- They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
- She's going out with a friend.....
- We had dinner with some .....
- I played tennis with a .....
- Tom is going to meet a .....
- Do you know those people? Are they.....?







60.4 གསལ་བྱུང་གི་རིམ་ཁྲི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བཤད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་འབྲི་དགོས།





# ཐོ་ཚུག་དེ་གཅིག་པ། I / ME MY / MINE སྟགས།





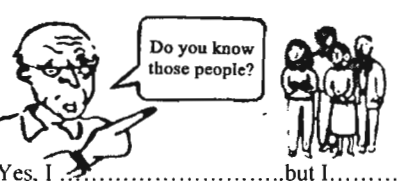

|   |                |                 |                 |              |
|---|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
|    | I know Tom.    | Tom knows me.   | It's my car.    | It's mine.   |
|    | We know Tom.   | Tom knows us.   | It's our car.   | It's ours.   |
|   | You know Tom.  | Tom knows you.  | It's your car.  | It's yours.  |
|  | He knows Tom.  | Tom knows him.  | It's his car.   | It's his.    |
|  | She knows Tom. | Tom knows her.  | It's her car.   | It's hers.   |
|  | They know Tom. | Tom knows them. | It's their car. | It's theirs. |

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'
- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?  
B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That's my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (ནི་ She gave her umbrella to him དང་དྲན་འདྲམ་)
- I'm meeting a friend of mine this evening. (a friend of me ཞེས་འབྱིམ་ཅུང་)



## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

61.1 འདྲི་ཆོག་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་དོན་ཚན་དང་པོ་འདྲི་སྒྲུབ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་  
འདེབས་དགོས།

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  <p>Do you know that man?</p> <p>Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.</p> |  <p>Do you know that woman?</p> <p>Yes, I know .....but I can't remember.....</p> |
|  <p>Do you know those people?</p> <p>Yes, I .....but I ..... names.</p>             |  <p>Do you know me?</p> <p>Yes, ..... names.</p>                                  |

61.2 དོན་ཚན་དང་པོ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) We invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 2) He invited us to stay with .....house.
- 3) They invited me to stay with.....house.
- 4) I invited them.....
- 5) She invited us .....
- 6) Did you invite him.....?

61.3 དོན་ཚན་དང་པོ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I gave him my address and he gave me his.
- 2) I gave her .....address and she gave me .....
- 3) He gave me .....address and I gave.....
- 4) We gave them .....address and they gave
- 5) She gave him .....address and .....
- 6) You gave us.....address and .....
- 7) They gave you address and .....

61.4 Him / her / yours སྒྲུབ་པ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Where's Ann? Have you seen her?
- 2) Where are my keys? Where did I put.....?
- 3) This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to .....
- 4) We wrote to John but he didn't answer .....letter.
- 5) I can't find my pen. Can I use .....? Yes, of course.
- 6) We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with.....?
- 7) Did your sister pass.....exams?
- 8) Some people talk about.....jobs all the time.
- 9) Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of .....



## ཞི་ཚེ་རི་གཉིས་པ། MYSELF / YOURSELF / THEMSELVES སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

ག



He's looking at himself.



Help yourself!



They're enjoying themselves.

|      |      |            |
|------|------|------------|
| I    | me   | myself     |
| He   | him  | himself    |
| She  | her  | herself    |
| You  | your | yourself   |
| You  | your | yourselves |
| We   | us   | ourselves  |
| They | them | themselves |

- > I looked at myself in the mirror.
- > He cut himself with a knife.
- > She fell off her bike but she didn't hurt herself.
- > Please help yourself. (One person)
- > Please help yourselves. (Two or more people)
- > We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
- > They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

## ཁ བསྐྱར་བ།

Me/ him/ them



She is looking at him.  
different people



- > You never talk to me.
- > I didn't pay for them.
- > Did I hurt you?

Myself/ himself/ themselves



He is looking at himself.  
the same person









- > Sometimes I talk to myself.
- > They paid for themselves.
- > Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

## ག by myself / by yourself སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

- > I went on holiday by myself. (ཁོང་ཚོ་རྒྱ་སྐོར་བཞིན་པོ་)
- > 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was by herself.'

## ང each other ཡི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

- > Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other well. (ཡན་ཚུན་ངོ་ཤེས་པའི་དོན་ཅིང་།)
- > Paul and I live near each other. (ཁྱི་ཡན་ཚུན་བར་གྱི་བར་ཐག་ཉེ་བའི་དོན་ཅིང་།)

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>STEVE</p>  <p>SUE</p>  | <p>STEVE</p>     <p>SUE</p> |
| <p>each otherངང་-selvesགཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ། Steve and Sue looked at each other. (ཡན་ཚུན་ལ་བཞོལ་བཞིན་པོ་)</p>   | <p>Steve and sue looked at themselves. (རང་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་རང་ཉིད་ལ་བཞོལ་བཞིན་པོ་)</p>  |



## གསལ་བཤད།

62.1 myself / yourself སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) He looked at himself in the mirror.
- 2) I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with.....
- 3) Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed.....
- 4) My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed.....
- 5) I picked up a very hot plate and burnt.....
- 6) He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about.....
- 7) I want to know more about you. Tell me about .....(one person)
- 8) Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after .....! (Two people)

62.2 by myself / by yourself སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I went on holiday alone. I went on holiday by myself.
- 2) When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he .....
- 3) Don't go out alone. Don't .....
- 4) I went to the cinema alone. I .....
- 5) My sister lives alone. My sister.....
- 6) Many people live alone. Many people.....

62.3 རིམ་བུ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|  |                                  |                            |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <p>1</p> <p>They like each other. ....</p> | <p>2</p> <p>They can't .....</p> | <p>3</p> <p>They .....</p> |
| <p>.....</p>                               | <p>5</p> <p>.....</p>            | <p>6</p> <p>.....</p>      |

62.4 each other ཡང་ན ourselves / yourselves/ themselves ཡང་ན us / you / them སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་

ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Paul and I live near each other.
- 2) Who are those people? Do you know them?
- 3) You can help Tom and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help.....
- 4) There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help.....
- 5) We didn't go to Ann's party. She didn't invite.....
- 6) When we go on holiday, we always enjoy.....
- 7) Mary and Jane were at school together but they never see.....now.
- 8) Diane and I are very good friends. We've known .....for a longtime.
- 9) 'Did you see David and Diane at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to .....
- 10) Many people talk to .....when they're alone.

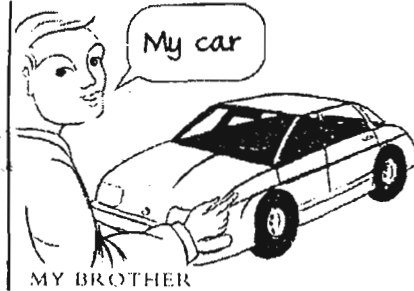


## ཐེ་ཚན་རིག་སྐུ་མ་ལ། -'S (Ann's camera)

ག



Ann's camera  
(her camera)



my brother's car  
(his car)



the manager's office.  
(his or her office)

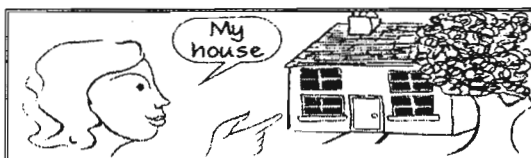
### ང་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་འདི་མི་ལ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I stayed at my sister's house. (the house of my sister ཞེས་མི་འབྲི)
- Have you met Mr. Kelly's wife? (the wife of Mr. Kelly ཞེས་མི་འབྲི)
- Are you going to Jam's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

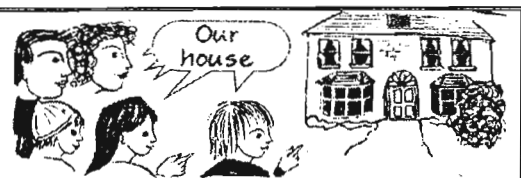
### ང་ཚོས་འདི་མེས་སྐུ་མིང་ཚིག་མེད་པར་བཞོལ་ཚུགས། དཔེར་ན།

- Mary's hair is longer than Ann's. (ནི་Ann's hair ཡི་དྲན)
- Whose umbrella is this? 'It's my mother's.' (ནི་my mother's umbrella ཡི་དྲན)
- Where were you last night? 'I was at Paul's.' (ནི་Paul's house ཡི་དྲན)

## ཁྱེ་ friend's དང་ friends' གཉིས་ཀྱི་བྱུང་པར།



My friend's house རྒྱལ་པོ་གཅིག་གི་དྲན།  
ང་ཚོས་-s' ཡི་མེས་སྐུ་རྒྱུང་གྲངས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས།  
My mother's car. (one mother)  
My father's car. (one father)



My friends' house. གཉིས་པ་གཉིས་ལས་མང་བའི་དྲན།  
ང་ཚོས་-s' ཡི་མེས་སྐུ་རྒྱུང་གྲངས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས།  
My parents' car. (two parents)

### ག ང་ཚོས་ of + རི་དངོས་པོ་དང་ས་ཆར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Look at the roof of that building. ('that building's roof ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We didn't see the beginning of the film. ('the film's beginning ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What's the name of this village?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.

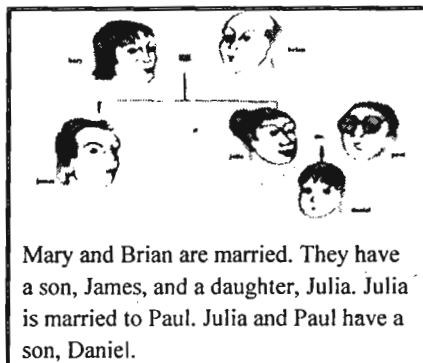




## གསལ་སྒྱུར།

### 63.1 རི་མོ་འུ་མ་གྱི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་འབྲེལ་བ་ཅི་ཡིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) (Brian / husband) Brian is Mary's husband.
- 2) (Julia / mother) Julia is Daniel's mother.
- 3) (Marry / wife) Mary is .....wife.
- 4) (James/ brother) James.....
- 5) (James / uncle) .....uncle.
- 6) (Julia / wife) Julia.....
- 7) (Mary / grandmother) .....
- 8) (Julia / sister).....
- 9) (Paul /husband).....
- 10) (Paul / father).....
- 11) (Daniel / nephew) .....



### 63.2 རི་མོ་ར་བལྟས་རྗེས་ཆོག་གཅིག་གིས་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།



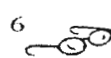
Whose is this?  
Alice's

Whose is this?



3 And this?

4 And these?



5 And this?

6 And these?

### 63.3 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་རྣམས་ནོར་བཙོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

- 1) I stayed at the house of my sister.
- 2) What is the name of this village?
- 3) Do you like the color of this coat?
- 4) Do you know the phone number of Bill?
- 5) The job of my brother is very interesting.
- 6) Write your name at the top of the page.
- 7) For me the morning is the best part of the day.
- 8) The favorite color of Paula is blue.
- 9) When is the birthday of your mother?
- 10) The house of my parents isn't very big.
- 11) The walls of this house are very thin.
- 12) The car stopped at the end of the street.
- 13) Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?
- 14) The manager of the hotel is on holiday at the moment.

My sister's house

Ok



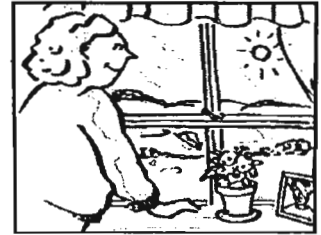
# ཆེན་པོ་འཛིན། A / AN



He's got a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's beautiful day.

ཞི་དངོས་པོ་གཅིག་གམ་གང་ཟག་གཅིག་གི་དོན་ཏེ། དཔེར་ན།

- Alice works in a bank. ('in bank' ཞེས་འཕྲིམ་རུང་)
- Can I ask a question? ('ask question' ཞེས་འཕྲིམ་རུང་)
- I haven't got a car.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

འཕྲིམ་པ་འདི་དོན་འདྲ་ན་འདྲ་། བེད་སྟོང་བྱེད་སྟངས་མི་འདྲ་སྟེ། གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་ཐོག་མའི་གསལ་བྱེད་དེ་

དབྱེད་སྤྱི་འ / e / l / o / u ལས་གང་རུང་ཞིག་ཡིན་སྐབས་ད་ཆོས་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་an བེད་སྟོང་བྱེད་དགོས།

- Do you want an apple or banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

ད་ཆོས་ hour ཡི་སྟོན་ཏེ་an བེད་སྟོང་བྱེད་ལ། ལྷ་མཚན་ནི་ hour ཡི་ཐོག་མའི་གསལ་བཤད་ h དེ་སྟོན་སྐབས་སུ་ལྷ་མི་འཕྲིན་པས་སོ། གཞན་ཡང་ད་ཆོས་ university དང་

European གསལ་སྟེ་འདི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་a བེད་སྟོང་བྱེད། ལྷ་མཚན་ནི་དེ་དག་གི་སྟོན་ཐོག་མའི་You ཡི་སྟོན་ཏེ་པས་སོ།

Another (an དང་ other གཉིས་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་ཡིན།) ཞི་གཞན་ཞིག་གི་དོན་ཡིན།

- Can I have another cup of tea?

ག འ / an གཉིས་ནི་ད་ཆོས་དངོས་པོ་དང་མི་སྐད་སྐད་གང་ཡིན་སྟོན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྟོང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person

ད་ཆོས་ a / an གཉིས་ནི་ལས་གནས་སྟོན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ཡང་བེད་སྟོང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- A: What's your job?
- B: I'm a dentist. ('I'm dentist' ཞེས་འཕྲིམ་རུང་)
- What does Mark do? 'He's an engineer.'
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?





## གསལ་སྤྱད།

64.1 གསལ་སྤྱད་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྟོན་ཏུ་ a དང་ an གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                       |                    |                         |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) <u>an</u> old book | 4.....airport      | 9.....university        |
| 2) .....window        | 5.....new airport  | 8.....hour              |
| 3) .....horse         | 6.....organisation | 7.....economic problem. |

64.2 bird/fruit/mountain /river/musical instrument/flower/game/planet/tool/vegetable སྟོན་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་སྤྱད་དོན་

པོ་དེ་དག་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡིན་པ་སྟོན་དགོས།

- |                              |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) A duck is <u>a bird</u> . | 6.Jupiter is .....    |
| 2) A carrot is .....         | 7.A pear is .....     |
| 3) Tennis is .....           | 8.The Amazon is ..... |
| 4) A hammer is .....         | 9.A rose is .....     |
| 5) Everest is .....          | 10.A trumpet is ..... |

64.3 Dentist/electrician/nurse/photographer/private detective/shop assistant/taxi driver སྟོན་བཀོལ་ནས་རིམ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་

དག་གི་ལས་གནས་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡིན་པ་སྟོན་དགོས།



- |                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1) She's <u>a dentist</u> . | 5.....              |
| 2) He's .....               | 6.....              |
| 3) She.....                 | 7.....              |
| 4) .....                    | 8 And you? I'm..... |

64.4 གསལ་སྤྱད་རེ་ལྟ་མཁན་གཉིས་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ཇེས་དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་ a / an བཀོལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་

བཟོ་དགོས།

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| I want to ask you | Barbara works in          |
| Tom never wears   | Ann wants to learn        |
| i can't ride      | Jim lives in              |
| My brother is     | This evening I'm going to |

|           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|
| old house | artist           |
| party     | question         |
| bookshop  | foreign language |
| hat       | bicycle          |

- 1) I want to ask you a question.
- 2) .....
- 3) .....
- 4) .....
- 5) .....
- 6) .....
- 7) .....
- 8) .....



## 129

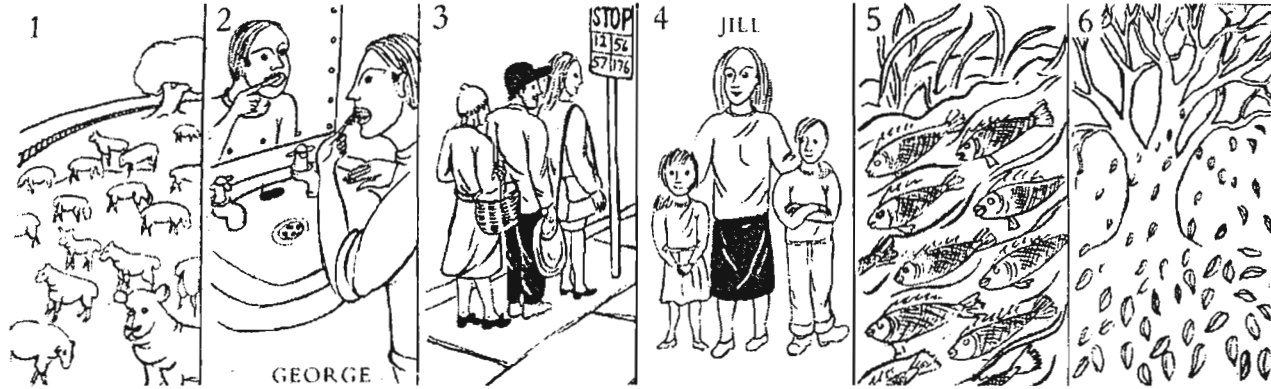


## གཤམ་ཕྱད་

65.1 གཤམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་མང་གུང་ས་གྱི་ནུས་པ་མིན།

- |                                |                |              |
|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1) flower <b>flowers</b> ..... | umbrella ..... | family ..... |
| 2) boat .....                  | address .....  | foot .....   |
| 3) woman .....                 | knife.....     | holiday..... |
| 4) city .....                  | sandwich.....  | potato.....  |

65.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཆ་ཆོང་བར་བཞོ་དགོས།



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1) There are a lot of sheep in the field. | 4 Jill has got two.....                |
| 2) George is cleaning.....                | 5 There are a lot of.....in the river. |
| 3) There are three.....at the bus stop.   | 6 The ..... are falling from the tree. |

65.3 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མང་ཤས་ནི་ཁོར་བ་ཡིན་པས་དེ་ནུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཞོ་དགོས།

- 1) I'm going to buy some flowers. **Ok**
- 2) I need a new jeans. **I need a new pair of jeans. Or I need some new jeans.**
- 3) It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.....
- 4) There was a woman in the car with two mens.....
- 5) Sheep eat grass. ....
- 6) David is married and has three childs.....
- 7) Most of my friend are student. ....
- 8) He put on his pyjama and went to bed. ....
- 9) We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish.....
- 10) Do you know many persons in this town? .....
- 11) I like your trouser. Where did you get it?.....
- 12) The town center is usually full of tourist. ....
- 13) I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. ....
- 14) This scissor isn't very sharp. ....

65.4 སྒྲོར་བྱིས་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ལས་གང་འགྲིག་བདམས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཞོ་དགོས།

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1) It's a nice place. Many people <b>go</b> there for a holiday. | (go ཡང་ན goes?)       |
| 2) Some people .....always late.                                 | (is ཡང་ན are?)        |
| 3) The president is not popular. The people .....like him.       | (don't ཡང་ན doesn't?) |
| 4) A lot of people .....television every day.                    | (watch ཡང་ན watches?) |
| 5) Three people .....injured in the accident.                    | (was ཡང་ན were?)      |
| 6) How many people..... in that house?                           | (live ཡང་ན lives?)    |
| 7) ..... the police carry guns in your country?                  | (do ཡང་ན does?)       |
| 8) The police .....looking for the stolen car.                   | (is ཡང་ན are?)        |
| 9) I need my glasses but I can't find.....                       | (it ཡང་ན them?)       |
| 10) I'm going to buy .....new jeans today.                       | (a ཡང་ན some?)        |



# ཐེ་ཚན་རིུག་པ།

A CAR / SOME MONEY

༡ མིང་ཚིག་ལ་བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་དང་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གཉིས་སུ་དབྱེ་ཚོག

བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

(a) car (a) man (a) key (a) house (a) flower (an) idea (an) accident

ང་ཚོས་བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚུན་དུ་one / two / three སྟགས་བཀོལ་ཚོག་ དཔེར་ན།



one car



two cars



three men



four houses

བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ལ་རྒྱང་གྲངས་དང་མང་གྲངས་རྣམས་པ་གཉིས་ཡོད། དཔེར་ན།

རྒྱང་གྲངས། a car my car the car

མང་གྲངས། cars two cars the cars some cars many cars སྟགས་ལྟ་བུའོ།

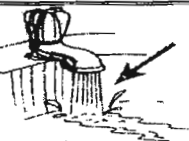
- I've got a car.
- There aren't many cars in the car park.
- New cars are very expensive.

ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཞིག་གི་ནང་དུ་རྒྱང་གྲངས་ཤིག་ཡོད་ཅེ། རྒྱང་གྲངས་དེའི་ཚུན་དུ་ངས་པར་དུ་a/an གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་ཅང་འཛིན་ཐུང་བྱེད་དགོས། (ཐེ་ཚན་ལ་ལ་རྟེན་པ་)

We can't get in without a key. ( without key ཞེས་འཕྲིམ་ཅུང་)

## ༢ བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

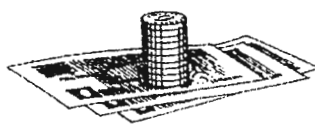
water air rice salt plastic money music tennis



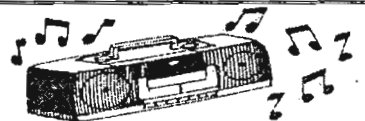
water



salt



money



music

ང་ཚོས་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚུན་དུ་one/two/three སྟགས་མེད་ཐུང་བྱེད་མི་ཅུང་། དཔེར་ན། One water two water

money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I've got some money.
- There isn't much money in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

ང་ཚོས་a / an གཉིས་ནི་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚུན་དུ་མེད་ཐུང་བྱེད་མི་ཅུང་། དཔེར་ན། a money a music






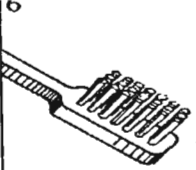
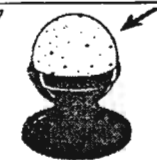
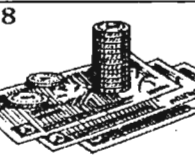
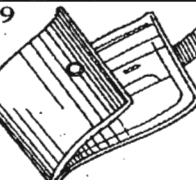
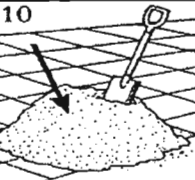

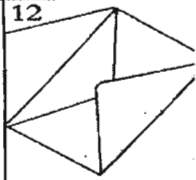
ཡིན་ནའང་། ང་ཚོས་འདྲི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚོག་ཞེ། a piece of ... / a glass of ... + བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་

a glass of water      a can of oil      a bar of chocolate  
a piece of cheese      a bottle of milk      a piece of music  
a bowl of rice      a cup of coffee      a game of tennis



# གསལ་བྱེད་

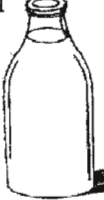

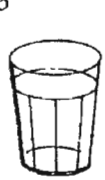






66.1 གསལ་བྱེད་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཁྲོད་དུ་བཟང་ལུབ་པ་དང་མི་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཡོད་པས་ཁྲོད་ཀྱིས་དགོས་པ་ལོར་གཞིགས་ནས་a / an གཉིས་བཞོལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཆོག་ལྟམས་རང་རང་གི་རིམ་འོག་དུ་འབྲི་དགོས།

| Bucket   | envelope  | milk  | salt  | spoon  | toothpaste  |
|--|---|---|---|--|---|
| egg  | jug   | money   | sand  | toothbrush   | wallet  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| It's <u>salt</u> .   | It's <u>a spoon</u> .   | It's .....  | It's .....  | It's .....   | It's .....  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| It's .....   | It's .....  | It's .....  | It's .....  | It's .....   | It's .....  |

66.2 གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་ཁ་ཤས་འབྲིག་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་a / an གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་ཞིག་བཞོལ་དགོས་པས། ཁྲོད་ཀྱིས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལྟམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1) I haven't got watch. <u>a watch</u> | Jamaica is island.....              |
| 2) Do you like cheese? <u>Ok</u>       | I don't need key. ....              |
| 3) Ann never wears hat.....            | Everybody needs food.....           |
| 4) Are you looking for job?.....       | I've got good idea.....             |
| 5) Mary eats apple every day.....      | Can you drive car?.....             |
| 6) Mary doesn't eat meat .....         | Do you want cup of coffee?.....     |
| 7) I'm going to party tonight. ....    | Don't go out without umbrella. .... |

66.3 གསལ་བྱེད་རིམ་བཞུས་ཇེས་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་a... of... བཞོལ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|  |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |   |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A: bar cup loaf glass bottle piece | B: bread milk tea chocolate |
| bowl jar piece                     | paper water money soup wood |
| 1) <u>A bottle of milk</u>         | 2) .....                    |
| 4) .....                           | 6) .....                    |
| 7) .....                           | 9) .....                    |



# ཕྱི་ཆེན་རེ་བདུན་པ། A CAR/ SOME MONEY

## ༡ a / an དང some སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

**a / an** ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུད་གྲངས་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

**Some** ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གྲངས་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

གཞན་ཡང་**Some** ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གྲངས་བཀོལ་དགོས་ཆོག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- I need some money?
- Would you like some cheese?
- (ཡང་ན་ would you like a piece of cheese?)

**a དང some** གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- Linda bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

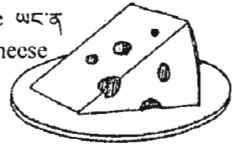
An apple



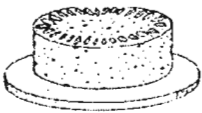
Some apples



Some cheese ཡང་ན་  
a piece of cheese



## ཁ དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་མིང་ཆོག་མང་པོ་ཞིག་སྐབས་རེར་བཟང་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་དང་སྐབས་རེར་བཟང་མི་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན། དཔེར་ན།



a cake



some cakes



some cake or a piece of cake



A chicken



some chickens



some chicken or a piece of chicken

## a paper དང་ some paper བསྟར་བ།

- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- I want to make a list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (Not 'a paper' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

## ག ག་ཤམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་འདི་དག་བཟང་མི་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་པ་ཡིད་ལ་འཛིན་དགོས།

information      advice      weather      news      bread      hair      furniture      work

- I need some information about hotels in London. (informations ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- It's nice weather today. (a nice weather ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Listen! I've just had some good news. (a good news ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I'm going to buy some bread. (a bread ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Sue has got very long hair. (hairs ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (furnitures ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (a hard work ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང་ཆོས་ནམ་ཐུན་ **a job** ཞེས་བཀོལ་ལ། **a work** ཞེས་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།

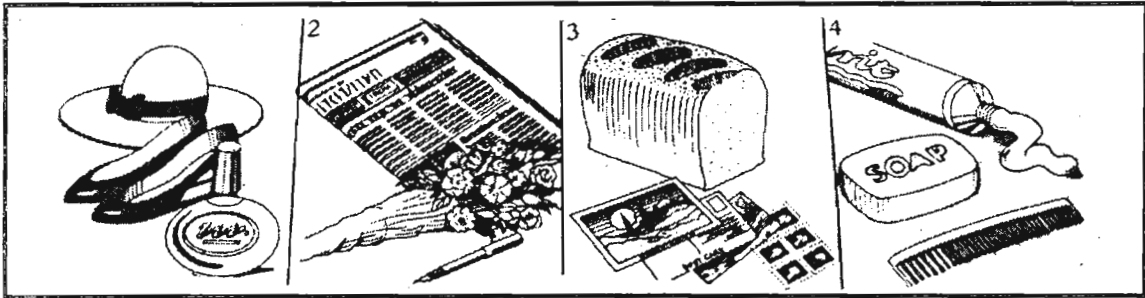
- I've got a new job. ('a new work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)





## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

67.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་ཉོས་པ་རྣམས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོས།



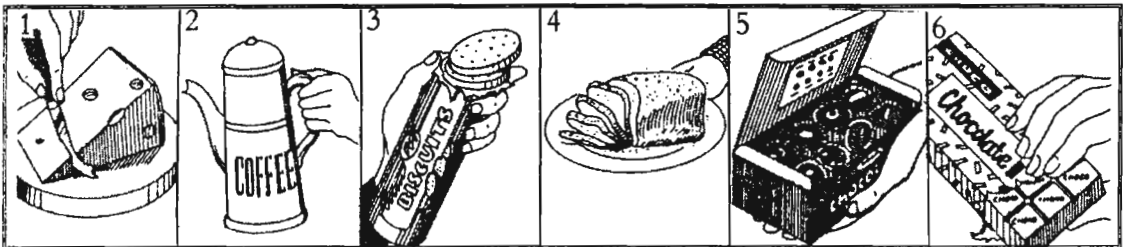
1. I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.

2. I bought.....

3. ....

4. ....

67.2 would you like a ..དང་ would you like some....གཉིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1) Would you like some cheese?

4) .....

2) Would you like.....

5) .....

3) Would.....

6) .....

67.3 a / an / someསོགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆར་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I read a book and listened to some music.

2. I need .....money. I want to buy .....food.

3. We met .....interesting people at the party.

4. I'm going to open .....window to get .....fresh air.

5. She didn't eat much for lunch - only .....apple and .....bread.

6. We live in .....big house. There's .....nice garden with .....beautiful trees.

7. I'm going to make a table. First I need .....wood.

8. Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you .....advice.

9. I want to write a letter. I need .....paper and .....pen.

67.4 བཟོར་གཤམ་ཆོད་པ།

1. I'm going to buy some new shoe / shoes. shoes is right

2. Martin has got brown eye / eyes.

3. Paula has got short black hair / hairs.

4. The tourist guide gave us some information / informations about the town.

5. We're going to buy some new chair / chairs.

6. We're going to buy some new furniture / furnitures.

7. It's difficult to get a work / job at the moment.

8. We had lovely weather / a lovely weather when we were on holiday.





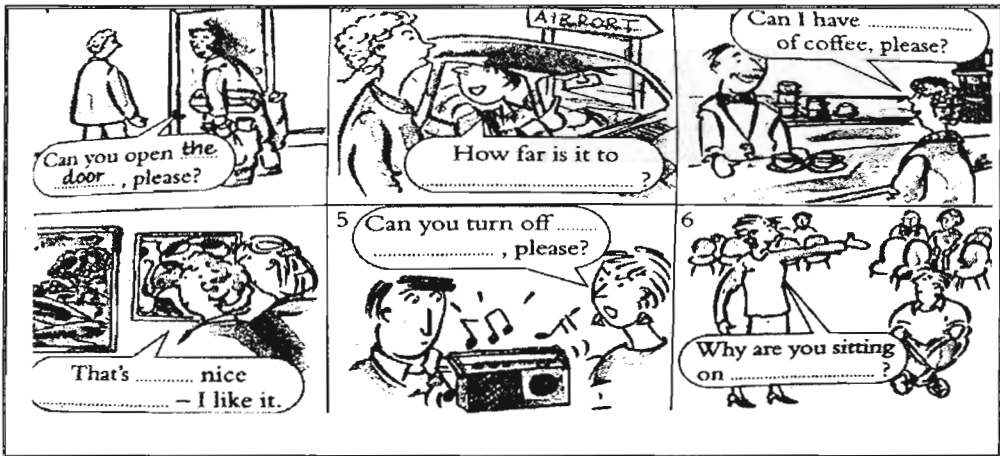
## གསལ་སྤྱད།

68.1 a /an / the སྐད་ཀྱི་འགོ་ལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice.
2. 'Can I ask a question?' 'Of course, what do you want to ask?'
3. You look very tired. You need .....holiday.
4. 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in .....bathroom.'
5. Jane is .....interesting person. You must meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to .....city center?  
B: Yes, go straight on and then take .....next turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out for .....meal this evening?  
B: Yes, that's .....good idea.
8. It's .....nice morning. Let's go for .....walk.
9. Amanda is .....student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be .....journalist. She lives with two friends in .....flat near..... college where she is studying. ....flat is small but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have got two children, .....boy and .....girl. ....boy is seven years old and .....girl is three. Peter works in .....factory. Mary hasn't got .....job at the moment.

68.2 a /the གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་གསལ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

airport   cup   door   floor   picture   radio



68.3 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་a /an / the སྐད་ཀྱི་འགོ་ལ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Don't forget to turn of light when you go out. Turn off the light.
2. Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard. ....
3. What is name of this village? .....
4. Canada is very big country. ....
5. What is largest city in Canada? .....
6. I like this room but I don't like color of carpet. ....
7. 'Are you OK?' ' No, I've got headache.' .....
8. We live in old house near station. ....
9. What is name of director of film we saw last night? .....



# ཞི་ཚེན་རེ་དགུ་བ། THE

ག ང་ཚོས་the བོ་རེ་དང་ཉིད་སྟོན་བྱའི་དངོས་པོ་དང་གང་ཟག་སྐགས་གང་ཡིན་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- What is the name of this street? (སྤོང་པོ་དེར་མིང་ཞིག་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན།)
- Who is the best player in your team? (དེར་ཅེད་མོ་ཅེ་མཁན་གཅིག་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན།)
- Can you tell me the time, please?
- My office is on the first floor.
- ◆ ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།
  - Do you live near the city center? ('near city center' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
  - Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? ('Where is nearest. ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

## ཁ the same... ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- We live in the same street. ('in same street' ཉམ་མཁའ་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're the same.' ('they're same' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

## ག ང་ཚོས་ the བོ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚུགས།

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>The +</b> ཉི་མ། ལྗང་ལ། འཇིག་རྟེན། རྩ་མཁའ་ལ། མཚན་མིང་གི་དོན་མཁས་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ཏུ་བཀོལ།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The sky is blue and the sun is shining.</li> <li>➤ Do you live in a town or in the country?</li> </ul>  |  |
| <p><b>The +</b> ཉེན་རྟོག་པ། མེ་གསོད་ཏུ་ཁག་དང་དཔག་མེ་སྐགས་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ཏུ་བཀོལ།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.</li> </ul>   |  |
| <p><b>The +</b> ཅེ་མོ། མཐའ་མ། དཀྱིལ་དང་གཡོན་ཕྱགས་སྐགས་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ཏུ་བཀོལ།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Write your name at the top of the page.</li> <li>➤ My house is at the end of this street.</li> <li>➤ The table is in the middle of the room.</li> <li>➤ Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?</li> </ul> |  |
| <p><b>The +</b> རྩལ་ཆས་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Paula is learning to play the piano.</li> </ul>  |  |
| <p><b>The +</b> སྒྲ་སྟུང་འབྲུལ་ཆས།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I listen to the radio a lot.</li> </ul>   |  |

## ང ང་ཚོས་the བོ་གསལ་ཀྱི་ཚིག་འདི་དག་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>བརྟན་འབྲིན་འབྲུལ་ཆས།<br/>I watch television a lot. What's on television tonight?<br/>ཡིན་ནའང། Can you turn off the television(=the TV set)</p>  |  |
| <p>ཞྐགས་ཅ། ལུབ་ཁ་སྐགས་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།<br/>What did you have for breakfast?( the breakfast ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)<br/>Dinner is ready!</p>  |  |
| <p><b>The + Next / last</b> སྐགས་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་གཟུང་འཁོར། ལྷ་བ། ལྷ་དུས་བཞི་སྐགས་བཀོལ་མི་རུང་།<br/>I'm not working next week. (the next week ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)<br/>Did you have a holiday last summer? (the last summer ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> |  |



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

69.1 the བེད་ཐུང་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། གལ་ཏེ་འཕྲིག་ཆེ་མཁུག་ཏུ་ok ཞེས་ཟིན།

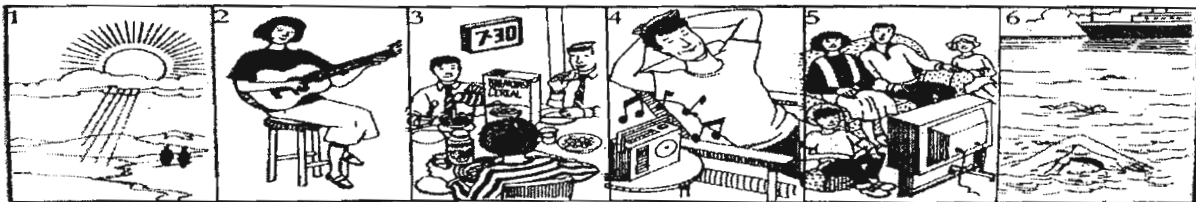
1. What is name of this street? the name.
2. What's on television tonight? Ok
3. Our apartment is on second floor. ....
4. Would you like to go to moon? .....
5. Which is best hotel in this town? .....
6. What time is lunch? .....
7. How far is it to city centre? .....
8. We're going away at end of May. ....
9. What are you doing next weekend? .....
10. I didn't like her first time I met her. ....
11. I'm going out after dinner. ....
12. What's biggest city in world? .....
13. My sister got married last month. ....
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right. ....
15. We live in country about five miles from nearest village. ....

69.2 the same ཡི་ཇེས་སུ་age/colour/problem/street/time སོགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

དགོས།

1. I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street.
2. I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at .....
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are .....
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are .....
5. I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got .....

69.3 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་ཐུང་བྱས་ཆོག)



1. The sun is shining.
2. She's playing .....
3. They're having .....
4. He's listening to .....
5. They're watching .....
6. They're swimming in ..... •••••

69.4 Capital/dinner/police/lunch/middle/name/sky/television སོགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

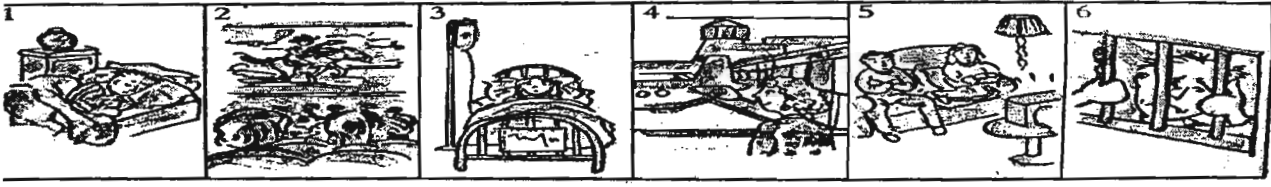
དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་ཐུང་བྱས་ཆོག)

1. We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel but I don't remember .....
3. .... is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. Did you see the film on ..... last night?
5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop so I called .....
6. Tokyo is ..... of Japan.
7. 'What did you have for .....?' 'A salad.'
8. I woke up in ..... of the night.





## གཤམ་རྩུང་།



70.1 རི་མོ་འཛིན་པའི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་དུ་ཡོད་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ཁག་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྟུང་ཕྱི་  
དགོས།

- |                         |                 |                    |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. He's in <u>bed</u> . | 3 She's in..... | 5 they're at ..... |
| 2. They're at.....      | 4 she's at..... | 6 He's in .....    |

70.2 Bank/bed/church/home/post office/school/station སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྟུང་ཕྱི་)

- I need some money. I must go to the bank.
- David usually goes to church on Sundays.
- In Britain, children go to ..... from the age of five.
- There were a lot of people at ..... waiting for the train
- I phoned you last night but you weren't at .....
- I'm going to ..... now. Goodnight!
- I'm going to ..... to get some stamps.

70.3 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་དབང་གིས་ང་ཚོས་the བེད་སྟུང་ཕྱི་ཆོག་)

- If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
- If you want to see a film, you go to .....
- If you are tired and you want to sleep, you .....
- If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you .....
- If you have a problem with your teeth, you .....
- If you want to study after you leave school, you .....
- If you are injured in an accident, you .....

70.4 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྟུང་ཕྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། གཤམ་ཏེ་

ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་ཡང་དག་པ་ཡིན་ཆེ་མཁུག་ཏུ་ok བཞོལ་དགོས།

- We went to cinema last night. To the cinema.
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. Ok
- Mary wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. ....
- I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. ....
- Why is Angela always late for work? .....
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're at school.' .....
- We've got no money in bank. ....
- When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. ....
- What time do you usually get home from work? .....
- Do you live far from city centre? .....
- 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.' .....
- Jim is ill. He's in hospital. ....
- Margaret takes her children to school every day. ....
- Would you like to go to university? .....
- Would you like to go to theatre this evening? .....



# ཐེ་ཚན་དོན་གཅིག་པ།

I LIKE MUSIC

I HATE EXAMS

༡



ང་ཚོས་theནི་སྒྱུར་བཏང་གི་བསམ་སྒྲོ་བཟོད་སྐབས་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I like music, especially classical music. (' the music...the classical music ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We don't eat meat very often. (' the meat' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Life is not possible without water. ('The life...the water' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I hate exams. ('the exams' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.



གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་theནི་ཅེད་མོ་དང་ལུས་ཅུལ་རིགས་ཀྱི་སྡོན་རུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད།

- My favorite sports are tennis and skiing. ('the tennis... the skiing' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

གཞན་ད་རུང་ང་ཚོས་theནི་སྐད་ཡིག་གམ་ཡང་ན་སྒྲོ་བ་གཏི་སྒྲོ་བ་ཚན་ཁག་གི་སྡོན་རུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Do you think English is difficult? ( ' the English ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

## ཁ གྲུ་སྐྱེ་ དང་the flowers གཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Flowers are beautiful.<br/>(མེ་རྩ་གསུམ་ལ་གྲོ།)</li> <li>➤ I don't like cold weather.<br/>(གནམ་གཤིས་གངས་སྐྱེ་ལ་གྲོ།)</li> <li>➤ Are you interesting in history?<br/>(མི་རྒྱུས་སྐྱེ་ལ་གྲོ།)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ This is a lovely garden.<br/>The flowers are beautiful.<br/>(ལྗམ་ར་དེར་སྐྱེས་ཡོད་པའི་མེ་རྩ་གསུམ་གཞན་ལ་མི་གྲོ།)</li> <li>➤ The weather isn't very good today.<br/>(དེ་རིང་གི་གནམ་གཤིས་ལས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་གྱི་གནམ་གཤིས་ལ་མི་གྲོ།)</li> <li>➤ Are you interested in the history of your country?</li> </ul> |  |
|---|--|--|





## གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

### 71.1 གཤམ་གྱི་མིང་འདི་དག་གི་སྒྲིབ་ལ་བསམ་ཚུལ་ཅི་འདྲ་ཞིག་ཡིད།

|         |            |              |                |            |           |
|---------|------------|--------------|----------------|------------|-----------|
| Dogs    | big cities | motor racing | TV quiz shows  | exams      | parties   |
| Museums | tea        | basketball   | computer games | loud music | hard work |

I like.... / I don't like//I love/I hate/I don't mind སྤྲོ་བ་ཆོག་གྱུ་བྱེད་པ་ལོ་ལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྱུ་བ་བཟོས།

1. I hate exams.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....

### 71.2 གཤམ་གྱི་དཔྱད་པ་འདི་དག་ལ་སྒྲིབ་རང་དགའ་སྤང་ཡོད་དམ། རེ་ཕྱི་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྱུ་བ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                              |                          |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I'm (very) interested in ... | I know a lot about...    | I don't know much about...     |
| I'm not interested in...     | I know a little about... | I don't know anything about... |

1. (history) I'm very interested in history.
2. (politics) I .....
3. (sport) .....
4. (art) .....
5. (astronomy) .....
6. (economics) .....

### 71.3 བརྗེ་ཤ་གཅོད་པ།

1. My favorite sport is tennis / the tennis. Tennis is right.
2. I like this hotel. Rooms/ the rooms are very nice. The rooms is right.
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn't go to parties/ the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Shops / the shops were very busy.
6. 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play football/ the football.'
9. These days lot of people use computers/ the computers.
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water/ the water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water/ the cold water.
12. Excuse me; can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people/ the people here.
14. Vegetables/ the vegetables are good for you.
15. 'Where are children/ he children?' they're in the garden.'
16. I can't sing this song. I don't know words/ the words.
17. I enjoy taking photographs/ the photographs. It's my hobby.
18. I must show you photographs/ the photographs that I took when I was on holiday.
19. 'English/ the English is used a lot in international business/ the international business.
20. Money/ the money doesn't always bring happiness/ the happiness.



## ཕྱི་ཆོན་དོན་གཉིས་པ། THE ...ས་ཆའི་མིང་།

༡།

ནམ་ཐུན་ང་ཆོས་theནི་ས་ཆའི་མིང་གི་ཐུན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- France is a very large country. (' the France' རྒྱུ་འཕྲིམ་རུང་)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

ཡིན་ནའང་ང་ཆོས་theནི་republic/states/kingdomསྐད་མིང་གི་ཐུབ་ཆ་ཡིན་པའི་མིང་གི་ཐུན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

The Republic of Ireland (ཡང་ན་ the Irish Republic)

The united States of America (the USA) the United Kingdom (the UK)

༢།

ང་ཆོས་theནི་ཐུལ་ཁབ་དང་གླིང་ཐུན། རི་སྐོས་གས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གངས་ཐུན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

The Netherlands the Canary Islands the Philippines the Andes

༣།

ང་ཆོས་theནི་ཐུ་མཆོ། མཆོ། ཐུགས་ཆུ་དང་མིས་བསྐྱོད་གཙང་བོ་སྐོས་ཀྱི་ཐུན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད།

The Atlantic (Ocean) the Mediterranean (Sea) the Amazon

The (river) Nile the Suez Canal the Black Sea

༤།

ཐྱིར་ང་ཆོས་theནི་སྤང་ལམ་དང་ཐང་ཆེན་སྐོས་ཀྱི་ཐུན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is High field Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

ང་ཆོས་theནི་ས་མིང་ངས་མི་ཡི་མིང་། གནས་ཐུ་ཐང་། འབབ་ཚུགས། སྤོབ་ཐུ་ཆེན་མོ། མཁར་ཐོང་སྐོས་ཀྱི་ཐུན་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད།

Kennedy Airport Victoria Station Cambridge University

Westminster Abbey Edinburgh Castle London Zoo

ནམ་ཐུན་ང་ཆོས་theནི་མཁོན་ཁང་དང་བུ་ཁང་། ཆང་ཁང་། རྒྱུ་བཟུན་ཁང་། རྒྱུ་གར་ཁང་། བཤམས་ཆོན་ཁང་སྐོས་ཀྱི་ཐུན་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

the Hilton (hotel) the star of India (restaurant)  
the Science Museum the Odeon (Cinema)  
the National Theatre the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

༥།

ང་ཆོས་theནི་མིང་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་of ཡོད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

the Republic of Ireland the Bank of England

the Great Wall of China the Tower of London

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ། the north / the south / the east / the west / the middle (of...)

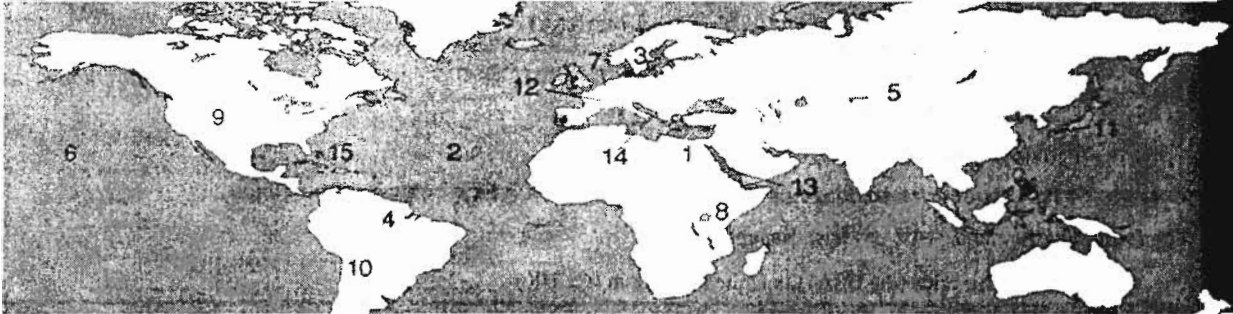
I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.



## གསལ་སྒྲུབ་

72.1 གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཆོག་དག་བཞུགས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བོད་སྐད་ཀྱིས་)

Alps/Amazon/Andes/Asia/Atlantic/Bahamas/Cairo/Kenya/Malta/Pacific/Red Sea/Rhine/Sweden/Tokyo/United states



1. **Cairo** is the capital of Egypt.
2. **The Atlantic** is between Africa and America.
3. .... is a country in northern Europe.
4. .... is a river in South America.
5. .... is the largest continent in the world.
6. .... is the largest ocean.
7. .... is a river in Europe.
8. .... is a country in east Africa.
9. .... is between Canada and Mexico.
10. .... are mountains in South America.
11. .... is the capital of Japan.
12. .... are mountains in central Europe.
13. .... is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14. .... is an island in the Mediterranean.
15. .... are a group of islands near Florida.

72.2 གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ལ་འགྲིག་མིན་གཞིས་ཀྱི་ཡོད། གལ་ཏེ་མི་འགྲིག་ཆོ་the བོད་སྐད་ཀྱིས་ཡང་དག་

པར་བཟོ་དགོས། འགྲིག་ཆོ་ཟུ་ok ཞེས་འབྲི་དགོས།

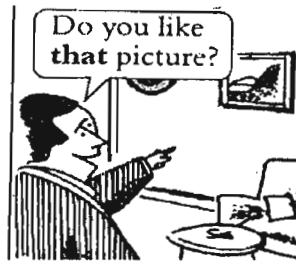
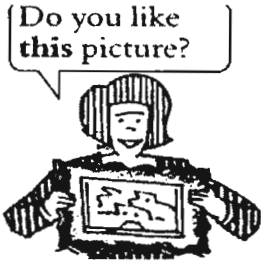
1. Kevin lives in Newton Street. **Ok.**
2. We want to see a play at national theatre. **at the national theatre.**
3. Have you ever been to China? .....
4. Have you ever been to Philippines? .....
5. Have you ever been to south of France? .....
6. Can you tell me where Regal cinema is? .....
7. Can you tell me where Merion Street is? .....
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is? .....
9. Europe is bigger than Australia .....
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherlands. ....
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? .....
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London? .....
13. 'Where did you stay?' 'At Park Hotel in Hudson road.' .....
14. How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)? .....
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America. ....
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. ....
17. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. ....
18. I hope to go to United States next year. ....
19. Mary comes from a small town in west of Ireland. ....
20. Alan studied physics at Manchester University. ....



# ཆེ་ཆུང་དོན་གསུམ་ལ།

THIS / THAT/ THESE /THOSE

ག



this  
these



this picture  
(= this picture here)  
these flowers  
(=these flowers here)

that  
those



that picture  
(=that picture there)  
those people  
(=those people there)

ཁ ང་ཚོས་ this / that /these /those སྐད་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟེན་མིང་ཚིག་བཀོལ་ཆོག་ལ་མ་བཀོལ་གྱང་ཆོག དཔེར་ན།

- > This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.
  - > Who's that girl?' 'I bought them last week.
  - > Those apples look nice. Can I have one?
  - > This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
  - > 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
  - > Who's that? (=Who is that person?)
  - > Which shoes do you like most? These or those?
- With a noun
- without a noun

ག ང་ཚོས་ that རྒྱུ་ལྟེན་པའི་དོན་ལ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- > I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right.'
- > That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

གཞན་ཡང་ that རྒྱུ་ལྟེན་པའི་ཆོས་མི་ཞིག་གི་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་པ་དེ་ལུང་འདྲེན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་  
བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད།

- > 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, that's right.'
- > 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know that.'
- > 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, that's nice.'

ང ང་ཚོས་ this is... ངང་ is that...? གཉིས་ཁ་པར་རྒྱག་སྐབས་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་པ།

- > Hello, this is David. (This རྒྱུ་ལྟེན་པའི་ཆོས་མི་ལོ་ལོ་)
- > Is that Sarah? (That རྒྱུ་ལྟེན་པའི་ཆོས་མི་ལོ་ལོ་)

གཞན་དུང་ ང་ཚོས་ this is ... རྒྱུ་ལྟེན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- > A: Brian, this is Chris.
- B: Hello, Chris - pleased to meet you.
- C: Hello.

DAVID

Hello, Sarah.  
This is David.



Brian, this is Chris.



LINDA

BRIAN

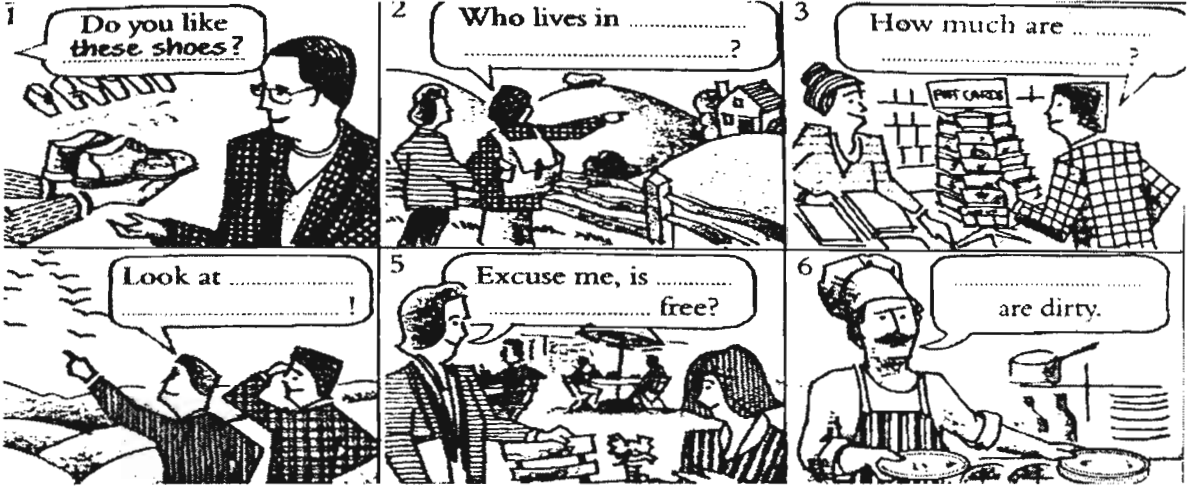
CHRIS



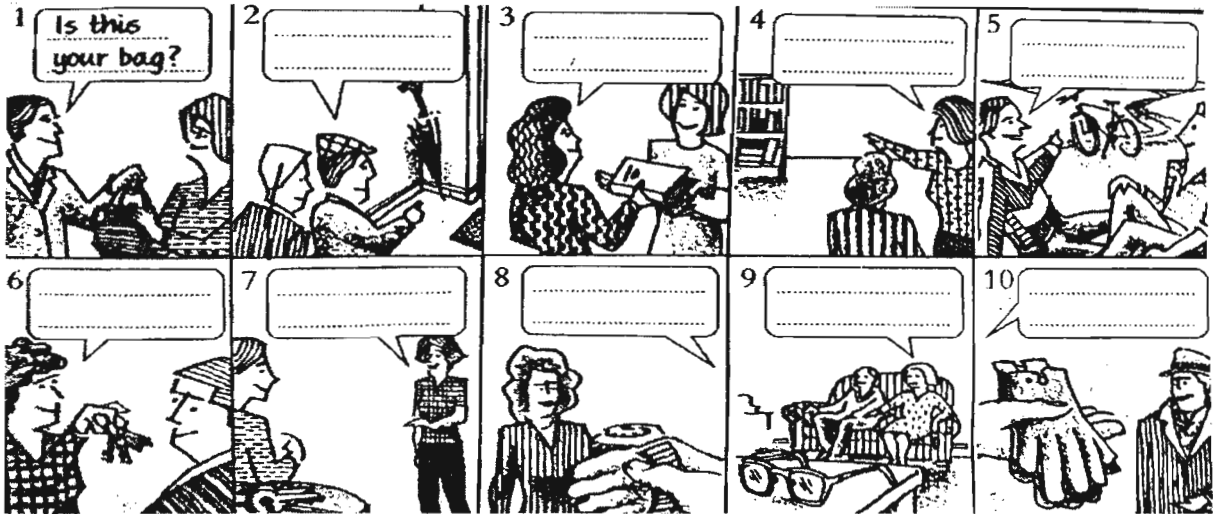
# གཤམ་ཕྱོད་

73.1 Birds/house/plates/postcards/seat/shoes རྩམས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་སྦྱར་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་

རྩམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



73.2 is this / that your...? ཡང་ན་ are these/ those your...? སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



73.3 this is དང་that's ཡང་ན་ that སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྩམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- A: I'm sorry I'm late. B: That's all right.
- A: I can't come to the party tomorrow. B: oh,..... a pity. Why not?
- (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ།) Sue: Hello, Ann. .... Sue. Ann: Oh, hello, Sue .How are you?
- A: You're lazy. B: .....not true!
- A: Jill plays the piano very well. B: Really? I didn't know .....
- Mark meets Paul's sister (Ann): Paul: Mark,.....my sister, Ann. Mark: Hello, Ann.
- A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday. B: .....OK, forget it!
- A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you? B: Yes,.....right.



# མེ་ཆེན་དོན་བཞི་བ། ONE / ONES

༡ one བོ་a/anགཉིས་དང་དོན་འདྲའོ།

These  
Chocolates are nice.  
Would you like one?



Would you like one? བོ་ Would you like a chocolate? དང་དོན་འདྲའོ།

➤ I need a pen. Have you got one? (One = a pen)

➤ A: Is there a bank near here?

B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (One = a bank)

༢ one དང་ ones གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

one (ཁྱེད་གུངས་)



Which one? = Which hat?

Oneཡི་ཇེས་སུ་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཁྱེད་གུངས་ཡིན་དགོས།(one girl/ boy)

**This one / that one**

➤ Which car is yours? This one or that one?

**The one...**

➤ A: Which hotel did you stay at?

B: The one opposite the station

**The ... one**

➤ I don't like the black coat but I like the brown one.

➤ Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

**a/an ... one**

➤ This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one.

➤ That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one.

ones (མིང་གུངས་)



Which ones? = Which flowers?

Ones ཡི་ཇེས་སུ་མིང་ཆོག་གི་མིང་གུངས་ཡིན་དགོས།(ones cars/ flowers)

**these / those (ནི་ནམ་ཚུན་ones དང་མ་ཉམ་ཏུ་བཞོལ་ཚུད་མི་བྱེད)**

➤ Which flowers do you want? These or those?

**The ones...**

➤ A: Which keys are yours?

B: The ones on the table.

**The ... ones**

➤ I don't like the red shoes but I like the green ones.

➤ Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

**Some... ones**

➤ These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?

➤ My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.



# གཞན་ལྟར་

74.1 རེ་ལུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་one བཀོལ་ནས་གཞན་གྱི་དྲི་བར་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས། a/an བཀོལ་མི་ཟུང་།

|   |   |
|---|---|
| B doesn't need a car<br>there's a chemist in Mill Road<br>B hasn't got a pen. | B has just had a cup of coffee<br>B is going to buy a bicycle<br>B hasn't got an umbrella |
|---|---|

- A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
- A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't.....
- A: Have you got a bicycle? B: No, but .....
- A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry but .....
- A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you. ....
- A: Is there a chemist near here? B: Yes, .....

74.2 Better/big/clean/different/new/old སྔགས་ a/an ... one སྔགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཞན་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཡ  
ང་དག་པར་བཞེད་དགོས།

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- I'm going to sell my car and buy .....
- That's not a very good photograph but this is .....
- I want today's newspaper. This is .....
- This box is too small, I need .....
- Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to .....

74.3 one/ones གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཞན་གྱི་ཁ་བརྒྱུ་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཞེད་དགོས།



|   |   |
|---|---|
| The coat black<br>The girl tall with long hair<br>The hotel is opposite the station<br>The house has got a red door<br>The flowers are yellow | I took the photographs on the beach last week<br>The shoes are green<br>The pictures are on the wall<br>The books are on the top shelf<br>The man has got a moustache and glasses |
|---|---|

- A: We stayed at a hotel  
B: Which one?  
A: The one opposite the station.
- A: Those shoes are nice.  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: That's a nice house.  
B: .....  
A: ..... with.....?
- A: I like that coat.  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: I like those pictures.  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: Are those your books?  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: Do you know that girl?  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: Those flowers are beautiful.  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: Who's that man?  
B: .....  
A: .....
- A: Have you seen my photographs?  
B: .....  
A: .....



# ཐེ་ཆོན་དོན་ལྡན། SOME དང ANY

ག ང་ཆོས་someའི་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ལ། anyའི་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།

| Some  | Any   |
|---|---|
|  <p>I've got some money.</p>  |  <p>I haven't got any money.</p>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; I'm going to buy <b>some</b> clothes</li> <li>&gt; There's <b>some</b> ice in the fridge</li> <li>&gt; We did <b>some</b> exercises.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; I'm not going to buy <b>any</b> clothes.</li> <li>&gt; There isn't <b>any</b> orange juice in the fridge.</li> <li>&gt; We didn't do <b>any</b> exercises.</li> </ul> |

ཁ anyདང་someགཉིས་འདྲི་ཆོག་ནང་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་ལ། ཆོག་གྲུབ་མང་ཆོས་བའི་ནང་ཏུ་ང་ཆོས་anyབེད་

སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- > Is there any ice in the fridge?
- > Has he got any friends?
- > Why didn't you buy any food?

ནམ་རྒྱུན་someའི་ང་ཆོས་དངོས་པོ་སྤྲོད་མི་གཞན་ལ་མཁོ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་སྐབས་

སྤྱོད་བྱེད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།(would you like...?)

- > A: Would you like some coffee?
- B: Yes, please.



ཡང་ན་ང་ཆོས་མི་ཞིག་ལ་དངོས་པོ་སྤྲོད་མི་སྐབས་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།(can I have...?):

- > A: Can I have some soup, please?
- B: Yes. Help yourself.
- > A: Can you lend me some money?
- B: Sure. How much do you need?

Someདང་anyགཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྤྲིང་ཆོག་མེད་པར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཞག་པ།

དཔེར་ན།

- > I didn't take any photographs but Ann took some. (=Some photographs)
- > You can have some coffee but I don't want any. (=Any coffee)
- > I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (=Some coffee)
- > 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any.' (= Any luggage)
- > 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are some in the kitchen.' (= Some biscuits)



| something/ somebody (or someone)   | anything / anybody (or anyone)   |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; She said something.</li> <li>&gt; I saw somebody (or someone)</li> <li>&gt; Would you like something to eat?</li> <li>&gt; Quick! Somebody's coming</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; She didn't say anything.</li> <li>&gt; I didn't see anybody (or anyone)</li> <li>&gt; Are you doing anything this evening?</li> <li>&gt; Where's Ann? Has anybody seen her?</li> </ul> |





## གསལ་སྤྱད།

75.1 some དང་ any གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I bought **some** cheese but I didn't buy **any** bread.
2. I'm going to the post office. I need ..... stamps.
3. There aren't ..... shops in this part of town.
4. George and Alice haven't got ..... children.
5. Have you got ..... brothers or sister?
6. There are ..... beautiful flowers in the garden.
7. Do you know ..... good hotels in London?
8. 'Would you like ..... tea?' 'yes, please.'
9. When we were on holiday, we visited ..... very interesting places.
10. Don't buy ..... rice. We don't need .....
11. I went out to buy ..... milk but they didn't have ..... in the shop.
12. I'm thirsty. Can I have ..... water, please?

75.2 some དང་ any གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟངས་ཆ་སྟངས་དགོས།

|           |         |           |         |                |
|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|----------------|
| air       | cheese  | help      | letters | photographs    |
| batteries | friends | languages | milk    | <b>shampoo</b> |

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there **any shampoo**?
2. This evening I'm going to write .....
3. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take .....
4. Do you speak ..... foreign .....?
5. Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with ..... of mine.
6. Can I have ..... in my coffee, please?
7. The radio isn't working. There aren't ..... in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out for ..... fresh .....
9. 'Would you like .....?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.'
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need .....

75.3 some དང་ any གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

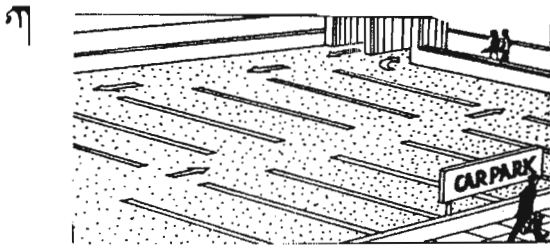
1. Ann didn't take any photographs but I **took some** (I / take)
2. 'Where's your luggage?' '**I haven't got any.**' (I / not/ have)
3. 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you. ....' (I / have)
4. 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry but ....' (I / not / have)
5. The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so ..... (I / not / buy)
6. There were some nice oranges in the shop, so ..... (I / buy)

75.4 something/ somebody/ anything / anybody སྐད་གསལ་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. She said **something** to me but I didn't understand it.
2. 'What's wrong?' 'There's ..... in my eye.'
3. Do you know ..... about politics?
4. I went to the shop but I didn't buy .....
5. .... has broken the window, I don't know who.
6. There isn't ..... in the bag. It's empty.
7. I'm looking for my keys. Has ..... seen them?
8. Would you like ..... to drink?
9. I didn't eat ..... because I wasn't hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don't tell .....



ཕྱི་ཆ་ན་དོན་ཅུག་པ། NOT + ANY NO NONE



ཐུངས་འཁོར་འཛོག་ས་སྟོང་བ་རེད།

There aren't any cars } in the car park.  
 There are no cars }  
 How many cars are there in the car park?  
**None.**

**not (n't) +any**

- There aren't any cars in the car park.
- Sally and Steve haven't got any children.
- You can have some coffee but I don't want any.

no ཡི་རྩེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཚིག་བཀོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན། (no cars / no garden)

no ... བྱི་not + anyའཕྲ་ཡང་ན་not + aདང་དྲིན་འདྲའོ།

- There are no cars in the car park. (=There aren't any cars)
- We've got no coffee. (= We haven't got any coffee)
- It's a nice house but there's no garden. (There isn't a garden)

དམིགས་བསལ་གྱི་ངོ་ཚོན་no/མི་have (got)དང་there is / areམིགས་ཀྱི་རྟེན་སྒྲུབ་དང་ཚུད་ཅིང་། དཔེར་ན།

དགགཅིགགིསྟེ་ལམཅིག་དང་དེའིསྟེ་ལྟ་anyཡོད་པའི། དགགམེནཅིགགིསྟེ་ལམཅིག་དང་དེའིསྟེ་ལྟ་no ཟུར་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲའོ།

- They haven't got any children. ཡང་ན། They've got no children. ('they haven't got no children' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. ཡང་ན། There's no sugar in your coffee.

ཁ noདང noneགཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ང་ཚོས་ཡོ་རྒྱུས་སུ་མིང་ཚིག་བཅུ་དྲུག་གྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- We've got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

ང་ཚོས་noneཀྱི་ཁེར་རྒྱུ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག ངེལ་ན།

- ‘How much money have you got?’ ‘None.’ (སྒྲིང་མེད་པའི་དོན)
- ‘Where there any problems?’ ‘No, none.’ (དགའ་ངལ་མེད་པའི་དོན)

ག none ཅེ་ no - one

None བོ་གཅིག་གྱུང་མེད་པའི་དོན།

Noneཅི་ཆེས་how much? / How many? སྐད་ཀྱི་ལན་འདི་བས་རྒྱ་བས་ལྷ་མོ་དུམ་ཕྱིན་པུ་དཔེ་རྒྱ།

- How much money have you got? 'None.' (སྒྲུང་མ་ཐེང་པའི་དོན)  
➤ How many people did you meet?' 'None.' (མི་ཐེང་པའི་དོན)

No - one རི་མི་གཅིག་གྱུང་མེད་པའི་དོན། (ཐེ་ཆན་ 77ལ་སྟོན་)

No - one ཅིང་ཆོས་who ཡི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Who did you meet?' 'No - one.'



## གསལ་བྱུང་།

76.1 no བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We haven't got any money. **We've got no money.**
2. There aren't any shops near here. There are .....
3. Carol hasn't got any free time. ....
4. There isn't a light in this room. ....

any བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

5. We've got no money. **We haven't got any money.**
6. There's no tea in the pot. ....
7. There are no buses today. ....
8. Tom has got no brothers or sisters. ....

76.2 no དང་any གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There's **no** sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married but he hasn't got ..... children.
3. Sue doesn't speak ..... foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's ..... coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see ..... Birds.'
6. 'Do you know where Jane is?' 'No, I've got ..... Idea.'

no དང་any ཡང་ན་none སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

7. There aren't ..... Pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold but there was ..... wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges but they didn't have ..... In the shop.
10. Everything was correct. There were ..... mistakes.
11. 'How much luggage have you got?' '.....'.
12. 'How much luggage have you got?' 'I haven't got .....'.

76.3 any དང་no གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྡན་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Answer difference film friends furniture heating money  
Photographs problems questions

1. Everything was ok. There were **no problems**.
2. They want to go on holiday but they've got .....
3. I'm not going to answer .....
4. He's always alone. He's got .....
5. There is ..... between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't ..... in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to phone you yesterday but there was .....
8. The house is cold because there isn't .....
9. I can't take ..... there's ..... in the camera.

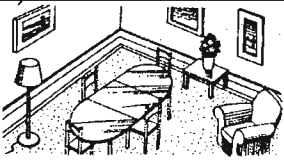
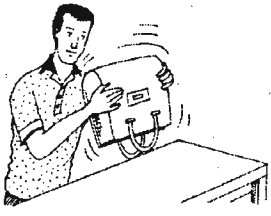
76.4 གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་སྟབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས། དཀྱིལ་མཁོ་ཡང་ཆོ་none བཞོལ་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? **Two.** ཡང་ན་ **a lot.** ཡང་ན་ **none.**
2. How many sisters have you got? .....
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday? .....
4. How many photographs have you taken today? .....
5. How many legs has a snake got? .....



# མི་ཚད་དོན་བརྒྱུན་པ། NOT + ANYBODY / ANYONE / ANYTHING / NOBODY / NO - ONE / NOTHING སྐད་གསལ།

ག

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>Not + anybody / anyone</b><br/> <b>Nobody / no - one</b><br/>         (སྐད་གསལ་ནི་མི་ལ་ཁེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་)</p>  <p>➤ There isn't <math>\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{anybody} \\ \text{Anyone} \end{array} \right\}</math> in the room.</p> <p>➤ There is <math>\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nobody} \\ \text{no - one} \end{array} \right\}</math> in the room</p> <p>➤ A: Who is in the room?<br/>         B: Nobody. / No - one.<br/>         Anybodyནི་anyoneདོན་འདྲ་ལོ། nobody ནི་no -oneདོན་འདྲ་ལོ།<br/>         (anybody དང་anyone areགཉིས་དོན་འདྲ་ལོ།)</p> | <p><b>not + anything</b><br/> <b>nothing</b><br/>         (སྐད་གསལ་ནི་དངོས་པོར་ཁེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་)</p>  <p>➤ There isn't anything in the bag.</p> <p>➤ There is nothing in the bag.</p> <p>➤ A: What's in the bag?<br/>         B: Nothing.</p> |
|--|---|

ཁ

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>not + anybody / anyone</b><br/>         I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.<br/>         Nobodyནི་not + anybody དང་འདྲ་ལ།<br/>         no - one ནི་not + anyone དང་འདྲ་ལ།<br/>         I'm lonely. I've got nobody to talk to.<br/>         (ནི་I haven't got anybody དང་འདྲ་ལ།)<br/>         The house is empty. There is no -one in it.<br/>         (ནི་There isn't anyone in it.དང་འདྲ་ལ།)</p> | <p><b>not + anything</b><br/>         I can't remember anything.<br/>         nothingནི་not + anything དང་འདྲ་ལ།<br/>         She said nothing.<br/>         (ནི་She didn't say anything དང་འདྲ་ལ།)<br/>         There's nothing to eat.<br/>         (ནི་There isn't anything to eat.དང་འདྲ་ལ།)</p> |
|---|--|

ག

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>ང་ཚོས་<b>nobody / no-one / nothing</b>སྐད་གསལ་ནི་ཆོག་གྱུ་བ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཞག་ལ། གཞན་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་སྐབས་སུ་དེ་ཆོ་ཁེར་རྒྱུ་དུ་འང་བཞག་ལ་སྟེ།</p> <p>➤ The house is empty. Nobody lives there.<br/>         ('Anybody lives there' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> <p>➤ Who did you speak to?' 'No - one.'</p> | <p>➤ Nothing happened.<br/>         ('anything happened' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> <p>➤ 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'</p> |
|--|--|

## ང་ ཡིད་འཛིག་ཕྱིད་དགོས་པ།

དགག་ལུན་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་དང་དེའི་ཆེས་སུ་anybody / anyone / anything སྐད་གསལ་བཞག་ལ།

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་དང་དེའི་ཆེས་སུ་nobody / no - one / nothing སྐད་གསལ་བཞག་ལ།

He doesn't know anything. ('He doesn't know nothing' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Don't tell anybody. (t 'Don't tell nobody' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

There is nothing to do in this town. ('there isn't nothing' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

77.1 **nobody/no- one/ nothing** སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There isn't anything in the bag. **There's nothing in the bag.**
2. There isn't anybody in the office. There's .....
3. I haven't got anything to do. I .....
4. There isn't anything on TV. ....
5. There wasn't anyone at home. ....
6. We didn't find anything. ....

77.2 **anybody/anyone/anything.** སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There's nothing in the bag. **There isn't anything in the bag.**
2. There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't .....
3. I've got nothing to read. ....
4. I've got no – one to help me. ....
5. She heard nothing. ....
6. We've got nothing for dinner. ....

77.3 **nobody/ no-one /nothing.** སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1a. What did you say? <b>Nothing.</b> | 5a Who knows the answer? ..... |
| 2a Who saw you? <b>Nobody.</b>        | 6a What did you buy? .....     |
| 3a What do you want? .....            | 7a What happened? .....        |
| 4a Who did you meet? .....            | 8a Who was late? .....         |

**nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything** སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1b <b>I didn't say anything.</b> | 5b ..... the answer. |
| 2b <b>Nobody saw me.</b>         | 6b .....             |
| 3b I don't .....                 | 7b .....             |
| 4b I .....                       | 8b .....             |

77.4 **nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything** སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

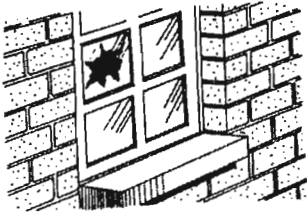
## དགོས།

1. That house is empty **nobody** lives there.
2. Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.
3. Be quiet! Don't say .....
4. I didn't know about the meeting ..... told me.
5. 'What did you have to eat?' '..... I wasn't hungry.'
6. I didn't eat ..... I wasn't hungry.
7. Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't with .....
8. I'm afraid I can't help you. There's ..... I can do.
9. I don't know..... about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn't cost ..... to go in.
11. I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there was ..... there.
12. She spoke very fast. I didn't understand .....
13. 'What are you doing this evening?' '..... why?'
14. Helen has gone away. .... knows where she is. She didn't tell ..... where she was going.



## མི་ཚན་དོན་བརྒྱུད་པ། SOMEBODY / ANYTHING / NOWHERE སོགས།

ཀ



Somebody (or someone)  
has broken the window.



she has got something  
her mouth.



Tom lives somewhere near  
London.

**somebody/someone** རིང་ཚོས་མི་སྒུ་ཡིན་མི་ཤེས་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཞོལ། **something** རིང་ཚོས་དངོས་པོ་གང་ཡིན་མི་ཤེས་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཞོལ། **somewhere** རིང་ཚོས་ས་ཆ་གང་ཡིན་མི་ཤེས་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཞོལ།

### ཁ གང་ཟག (-body ཡང་ན -one)

Somebody / someone  
Anybody/ anyone  
Nobody/ no-one

- There is somebody (or someone) in the garden.
- Is there anybody (or anyone) in the garden?
- There isn't anybody (or anyone) in the garden.
- There is nobody (or no - one) in the garden.

-Body དང་-one གཉིས་ནི་དོན་འདྲའོ། somebody = someone, nobody = no - one etc.

### དངོས་པོ།

Something  
Anything  
Nothing

- She said something but I didn't understand her.
- Are you doing anything at the weekend?
- I was angry but I didn't say anything.
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

### ས་ཆ།

Somewhere  
Anywhere  
Nowhere

- They live somewhere in the south of England.
- Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?
- I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.
- I don't like this town. There is nowhere to go.

### ག something / anybody སོགས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་བྱུང་ཚུས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.
- What's that letter?' 'It's nothing important.'

### ང something / anybody སོགས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་to... བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm hungry. I want something to eat. (= Something that I can eat)
- He hasn't got anybody to talk to. (= Anybody that he can talk to)
- There's nowhere to go in this town. (= Nowhere where people can go)



## གཤམ་བྱ་བ་

78.1 somebody/someone/something/somewhere མི་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. She said <b>something</b> . | What did she say?           |
| 2. I've lost .....             | What have you lost?         |
| 3. They went .....             | Where did they go?          |
| 4. I'm going to phone.....     | Who are you going to phone? |

78.2 nobody /or no-one/nothing/ nowhere མི་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1a What did you say?        | <b>Nothing.</b> |
| 2a Where are you going?     | .....           |
| 3a What do you want?        | .....           |
| 4a Who are you looking for? | .....           |

not ཡི་རྩེས་སུ་ anybody/anything/anywhere མི་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| 1b I <b>didn't say anything</b> . | 3b ..... |
| 2b I'm not .....                  | 4b ..... |

78.3 somebody/somewhere/anything/nowhere མི་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- It's dark. I can't see **anything**.
- Tom lives **somewhere** near London.
- Do you know ..... about computers?
- 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear .....
- 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for .....
- Please listen carefully. There's ..... I want to tell you.
- 'did..... see the accident?' 'No, .....
- We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat .....
- 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know ..... knows.'
- 'Do you know ..... in London?' 'Yes, a few people.'
- 'What's in that cupboard?' '..... it's empty.'
- I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them .....
- I don't like cold weather. I want to live ..... warm.
- Is there ..... interesting on television tonight?
- Have you ever met ..... famous?

78.4 གཤམ་བྱ་འདྲ་མཉམ་གཉིས་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

༡    **Something**    **anything**    **nothing**    **somewhere**    **anywhere**    **nowhere** (ཟིངས་གཅིག་གམ་མང་བར་བཞོལ་ཆོག)

ཁ    **Do**    **drink**    **eat**    **go**    **play**    **read**    **sit**    **stay**

- We don't go out very much because there's **nowhere to go**.
- There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got .....
- I'm bored. I've got .....
- 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't .....
- 'Would you like .....?' 'Yes, please – a glass of orange juice.'
- All the hotels were full. There was .....
- I want ..... I'm going to buy a magazine.
- Children need .....







## གཤམ་ཕྱད་

79.1 every ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་ Day/room/student/time/word སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

## དགོས།

1. Every student in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. .... in the same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play she wins .....
4. .... in the hotel has a private bathroom.
5. 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it but not .....

79.2 every day དང་ all day གཉིས་བཅད་སྐད་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Yesterday it rained all day.
2. I buy a newspaper ..... but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home .....
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee .....
5. Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed .....
6. Last year we went to the seaside for a week and it rained .....
7. I'm tired now because I've been working hard .....

79.3 every དང་ all གཉིས་བཅད་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening.
2. Barbara gets up at 6.30 ..... morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat in the garden ..... afternoon.
4. I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away ..... week.
5. 'How often do you go skiing?' '..... year. Usually in March.'
6. A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday? B: Yes, I was at home ..... morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister likes cars. She buys a new one..... year.
8. I saw Jack at the party. He wasn't very friendly. He didn't speak to me ..... evening.
9. We go away on holiday for two or three weeks ..... summer..

79.4 everybody / everything/ everywhere སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Everybody needs friends.
2. Chris knows ..... about computers.
3. I like the people here. .... is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and ..... is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes ..... by motor - bike.
6. Let's have dinner. .... is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books .....
8. You are right. .... you say is true.

79.5 ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཅད་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Everybody has problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody ..... waiting for you.
3. The house is empty. Everybody ..... gone out.
4. George is very popular. Everybody ..... him.
5. This town is completely different. Everything ..... changed.
6. I arrived home very late. I came in quietly because everyone ..... asleep.
7. Everybody ..... mistakes!



# མྱོ་ཆེན་བསྐྱད་ཅུ་བ།

ALL

MOST

SOME

ANY

NO / NONE

## ༡ བསྐྱད་བ།

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Children / money / books</b> མགས་ནི་གང་ཟག་གམ་བྱ་དངོས་སྤྱི་ལ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད།<br>> Children like playing. (ཕྱ་གུ་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི།)<br>> Money isn't everything. (སྒྲིང་མི་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི།)<br>> I enjoy reading books.<br>> Everybody needs friends. | <b>The children / the money / these books</b> མགས་ནི་གང་ཟག་དང་བྱ་དངོས་ཀྱི་བྱུག་གམ་དམིགས་བསལ་ལ་བཟུང་སྤྱད་བྱེད།<br>> Where are the children? (ནི་ང་ཆོའི་ཕྱ་གུ་རྒྱ་ནི།)<br>> I want to buy a car but I haven't got the money. (ནི་སྒྲིང་ས་འཁོར་ཉ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིང་མིང་ནི།)<br>> I often go out with my friends. |
|--|--|

## ཁ བསྐྱད་བྱེད་ཅུ་བ་ལྟར་བྱེད་ཅུ་བ།

**most / some + མིང་ཆོག་བཀོལ་བ།** (most + city = most cities)

|      |    |          |
|------|----|----------|
| all  | of | city     |
| most |    | children |
| some |    | books    |
| any  |    | money    |
| no   |    |          |

**all                      most                      some**

- Most children like playing. (ཕྱ་གུ་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི།)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got no friends.
- All cities have the same problems. (སྒྲིང་ཆེན་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི།)

འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་ང་ཆོས་ཀྱི་བཟུང་སྤྱད་ཅུ་བ།

- Most people drive too fast. ('most of people'ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Some birds can't fly. ('Some of birds' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

**most of / some of མགས་སྤྱི་ཇེས་སྤྱད་ཆོས་ the/this/my....མགས་བཀོལ།** (most of + the + city = most of the cities)

བཀོལ། (most of + the + city = most of the cities)

|      |    |                  |
|------|----|------------------|
| all  | of | the...           |
| most | of | this / that...   |
| some |    | these / those .. |
| any  |    | my/your...       |
| none |    |                  |

**any    no / none / not + any**

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

ང་ཆོས་all the / all myཞེས་བཀོལ་བ་ལས། འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ནང་ཀྱི་བཟུང་སྤྱད་ཅུ་བ།

- All the students in our class passed the exam.
- Silvia has lived in London all her life.

## ག བསྐྱད་བྱེད་ཅུ་བ་ལྟར་བྱེད་ཅུ་བ།

|      |    |      |
|------|----|------|
| all  | of | it   |
| most |    | them |
| some |    | us   |
| any  |    | you  |
| none |    |      |

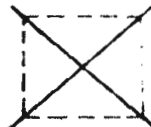
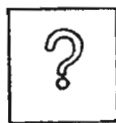
- > You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- > A: Do you know those people?  
B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- > Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- > I've got a lot of books but I haven't read any of them.
- > How many of these books have you read? 'None of them.'





## ཕྱི་ཚུན་གྲུ་གཅིག་ལ། BOTH/EITHER/NEITHER སྟགས།

༡ ང་ཚོས་ both / either / neither སྟགས་ནི་མིའམ་བྱ་དངོས་སྟགས་གཉིས་ལ་གླེང་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད།



Both

either

neither (not + either)

- > Rosemary has two children. Both are married. (Both ཡིན་པའི་two children ལྟར་པའོ)
- > Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (tea ཡང་ན་ coffee གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་གཅིག་ལ་ནོ)
- > A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?  
B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (the cinema དང་ the theatre གཉིས་ཀྱི་མིན་པ་ལྟར་ན)

## either དང་ neither གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- > 'Would you like tea or coffee?' { Either. I don't mind. (Tea དང་ ཡང་ན་ coffee གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་ཞིག་ཡིན་ཚུགས་པའི་དོན་དུ་)  
'I don't want either.' ('I don't want neither' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)  
Neither. (tea དང་ ཡང་ན་ coffee གཉིས་ཀྱི་མི་འཐུང་བའི་དོན་དུ་)

## ༢ both / either / neither + རྗེས་སུ་མིང་ཆོག་བཞོལ་ཚུལ། (both + windows = both windows)

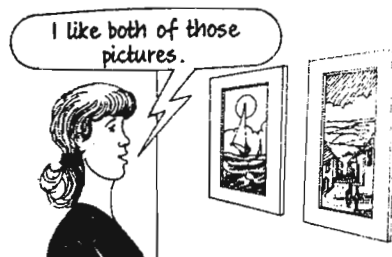
|                                     |                                  |   |  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|--|
| Both ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་མིང་གང་ས་བཞོལ་དགོས། |                                  | both windows / books / children སྟགས་ལྟ་བུའོ། |  |
| Either                              | } ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་མིང་གང་ས་བཞོལ་དགོས། | either  | } window / book / children སྟགས་ལྟ་བུའོ། |
| Neither                             |                                  | neither                                       |  |

- > Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- > First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.
- > There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

## ༣ both of / either of / neither of སྟགས་ཀྱི་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཚུལ།

|         |    |                     |
|---------|----|---------------------|
| both    | of | the...              |
| either  |    | these/ those...     |
| neither |    | my / your/ Ann's... |

- > Neither of my parents is English.
- > I haven't read either of these books.



## ང་ཚོས་ both ... (of) the/those/my + འབྲེལ་ཆོག་ of མིང་པར་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

- > I like both of those pictures. ཡང་ན། I like both those pictures.
- > Both of Ann's sisters are married. ཡང་ན། Both Ann's sisters are married.

## ད མིང་ཆོག་བཞོལ་དགོས། both of / neither of + མིང་ཆོག་བཞོལ་དགོས།

|         |    |      |
|---------|----|------|
| Both    | of | Them |
| Either  |    | us   |
| Neither |    | you  |

- > Ann has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- > Tom and I didn't eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- > Who are those two people? I don't know either of them



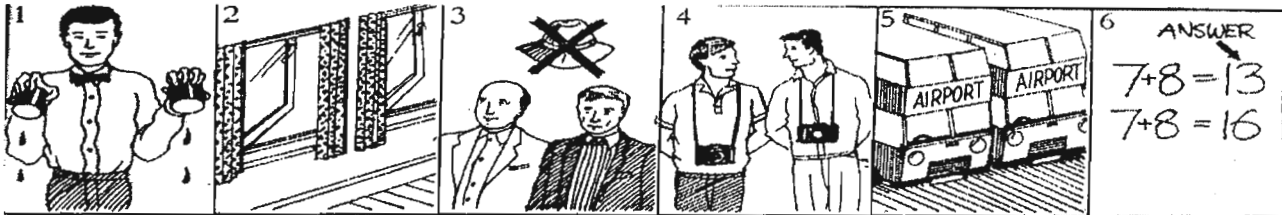
## གསལ་བཤད་

81.1 both/ either/ neither སྐད་ཀྱི་འདྲ་བའི་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆེན་མོ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་

གཞིགས་ནས་of བཞོལ་སྦྱང་བྱས་ཆོག

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both** cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like **either** of them.
3. It was a good football match. .... teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football match ..... team played well.
5. 'Is your friend English or American?' '..... she's Australian.'
6. We went away for two days but the weather wasn't good. It rained on ..... days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want? B: ..... It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Diana and Mike to the party but ..... them came.
9. 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' '..... I always walk.
10. 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like ..... them.'
11. 'Do you work or are you a student?' '..... I've got a job and I study too.'
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because ..... us had a watch.
13. Ann has got two sisters and a brother. .... sisters are married.
14. Ann has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother but I haven't met ..... her sisters.

81.2 རི་མོར་བཞུགས་མེས་both.../neither... གཞིགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆེན་མོ་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. **Both** cups are empty.
2. .... are open.
3. ....wearing hat.
4. .... cameras.
5. .... to the airport.
6. ....right.

81.3 གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་སྦྱང་གཞིགས་ལ་དྲིས་པ་ཡིན་ལ། དེ་གཞིགས་ཀྱི་ལན་གཅིག་མཆོང་ས་ཡིན་པས། བྱུང་གྱིས་

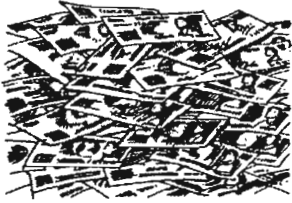
both/neither of them གཞིགས་བཞོལ་ནས་ཁོང་གཞིགས་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཆ་ཆེན་མོ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                 |        |        |                                    |
|---------------------------------|--------|--------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Are you married?             | No     | no     | <b>Neither of them is married.</b> |
| 2. How old are you?             | 21     | 21     | <b>Both of them are 21.</b>        |
| 3. Are you a student?           | Yes    | yes    | ..... students.                    |
| 4. Have you got a car?          | No     | no     | ..... a car.                       |
| 5. Where do you live?           | London | London | .....                              |
| 6. Do you like cooking?         | Yes    | yes    | .....                              |
| 7. Can you play the piano?      | No     | no     | .....                              |
| 8. Do you read newspapers?      | Yes    | yes    | .....                              |
| 9. Are you interested in sport? | No     | no     | .....                              |



མི་ཚུ་གྲུ་གཉིས་པ། A LOT MUCH MANY

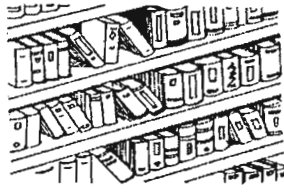
༡



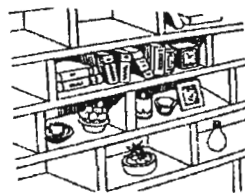
a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

ང་ཚོས་much + བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་བཞུགས་ཐུང་བུ་དཔེར་ན།

- Did you buy much food?
- We haven't got much luggage.
- How much money do you want?
- A: Have you got any money?
- B: I've got some but not much.

ང་ཚོས་many + མིང་ཚིག་གི་མང་གུང་ས་ཤེས་ཐུང་བུ་དཔེར་ན།

- Did you buy many books?
- We don't know many people.
- How many photographs did you take?
- A: Did you take any photographs?
- B: I took some but not many.

ང་ཚོས་a lot of + མིང་ཚིག་གང་ཡང་རུང་བ་ (ཉེ་བཟང་རུང་མིན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་) བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚིག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula hasn't got a lot of free time.

- We bought a lot of books.
- Did they ask you a lot of question?

ཡིད་འཛིག་ཐུང་དགོས་པ།

- There is a lot of food / money / water ...

(ལས་ཚིག་ནི་རྒྱང་གུང་ས་ཡིན་པས་ཇེས་སྟེ་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་བཞུགས་པ།)

- There are a lot of trees / shops / people...

(ལས་ཚིག་ནི་མང་གུང་ས་ཡིན་པས་ཇེས་སྟེ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་མང་གུང་ས་བཞུགས་པ་དགོས།)

- A lot of people speak English. ('speaks'ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁ ང་ཚོས་ much བོ་ནམ་རྒྱན་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ལུན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།

- Do you drink much coffee/ a lot of coffee?
- I don't drink much coffee/ a lot of coffee.
- I drink a lot of coffee. ('I drink much coffee. ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, a lot.' ('much ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང་ཚོས་manyདང་a lot of གཉིས་བོ་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གང་ཡང་རུང་བའི་ནང་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

- Have you got many friends/ a lot of friends?
- We haven't got many friends/ a lot of friends.
- We've got many friends/ a lot of friends.

ག muchདང་a lot གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྟེ་མིང་ཚིག་མི་སྤྱོད་བར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚིག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Diane spoke to me but she didn't say much.
- 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (རྒྱན་ལན་མིན་པའི་དོན་དུ་)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. ( much ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I don't like him very much.



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

82.1 **much** དང་ **many** གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྤྲོད་ཆ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Did you buy <u>much</u> food?          | 5 Did .....students fail the examination?  |
| 2. There aren't .....hotels in this town. | 6 Paula hasn't got ..... money.            |
| 3. We haven't got .....petrol.            | 7 I wasn't very hungry. I didn't eat ..... |
| 4. Were there ..... people on the train?  | 8 I haven't seen George for ..... years.   |

**how much** དང་ **how many** གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 9 ..... people are coming to the party?  
 10 ..... milk do you want in your coffee?  
 11 ..... bread did you buy?  
 12 ..... players are there in a football team?

82.2 **Books/countries/luggage/people/time/times** སྟོན་ **much** འམ་ **many** གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I don't read very much. I haven't got <u>many books</u> . | 4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know ..... |
| 2. Quick! We must hurry. We haven't got.....                 | 5 'Have you got .....?' 'No, only this bag.'                  |
| 3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to .....               | 6 I know Paris very well. I've been there .....               |

82.3 **a lot of** དང་མཉམ་དུ་ **Accidents/books/fun/interesting/things/traffic** སྟོན་གང་རུང་ལ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I like reading. I have <u>a lot of books</u> .   | 4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had .....                  |
| 2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw ..... |   |
| 3. This road is very dangerous. There are .....     | 5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was ..... |

82.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ཀྱི་ནང་དུ་ནམ་རྒྱུ་ **much** བེད་སྤྲོད་མི་བྱེད་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་དེ་དག་བཙལ་ཐོས་ནས་བཙལ་བྱས། གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འགྲིག་ཆེ་མཁུག་ཏུ་ **ok** ཞེས་འཛིན་དགོས།

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. Do you drink <u>much</u> coffee?                            | <b>Ok</b>            |
| 2. I drink <u>much</u> tea.                                    | <b>A lot of tea.</b> |
| 3. It was a cold winter. We had <u>much</u> snow. ....         |                      |
| 4. There wasn't <u>much</u> snow last winter. ....             |                      |
| 5. It costs <u>much</u> money to travel around the world. .... |                      |
| 6. We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost <u>much</u> . ....   |                      |
| 7. Do you know <u>much</u> about computers? .....              |                      |
| 8. 'Have you got any luggage?' 'Yea, <u>much</u> .' .....      |                      |

82.5 **ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་much དང་ a lot** གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་སྐོར་འཛིན་དགོས།

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Jim loves films. (Go to the cinema)            | <b>He goes to the cinema a lot.</b> |
| 2. Linda thinks TV is boring. (Watch TV)          | She doesn't watch TV much.          |
| 3. Tina is a good tennis player. (Play tennis)    | She .....                           |
| 4. Martin doesn't like driving. (Use his car)     | He .....                            |
| 5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out) | .....                               |
| 6. Sue has been all over the world. (Travel)      | .....                               |



# ཐེ་ཆ་ན་གྲུ་གསུམ་པ། (A) LITTLE

## (A) FEW སྐག་སྐ།

a little water



little + བག་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་སྟུང།

- (a) little water (a) little money
- (a) little time (a) little soup

A few books



few + མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གུང་སྟུང།

- (a) few books (a) few question
- (a) few people (a) few days.

a little གི་ཁ་ཤས་སམ་རུང་ཅམ་སྟེ་མང་པོ་མེད་པའི་དོན། a

little ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་ངེས་པར་དུ་བག་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > She didn't eat anything but she drank a little water.
- > I speak a little Spanish. (ཞི་པན་ཡའི་སྐད་ཆ་རུང་ཅམ་གྱིས་མྱོད་འོན་ཀྱང་མང་པོ་མེ་གསལ་བའི་དོན།)
- > A: Can you speak Spanish?
- B: A little.

A few གི་ཁ་ཤས་སམ་རུང་ཅམ་སྟེ་མང་པོ་མེད་པའི་དོན།

a few ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ངེས་པར་དུ་བག་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > Last night I wrote a few letters.
- > We're going away for a few days.
- > I speak a few words of Spanish.
- > A: Are there any shops in the village?
- B: Yes, a few.

little གི་ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།

little ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་ངེས་པར་དུ་བག་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ། very little

- > Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།)

Few གི་ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།

few ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ངེས་པར་དུ་བག་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > There were few people in the park. It was nearly empty.

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ། very few

- > Your English is very correct. You make very few mistakes.

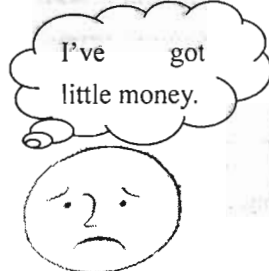
little དང་ a little གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར།

A little ལ་དགག་མིན་གྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིལ་ལྟར། (རུང་ཅམ་ཡོད་པའི་དོན།)

- > They have a little money, so they're not poor. (ཁོང་ཆོར་སྒྲིལ་ལྟར་ལྟོ་ལྟོ་ལྟར་ཡོད་པའི་དོན།)

Little གི་དགག་ལྟར་གྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིལ་ལྟར། ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།

- > They have little money. They are very poor. (ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།)



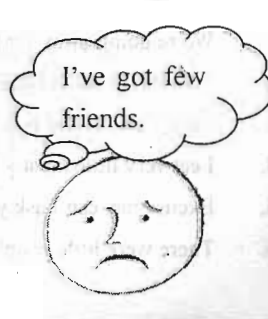
Few དང་ a few གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར།

A few ལ་དགག་མིན་གྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིལ་ལྟར། (རུང་ཅམ་ཡོད་པའི་དོན།)

- > I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (ཁོར་སྐྱགས་པོ་ཁ་ཤས་ཡོད་པའི་དོན།)

Few གི་དགག་ལྟར་གྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིལ་ལྟར། ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།

- > I'm sad and I'm lonely. I've got few friends. (ཕལ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།)







## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

83.1 a little དང་ a few གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
2. 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes.....'
3. 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, ....., please.'
4. 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, .....
5. 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes .....
6. 'Are there any factories in this town?' 'Yes, .....

83. 2 a little/ a few གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་Air/chairs/days/friends/letters/milk/Russian/times སྤྱོད་ཀྱིས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་ང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Last night I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
2. Can I have ..... in my coffee, please?
3. 'When did Julia go away?' '..... ago.'
4. 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak .....
5. 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with .....
6. 'Have you ever been to Rome?' 'Yes, .....
7. There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and .....
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need ..... fresh .....

83.3 very little/ very few གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་Coffee/hotels/mistakes/people/rain/time/work སྤྱོད་ཀྱིས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་ང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་ང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2. I drink ..... I don't like it.
3. The weather here is very dry in summer. There is .....
4. It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are .....
5. We must hurry. We've got .....
6. The town is very quiet at night. .... go out.
7. Some people in the office are very lazy. They do .....

83.4 little/ a little / few/ a few སྤྱོད་ཀྱིས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2. 'When did Sarah go out?' '.....minutes ago.'
3. I can't decide now. I need ..... time to think about it.
4. There was ..... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5. The bus service isn't very good at night – there are ..... buses after 9 o'clock.
6. 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, ....., please.'
7. I'd like to practice my English more but I have ..... opportunity.

83.5 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་ནམས་ནོར་བཙོས་ཁྱོས། གལ་ཏེ་འགྲིག་ཆོ་མཆུག་ཏུ་ok ཞེས་འབྲི་དགོས།

1. We're going away for few days next week. For a few days.
2. Everybody needs little luck. ....
3. I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. ....
4. I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. ....
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? ....
6. There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty. ....



ཐེ་ཚན་གྱི་འཛིན། OLD /NICE /INTERESTING སྟགས།

༡ བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ + མིང་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

| བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་           | + | མིང་ཚིག་                |
|---------------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| It's a nice                     |   | day today.              |
| Laura has got brown             |   | eyes.                   |
| There's a very old              |   | bridge in this village. |
| Do you like Italian             |   | food?                   |
| I don't speak any foreign       |   | languages.              |
| There are some beautiful yellow |   | flowers in the garden   |

བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ནི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་སྟོན་པའི་བྱང་ཚུལ་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- They live in a modern house. ( 'a house modern' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Have you met any famous people? ('people famous' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་ནི་ནམ་ཡང་འགྱུར་བ་མེད་དེ། དཔེར་ན།

A different place

different places ('differents' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁ be (am / is / was སྟགས།) ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

- The weather is nice today.
- These flowers are very beautiful.
- Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
- I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.



ག look / feel / smell / taste / sound སྟགས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་ཡང་བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།



- 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I feel tired.'
- George told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

བསྟར་བ།

|       |    |        |
|-------|----|--------|
| He    | is |        |
| feels |    | tired. |
| looks |    |        |

|       |     |           |
|-------|-----|-----------|
| They  | are |           |
| look  |     | American. |
| sound |     |           |

|        |    |       |
|--------|----|-------|
| It     | is |       |
| smells |    | good. |
| tastes |    |       |



# གསལ་སྒྲུབ་

84.1 གསལ་གྱི་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་གོ་རིམ་ནི་ར་བཤེན་གྱི་དག་བསྐྱར་དུ་བསྒྲིག་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (new/ live in/ house/ they/ a) **They live in a new house.**
2. (like/ jacket/ I / that/ green) I .....
3. (Music/ like /do/ classical/ you?) Do .....
4. (Had / wonderful/ a /I /holiday) .....
5. (Went to/ restaurant/ a Chinese/ we) .....

84.2 སྤྱང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ཁ་ཤས་ནི་བྱང་ཆས་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆོག་ཡིན་ལ་ཁ་ཤས་ནི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན། བྱང་གྱིས་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་དང་བྱང་ཆས་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|       |           |         |         |       |           |       |
|-------|-----------|---------|---------|-------|-----------|-------|
| air   | clouds    | foreign | holiday | job   | languages | sharp |
| black | dangerous | fresh   | hot     | knife | long      | water |

1. Do you speak any **foreign languages**?
2. Look at those ..... it's going to rain.
3. Sue works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a .....
4. I want to have a bath but there's no .....
5. Can you open the window? We need some .....
6. I need a ..... to cut these onions.
7. Fire - fighting is a .....

84.3 རེ་འུ་མིག་ཀ་དང་ཁ་གཉིས་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་རེ་མ་རེ་ལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རེ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|   |           |           |           |   |          |     |           |
|---|-----------|-----------|-----------|---|----------|-----|-----------|
| ཀ | feel (s)  | look (s)  | sound (s) | ཁ | happy    | ill | nice      |
|   | looks (s) | smell (s) | taste (s) |   | horrible | new | surprised |

1 You sound happy.....



2 It .....



3 I .....



4 You .....



5 They .....



6 It .....



84.4 གསལ་གྱི་རེ་འུ་མིག་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ནང་དོན་ཆ་ཆང་བ་ཞིག་མིན་པས། བྱང་གྱིས་རེ་འུ་མིག་གཡས་པའི་སྤྱང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| You look tired.       | Do I? I <u>don't</u> feel tired (feel) |
| This is a new coat.   | Is it? It ..... (look)                 |
| I'm American.         | Are you? You ..... (sound)             |
| You look cold.        | Do I? I ..... (feel)                   |
| These bags are heavy. | Are they? They ..... (look)            |
| That soup looks good. | Does it? It ..... (taste)              |



# ཐོག་ཚུགས་ཀྱི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ QUICKLY / BADLY / SUDDENLY སྐད་ཀྱི་

༡

7-10



7-12



7-15



He ate his dinner very quickly.

Suddenly the shelf fell down.

གོང་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་ quickly དང་ suddenly གཉིས་ནི་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཡིན།

ཁྱད་ཚུགས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ + ly སྒྱུར་ན་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཏུ་འགྱུར་གྱིན། དཔེར་ན།

ཁྱད་ཚུགས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་

quick

bad

sudden

careful

heavy

ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་

quickly

badly

suddenly

carefully

heavily

ཚིག་གི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཞིབ་མོར་ཟུར་བཞོད་ 5 ལ་སྟོན། easy – easily heavy – heavily

ཁ རོན་དག་ཞིག་རི་ལྷོ་ཕུང་བའམ་ཡང་ན་མི་ཞིག་གིས་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་རི་ལྷོ་ཕུང་བ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ལ་ང་ཚོས་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཟེར།

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.



བསྐྱུར་བ།

ཁྱད་ཚུགས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་

Sue is very quiet.

Be careful!

It was a bad game.

I feel nervous. (= I am nervous)

ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་

Sue speaks very quietly. (speaks very quietly ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅུང་)

Listen carefully! (listen carefully ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅུང་)

Our team played badly. (played badly ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅུང་)

I waited nervously.

ག hard /fast/ late/ early འདི་དག་ནི་ཁྱད་ཚུགས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཡིན་ལ་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཀྱང་ཡིན།

- The bus was late / early.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- Sue's job is very hard.

- Sue works very hard. (hardly ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅུང་)
- Ben can run fast.
- I went to bed late / early.

ང good (ནི་ཁྱད་ཚུགས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་)— well (ནི་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཡིན)

- It was a good game.
- Your English is very good.

- You speak English very well. ('very good ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅུང་')
- Our team played well.

ཡིན་ནའང་། well ནི་ཁྱད་ཚུགས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཀྱང་ཡིན་ཚིག་སྟེ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'How are you?' 'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'



## གསལ་བྱུང་།

85.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཟེས་ *Angrily/badly/dangerously/fast/heavily/quietly* སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གསལ་བྱུང་བྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནུས་

ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. It's raining **heavily**.
2. He sings very .....
3. They came in .....
4. She shouted at me .....
5. She can run very .....
6. He was driving .....

85.2 གསལ་བྱུང་འཕྲུལ་ལས་གཡས་ནི་ནུས་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཆེད་དང་གཡོན་ནི་ལས་ཆེག་ཡིན་པས་བྱུང་གིས་དེ་གཉིས་

ལས་ཆེག་རེ་བདམས་ནས་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|         |        |       |      |           |         |         |      |
|---------|--------|-------|------|-----------|---------|---------|------|
| Come    | know   | sleep | win  | Carefully | clearly | hard    | well |
| explain | listen | think | work | carefully | easily  | quickly | well |

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please **listen carefully**.
2. Ann! I need your help. .... !
3. They ..... at the end of the day they're always tired.
4. I'm tired this morning. I didn't ..... Last night.
5. You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always .....
6. .... before you answer the question.
7. I've met Alice a few times but I don't ..... Her very .....
8. Our teacher isn't very good. Sometimes he doesn't ..... things very .....

85.3 བརྒྱུད་ཤ་གཙོང་པ།

1. Don't eat so **quick/quickly**. It's not good for you. **Quickly is right.**
2. Why are you **angry / angrily**? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak **slow / slowly**, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so **slow / slowly**?
5. Bill is a very **careful / carefully** driver.
6. Jane is studying **hard / hardly** for her examinations.
7. 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here but she left **sudden / suddenly**.'
8. Please be **quiet / quietly**. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very **bad / badly**.
10. Those oranges look **nice / nicely**. Can I have one?

85.4 good འཕྲུལ་ཡང་ན་ *well* བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

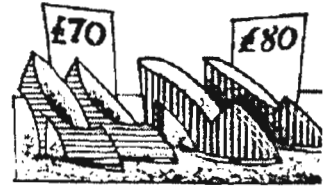
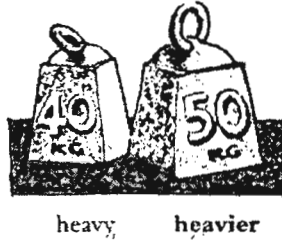
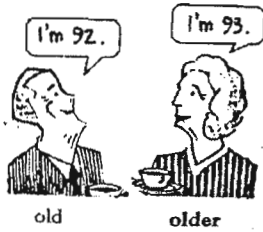
1. Your English is very **good**. You speak English very **well**.
2. Jackie did very ..... in her exams.
3. The party was very ..... I enjoyed it very much.
4. Martin has a difficult job but he does it .....
5. How are your parents? Are they .....?
6. Did you have a ..... Holiday? Was the weather .....?



## མི་ཚེན་གྱི་བྱུག་པ།

OLD / OLDER EXPENSIVE / MORE EXPENSIVE སྤྱི་གསལ།

༡



Older / heavier / more expensive སྤྱི་གསལ་དེ་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་བསྐར་ཆོག་ཡིན།

ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་ more སྐར་བའམ་ཡང་ན་ཆེས་སུ་ er སྐར་བའི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་བསྐར་ཆོག་གི་བྱུག་ཆུལ་ཡིན།

ཁ ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་ + er སྐར་ཆུལ།

ད་ཆོས་ཆོག་ཐུང་ངམ་སྐར་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་གིས་འདྲོན་ཐུབ་པའི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ + er སྐར་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

(དབྱངས་རྟ་གཅིག་གིས་འདྲོན་ཐུབ་པ་ལ་གོ།)

old — older

slow — slower

cheap — cheaper

nice — nicer

late — later

big — bigger

སྐར་ཆུལ་ཞིབ་མཉམ་ཐུབ་པའི་དུས་ལ་སྟོན། big — bigger hot — hotter thin — thinner

ཆོག་མཐའ་ yཡིན་པ་དང་དེའི་སྟོན་ཆོག་ནི་གསལ་བཤད་ཡིན་སྐབས་ད་ཆོས་ yདེ་ i ཏེ་བསྐར་ཆེས་ er སྟོན་དགོས།

easy — easier

heavy — heavier

early — earlier

- Rome is old but Athens is older. ('more old' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? ('more cheap ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Helen wants a bigger car.
- This coat is OK but I think the other one is nicer.
- Don't write a letter. It's easier to phone. (more easy ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Far — further:

- 'How far is it to the station? A mile?' 'No, it's further. About two miles.'

ག more ཡི་བཀོལ་ཆུལ།

ཆོག་རིང་ངམ་སྐར་ཆོག་གིས་ལས་མང་བའི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་ད་ཆོས་ + more བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས།

(དབྱངས་རྟ་གཅིག་གིས་འདྲོན་ཐུབ་པ་ལ་གོ།)

careful — more careful

polite — more polite

expensive — more expensive

interesting — more interesting

- You must be more careful.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

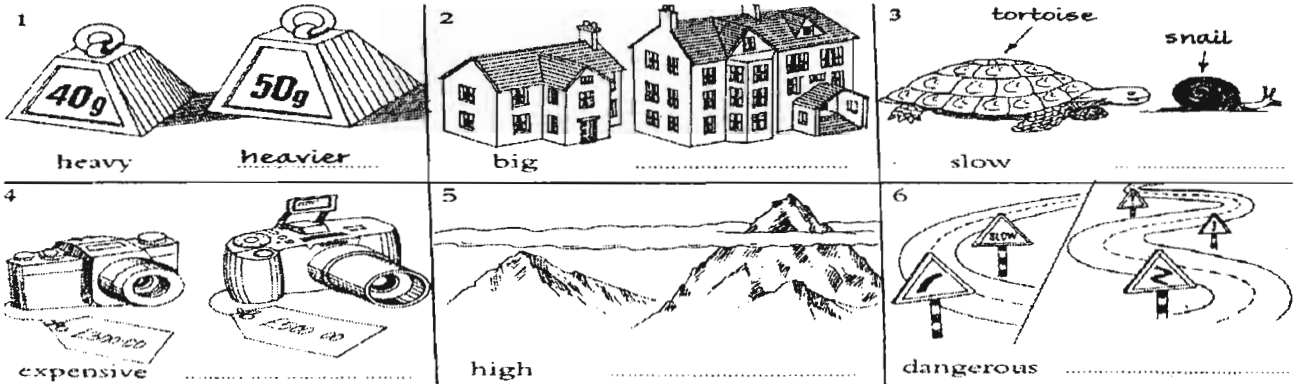
ད good / well — better bad — worse སྤྱི་གསལ་བཀོལ་ཆུལ།

- The weather wasn't very good yesterday but it's better today.
- 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel worse.'
- Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?



## གསལ་སྒྲུབ།

86.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་གི་བསྟར་ཆོག་འབྲི་དགོས།



86.2 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་གི་བསྟར་ཆོག་ཕྲིས།

- |                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Old <b>older</b> ..... | 6 Good .....     |
| 2. Strong .....           | 7 Large .....    |
| 3. Happy .....            | 8 Serious .....  |
| 4. Modern .....           | 9 Pretty .....   |
| 5. Important .....        | 10 Crowded ..... |

86.3 གསལ་གྱི་བསྟར་ཆོག་དག་གི་ཕྱག་ཆོག་ཕྲིས།

- |                               |                |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Younger <b>older</b> ..... | 4 Better ..... |
| 2. Colder .....               | 5 Nearer ..... |
| 3. Cheaper .....              | 6 Easier ..... |

86.4 བསྟར་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a **bigger** one.
- My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- You're not very tall. Your brother is .....
- David doesn't work very hard. I work .....
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is .....
- Your plan isn't very good. My plan is .....
- These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are .....
- My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is .....
- I'm not very interested in art. I'm ..... in history.
- It isn't very warm today. It was ..... Yesterday.
- These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted .....
- Britain isn't very big. France is .....
- London isn't very beautiful. Paris is .....
- This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a ..... One?
- People today aren't very polite. In the past they were .....





མེ་ཆེན་གྱི་བརྒྱན་པ། OLDER THAN

MORE EXPENSIVE THAN སྒྲིག་པ།

༡



She's taller than him.

| Hotel Prices<br>(per person, per night) |        |
|---|--------|
| Europa Hotel                            | £90    |
| Grand Hotel                             | £85.50 |
| Royal Hotel                             | £83    |
| 1st                                     | £70    |

The Europa hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

ང་ཚོས་thanནི་བསྐྱར་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོས་པ། དཔེར་ན། (older than ཞེས་འབྲི་དགོས་)

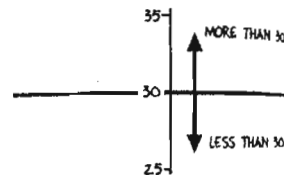
- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to phone than to write a letter.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

ཁ ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ། than me / than him / than her / than us / than them

- I can run faster than him. ཡང་ན། I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. ཡང་ན། You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. ཡང་ན། I got up earlier than she did.

ག more / less than གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- A: How much did your shoes cost? \$ 30?
- B: No, more than that. (=more than \$ 30)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They've got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.



ང a bit older / much older སྒྲིག་པའི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།



Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.



Box C is much bigger than Box D.

|       |                |      |
|-------|----------------|------|
| a bit | bigger         |      |
| much  | older          |      |
|       | better         | than |
|       | more difficult |      |
|       | more expensive |      |

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Jill is a bit older than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24 1/2.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.





## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

87.1 རེལ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་than བཀོལ་ནས་ལྟེ་ས་དང་ཟླན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྒྲིལ་མིས།

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I don't go to the cinema very much. | 1. I'm 24.                          |
| 2. I speak French very well.           | 2. I'm a very good swimmer.         |
| 3. I'm very intelligent.               | 3. I'm 1 meter 63 tall.             |
| 4. I'm not a very good dancer.         | 4. I start work at 8.30.            |
| 5. I'm not very patient.               | 5. I work very hard.                |
| 6. I'm a very good driver.             | 6. I've got a lot of money.         |
| 7. I haven't got much money.           | 7. I'm not a very good driver.      |
| 8. I don't work very hard.             | 8. I'm very patient.                |
| 9. I start work at 8 o'clock.          | 9. I'm good dance.                  |
| 10. I'm 1 meter 69 tall.               | 10. I'm not very intelligent.       |
| 11. I'm not a very good swimmer.       | 11. I don't speak French very well. |
| 12. I'm 26                             | 12. I go to the cinema a lot.       |

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. <u>Liz is older than Ben.</u>            | 7 Liz is a .....  |
| 2. <u>Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.</u> | 8 Ben .....       |
| 3. Liz is.....                              | 9 Ben .....       |
| 4. Liz starts .....                         | 10 Ben. Liz ..... |
| 5. Ben .....                                | 11 Liz .....      |
| 6. Ben has got .....                        | 12 Ben .....      |

87.2 than བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. He isn't very tall. You're tall than him. (or ... than he is)
2. She isn't very old. You 're .....
3. I don't work very hard. You work .....
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You .....
5. I'm not a very good cook. You .....
6. We don't know many people. You .....
7. They haven't got much money. You .....
8. I can't run very fast. You can .....
9. She hasn't been here very long. You .....
10. They didn't get up very early. You .....
11. He wasn't very surprised. You .....

87.3 a bit དང་much གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་བསྐྱར་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill is 25. Gary is 24 .  
Jill is a bit older than Gary.
2. Jack's mother is 54. His father is 69.  
Jack's mother .....
3. My camera cost 100. Yours cost 96.  
My camera .....
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel ok.  
I fell .....
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees.  
It's .....
6. Ann is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.  
Ann .....

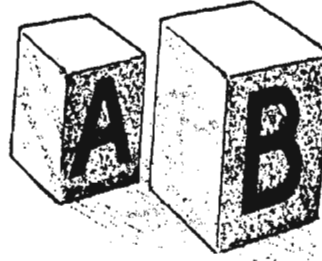


## མེ་ཆེན་གྱི་བརྒྱད་པ། NOT AS ...AS

༡ not as ... as ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།



She's old but she's not as old as he is.



Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome is not as old as Athens. (Athens རི་Rome ལས་མ་ཆེ་བའི་དོན)
- The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (the Europa རི་Grand Hotel ལས་འཇུག་པ་ཆུང་བའི་དོན)
- I don't play tennis as often as you. (ང་ནི་ཚུད་དང་འདྲ་བར་ན་མ་ཚུན་མི་ཆེ་བའི་དོན)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (གནམ་གཤེས་ཁ་སང་ལྟར་གྲང་མ་མེད་པའི་དོན)

༢ not as much as/ not as many as གཉིས་པེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཚུལ།

- I haven't got as much money as you. (ང་ལས་ཚུད་ལ་དང་ལ་ཉུང་བའི་དོན)
- I don't know as many people as you. (ང་ལས་ཚུད་ཀྱིས་མི་མང་པོ་འོ་ཤེས་པའི་དོན)
- I don't go out as much as you. (ང་ལས་ཚུད་རང་ཕྱི་ཕྱོད་པ་འགྲོ་བའི་དོན)

༣ not as... as དང་than གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- Rome is not as old as Athens.  
Athens is older than Rome. ('older as Rome ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅི་རུང་)
- Tennis isn't as popular as football.  
Football is more popular than tennis.
- I don't go out as much as you.  
You go out more than me.

༤ ང་ཆོས་ as me/ as him / as her སྐད་ཀྱི་འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཚུལ་སྟེ།

- She's not as old as him. ཡང་ན་ She's not as old as he is.
- You don't work as hard as me. ཡང་ན་ You don't work as hard as I do.

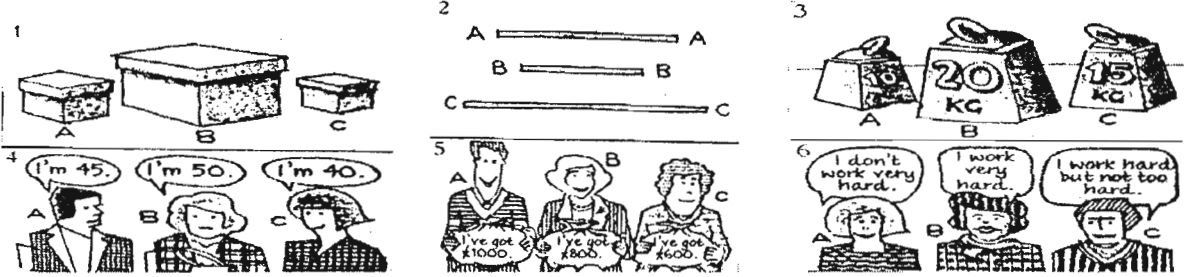
༥ ང་ཆོས་ the same as འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཚུལ་སྟེ།

- The weather today is the same as yesterday.
- My hair is the same color as yours.
- I arrived at the same time as Tim.



## གཞི་རྒྱུ་

88.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཤིང་ A/ B/ C གསུམ་གྱི་སྒོར་ཆེན་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. A is bigger than C but not as big as B.
2. A is .....
3. C is ..... B but not .....
4. A is ..... A but .....
5. B has got ..... but .....
6. C works .....

88.2 as... as... བཞོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་སྒོར་ཆེན་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མཐའ་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

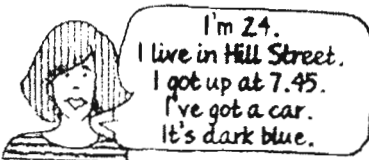
1. Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
2. My room is bigger than yours. Your room is not .....
3. You got up earlier than me. I didn't .....
4. We played better than them. They .....
5. I've been here longer than you. You .....
6. She's more nervous than him. He .....

88.3 as དང་than གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་རེ་བཤད་སྐད་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་སྒོར་ཆེན་གྲུབ་ཆུང་མཐའ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

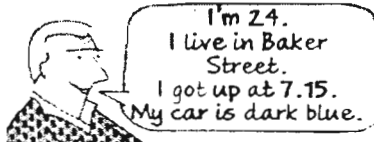
1. Athens is older than Rome.
2. I don't watch TV as much ..... you.
3. You eat more ..... me.
4. I feel better ..... I felt yesterday.
5. Jim isn't as clever ..... he thinks.
6. Belgium is smaller ..... Switzerland.
7. Brazil isn't as big ..... Canada.
8. I can't wait longer ..... an hour.

88.4 གསུམ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ the same age/ the same street སྐད་ཀྱི་སྒོར་ཆེན་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

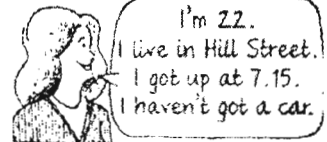
CAROLINE



ANDREW



JULIA



1. (age) Andrew is the same age as Caroline.
2. (street) Julia lives .....
3. (time) Julia got up .....
4. (color) Andrew's .....

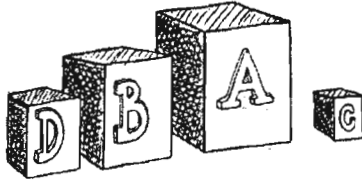


ཕྱི་མཆན་གྱི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་

THE OLDEST

THE MOST EXPENSIVE

༡



| HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON<br>(per person . per night) |        |           |     |
|--|--------|-----------|-----|
| Europa Hotel                                       | £95    | Grosvenor | £60 |
| Grand Hotel  | £85.50 | Bennetts  | £58 |
| Royal  | £85    | Carlton   | £55 |
| Astoria  | £70    | Star      | £50 |
| Palace   | £65    | Station   | £45 |

Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than all the other hotels in the town.

The Europa hotel is the most expensive hotel in the town.

Bigger / older / more expensive སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱི་མཆན་ལྟར་པའི་ཆེན་གྱི་བསྐྱར་ཆེན་ཡིན།

Biggest / oldest / most expensive སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱི་མཆན་ལྟར་པའི་ཆེན་གྱི་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆེན་ཡིན།

ཁ ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆེན་གྱི་ཕྱི་མཆན་ལྟར་པའི་ཆེན་གྱི་སྔ་ན་ཏུ་ most དང་ཡང་ན་ཇེས་སུ་ est སྐྱར་བ་ལས་སྐྱབ་བ་ཞིག་ཡིན།

ཆེན་གྱི་ཐུང་ངམ་སྐྱ་ཆེན་གས་གཅིག་གིས་འདོན་སྐྱབ་པའི་ཆེན་གྱི་ཇེས་སུ་ + est སྐྱར་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Old - oldest cheap - cheapest nice - nicest

ཡིན་ནའང་། good - best bad - worst

སྐྱབ་ཆུ་ལ་ཞིབ་ཐོར་ཐུར་བཞོད་ 5 ལ་སྟེ། big - biggest hot - hottest

ཆེན་མཐའ་ནི་ y ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་སྔ་ན་གྱི་ཆེན་ཏེ་གསལ་བཤད་ཡིན་ཆོང་ཆོས་y དེ་ i ཏུ་བསྐྱར་ཇེས་སུ་+est སྐྱར་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Easy - easiest heavy -heaviest pretty - prettiest

ཆེན་རིང་ངམ་སྐྱ་ཆེན་གས་གཅིག་གིས་འདོན་མི་སྐྱབ་པའི་ཕྱི་མཆན་ལྟར་པའི་ཆེན་གྱི་སྔ་ན་ཏུ་ most ཞེས་སྐྱར་དགོས།

Careful -most careful interesting - most interesting

ག ང་ཆོས་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆེན་གྱི་སྔ་ན་ཏུ་ངས་པར་ཏུ་theབཞོལ་སྦྱང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- > The church is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.(=it is older than all the other buildings)
- > What is the longest river in the world?
- > Money is important but it isn't the most important thing in life.
- > Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

ད the oldest / the best / the most expensive སྐད་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་མིང་ཆེན་མ་སྐྱར་བར་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > Ken is a good player but he isn't the best in the team.(the best = the best player)

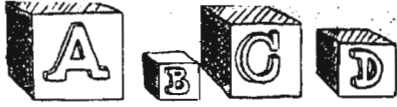
ཅ ཕྱི་མཆན་ལྟར་པའི་ཆེན་གྱི་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆེན་གྱི་ཇེས་སུ་I've ever/ you've ever སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > The film was very bad. I think it's the worst film I've ever seen.
- > What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?



## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

89.1 བསྟར་ཆོག་གམ་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



RESTAURANT A excellent  
RESTAURANT B not bad  
RESTAURANT C good but not wonderful  
RESTAURANT D awful

(big / small)

(A / D) A is bigger than D.

(A) A is the biggest.

(B) B is the smallest.

(long / short)

(C / A) C is ..... A

(D) D is .....

(B) B .....

(young / old)

(D / C) D .....

(B) .....

(C) .....

(expensive / cheap)

(D / A) .....

(C) .....

(A) .....

(good / bad)

(A / C) .....

(A) .....

(D) .....

89.2 ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. This building is very old. It's the **oldest building** in the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was ..... of my life.
3. It's a very good film. It's ..... I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's ..... in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was ..... I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty village. It's ..... I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was ..... of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's ..... I've ever met.

89.3 ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་རེ་ལྷ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་གི་གོ་རིམ་ཡང་དག་པར་སྒྲིག་དགོས།

|                 |       |         |          |           |                  |
|-----------------|-------|---------|----------|-----------|------------------|
| Sydney Brazil   | Large | Country | planet   | The USA   | the solar system |
| Everest Jupiter | long  | city    | state    | Africa    | South America    |
| Alaska the Nile | high  | river   | mountain | the world | Australia        |

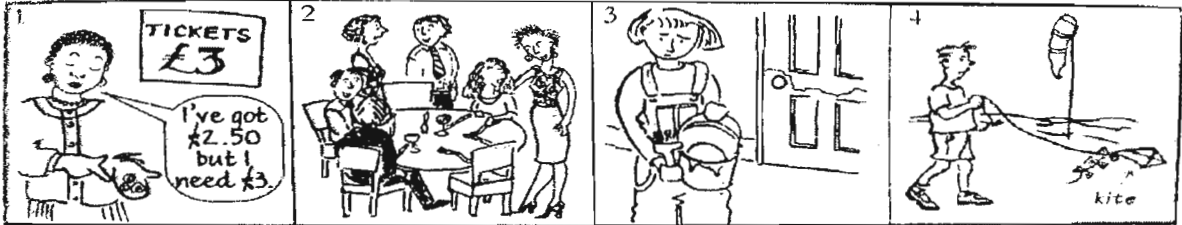
1. **Sydney is the largest city in Australia.**
2. Everest .....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....





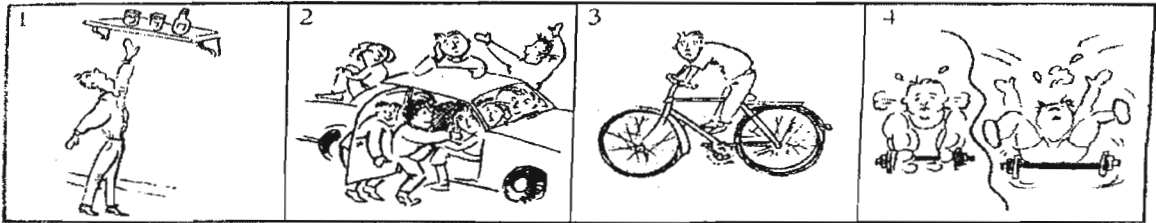
## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

90.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་enough ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་Chairs/money/paint/wind སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་  
ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. She hasn't got **enough money**.
2. There aren't .....
3. She hasn't got .....
4. There isn't .....

90.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་Big/long/strong/tall སྟགས་གྱི་རྗེས་སུ་enough བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་  
པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. He **isn't tall enough**.
2. The car .....
3. His legs aren't .....
4. He .....

90.3 enough དང་མཉམ་དུ་Big/eat/fruit/loud/old/practice/sugar/time/tired སྟགས་ལས་གང་རུང་འེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་

ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. 'Is there **enough sugar** in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants – he's .....
4. Did you have ..... to answer all the questions in the exam?
5. This house isn't ..... for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn't .....
7. You don't eat ..... You should eat more – it's good for you.
8. It's late but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not .....
9. Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't .....

90.4 enough དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྒྲོར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

དགོས།

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| 1. We haven't got <b>enough money to buy</b> a car. | (money/ buy)  |
| 2. This knife isn't ..... tomatoes.                 | (sharp/ cut)  |
| 3. The water wasn't ..... a bath.                   | (warm/ have)  |
| 4. Have we got ..... sandwiches?                    | (bread/ make) |
| 5. We played well but not ..... the game.           | (well/ win)   |
| 6. I don't have ..... newspapers.                   | (time/ read)  |



## ཕྱི་ཚུན་གོ་གཅིག་ལ། TOO

ག



His shoes are too big for him.



There is too much sugar in it.

## ཁ too + བྱད་ཚོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གམ་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་སྦྱར་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Can you turn the radio down? It's too loud. (སྒྱ་དེ་ངའི་འདྲིང་པ་ལས་ཆེ་བའི་དོན།)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.



## ག too much / too many གཉིས་ནི་ང་ཚོས་བྱ་དངོས་ཞིག་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་འདྲིང་པའི་

## ཚད་ལས་བཟུལ་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (ཆར་བ་དེ་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་འདྲིང་པ་ལས་མང་བ།)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

## ང too དང་ not enough གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- The hat is too big for him.
- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's too much sugar in my coffee. (རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་འདྲིང་པ་ལས་མང་བ།)
- I don't feel very well. I ate too much.



- The hat isn't big enough for him. (དེ་ཉེ་ཅང་ཆུང་བྲགས་པའི་དོན།)
- The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (ང་མང་ཚམ་དགོས་པའི་དོན།)
- You're very thin. You don't eat enough.



## ཅ ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚིག་སྟེ།

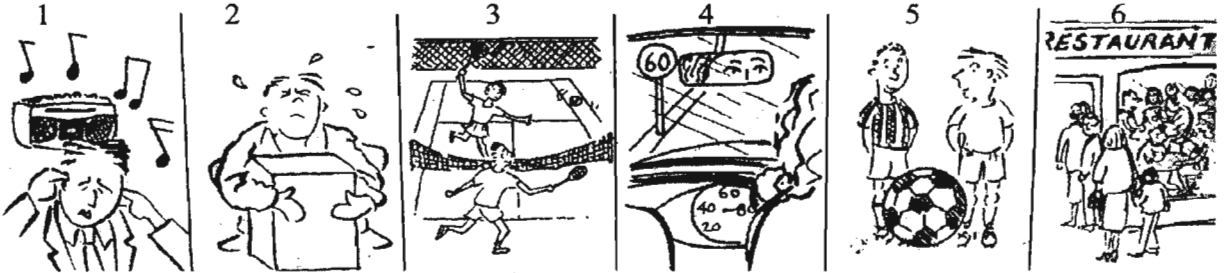
|  |  |
|--|--|
| Too ... for (མི་འཇམ་བྱ་དངོས་ )                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ These shoes are too big for me.</li> <li>➤ It's small house – too small for a large family.</li> </ul>          |
| Too ... to (ལས་ཚིག་ཅིག་ )                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I'm too tired to go out. ( ' for go out' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་ )</li> <li>➤ It's too cold to sit outside.</li> </ul> |
| Too ... for (མི་འཇམ་བྱ་དངོས་ ) to (ལས་ཚིག་ཅིག་ ) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ She speaks too fast for me to understand</li> </ul>   |





## གསལ་བཤད་

91.1 རི་མོར་བཞུགས་མཆིས་ too ཡི་མཆིས་སུ་ Big/crowded/fast/heavy/loud/low སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. The radio is <u>too loud</u> . | 4. She's driving .....     |
| 2. The box is .....               | 5. The ball is .....       |
| 3. The net is .....               | 6. The restaurant is ..... |

91.2 too/too much/too many/enough སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- You're always at home. You don't go out enough.
- I don't like the weather here. There's too much rain.
- I can't wait for them. I haven't got .....time.
- There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were .....people.
- You're always tired. I think you work ..... hard.
- 'Did you have.....to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- You drink .....coffee. It's not good for you.
- You don't eat .....vegetables. You should eat more.
- I don't like the weather here. It's ..... Clod.
- Our team didn't play well. We made .....mistakes.
- 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not .....

91.3 too འཕ་ཡང་ན་ enough དང་མཉམ་ཅུ་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་

དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. I couldn't work. I <u>was too tired</u> .                        | (tired)     |
| 2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It <u>isn't loud enough</u> . | (loud)      |
| 3. I don't want to walk home. It's .....                            | (far)       |
| 4. Don't buy anything in that shop. It .....                        | (expensive) |
| 5. You can't put all your things in this bag. It .....              | (big)       |
| 6. I couldn't do the exercise. It .....                             | (difficult) |
| 7. Your work needs to be better. It .....                           | (good)      |
| 8. I can't talk to you now. I .....                                 | (busy)      |
| 9. I thought the film was boring. It .....                          | (long)      |

91.4 too ལྷང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་ + to (do ལས་ཆོག་) ཡི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. (I'm not going out / cold)            | <u>it's too cold to go out</u> . |
| 2. (I'm not going to bed/ early)         | it's .....                       |
| 3. (They're not getting married / young) | they're .....                    |
| 4. (Nobody goes out at night/ dangerous) | it's .....                       |
| 5. (Don't phone Ann now/ late)           | it's .....                       |
| 6. (I didn't say anything / surprised)   | I was .....                      |



ཆེ་ཆེན་གྱི་གཞིས་པ། HE SPEAKS ENGLISH VERY WELL. ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ། ༡

༡ བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

བྱེད་པ་པོ། ལས་ཆོག་ བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

སྤྱིར་བཏང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁྲོད་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་དང་བྱ་

བའི་ཡུལ་གཞིས་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད། དཔེར་ན།



➤ Sue reads a newspaper every day. ('Sue reads every day a newspaper.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ལས་ཆོག་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

He speaks English very well. ('he speaks very well English' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

I like Italian food very much. ('I like very much ....' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Did you watch television all evening? ('Did you watch all evening ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

We invited a lot of people to the party. ('We invited to the party... ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Paul often wears a black hat. ('Paul wears often... ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

I opened the door quietly.

Why do you always make the same mistake?

I'm going to borrow some money from the bank.

ཁ རུས་ཆོད་དང་ས་ཆའི་གོ་རིམ།

We went to a party last night.

ནམ་རྒྱུན་དང་ཆོས་ས་ཆའི་རུས་ཆོད་ཀྱི་སྔོན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

➤ We went to a party last night. ('We went last night to a party.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ས་ཆའི་མིང་།

(གནས་གང་ཞིག་དུ་)

Liz walks **to work**

Will you be **at home**

I usually go **to bed**

We arrived **at the airport**

They've lived **in the same house**

Jim's father has been **in hospital**

རུས་ཆོད།

(རུས་ནམ་ཞིག་གམ་རུས་ཡུན་གཞིད་ཀྱི་རིང་)

**every day.** ('...every day to work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

**this evening?** (not '... this evening at home? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

**early.** (not '...early to bed' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

**at 7 o'clock.**

**for 20 years.**

**since June.**



## གསལ་སྤྱད་

### 92.1 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་སྤྱད་ནུབ་ནུབ་འགྲིག་མིན་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་ནུབ་ནུབ་ནོར་བཙོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Did you watch all evening television?    | <u>Did you watch television all evening?</u> |
| 2. Sue reads a newspaper every day.         | <u>Ok</u>                                    |
| 3. I like very much this picture.           | .....  |
| 4. Tom started last week his new job.       | .....  |
| 5. I want to speak English fluently.        | .....  |
| 6. Jane bought for her friend a present.    | .....  |
| 7. I drink every day three cups of coffee.  | .....  |
| 8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly!       | .....  |
| 9. I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds. | .....  |

### 92.2 གསལ་གྱི་སྒྲོར་བྱིས་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ནུབ་སོ་རིམ་ལྟར་སྒྲིག་དགོས།

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (the door/ opened/ I / quietly)            | <u>I opened the door quietly.</u> |
| 2. (two letters/ I / this morning/ wrote)     | I .....                           |
| 3. (Passed / Paul/ easily/ the exam)          | .....                             |
| 4. (Ann / very well / French / doesn't speak) | .....                             |
| 5. (A lot of work/ did/ I / yesterday)        | .....                             |
| 6. (London/ do you know / well?)              | .....                             |
| 7. (We/ enjoyed/ very much/ the party)        | .....                             |
| 8. (The problem/ carefully/ I / explained)    | .....                             |
| 9. (We / at the airport/ some friends / met)  | .....                             |
| 10. (Did you buy / in England/ that jacket?)  | .....                             |
| 11. (Every day/ do / the same thing/ we)      | .....                             |
| 12. (Football/ don't like/ very much / I)     | .....                             |

### 92.3 གསལ་གྱི་སྒྲོར་བྱིས་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ནུབ་སོ་རིམ་ལྟར་སྒྲིག་དགོས།

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (to work/ every day/ walks / Liz)                          | <u>Liz walks to work every day.</u> |
| 2. (at the hotel/ I / early/ arrived)                         | I .....                             |
| 3. (goes/ every year/ to Italy/ Julia)                        | Julia .....                         |
| 4. (We/ since 1988/ here/ have lived)                         | We .....                            |
| 5. (in London/ Sue/ in 1960 / was born)                       | Sue .....                           |
| 6. (didn't go/ yesterday/ Paul/ to work)                      | Paul .....                          |
| 7. (to the bank/ yesterday afternoon/ went/ Ann)              | Ann .....                           |
| 8. (I / in bed/ this morning/ my breakfast/ had)              | I .....                             |
| 9. (In October/ Barbara/ to university/ is going)             | .....                               |
| 10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning/ in the garden/ saw) | I .....                             |
| 11. (many times/ have been/ my parents/ in the garden/ saw)   | I .....                             |
| 12. (my umbrella/ I / last night/ left/ in the restaurant)    | I .....                             |
| 13. (To the cinema/ tomorrow evening/ are you going?)         | Are .....                           |
| 14. (the children/ I / took/ this morning/ to school)         | I .....                             |



## ཐེ་ཚན་གྱི་གསུམ་པ། ALWAYS / USUALLY / OFTEN ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ། ༡

༡༡

|         |           |       |        |      |         |      |
|---------|-----------|-------|--------|------|---------|------|
| Always  | often     | ever  | rarely | also | already | all  |
| Usually | sometimes | never | seldom | just | still   | both |

གོང་གི་ཚིག་འདི་དག་ནི་ང་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ཀྱི་དཔེ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན།

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She's always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (ཡང་ན་ Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the cinema. I've already seen the film.
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.

ཁ འways/often / never སྐད་སྐད་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| always  | go     |
| often   | play   |
| never   | feel   |
| usually | get up |

- I always go to work by car. ( 'I go always' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Ann often plays tennis. ( 'Ann plays often tennis' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We rarely (ཡང་ན་ seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (He plays also tennis ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I've got three sisters. They all live in London.

ཡིན་ནམ་ང་ always / often/ never སྐད་སྐད་ནི་ངེས་པར་དུ་ཕྱད་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

|      |         |
|------|---------|
| am   | already |
| is   | always  |
| are  | often   |
| was  | never   |
| were | usually |

- I am never ill. (not 'I never am ill' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- They are usually at home in the evenings.
- It is often very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I was always late for school.
- 'Where's Linda?' 'She's still in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.

ག འways/often / never སྐད་སྐད་ནི་ཕྱད་དང་ལས་ཚིག་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བར་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

|               |        |                |
|---------------|--------|----------------|
| ལས་ཚིག་དང་པོ། |        | ལས་ཚིག་གཉིས་པ། |
| will          | always | go             |
| can           | often  | find           |
| do            | never  | remember       |
| have          |        | gone           |
| has           |        | been           |

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Rome?
- A: Where's Linda?  
B: She's just gone out. (she's གི་ she has ཡི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་ཡིན།)
- Where are your friends?  
B: They've all gone to the cinema.



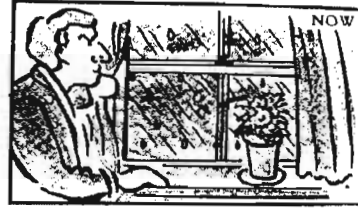


## ཐེ་ཚན་གོ་བཞི་བ། STILL YET ALREADY སྐག་ས།

༡ still



An hour ago it was raining.



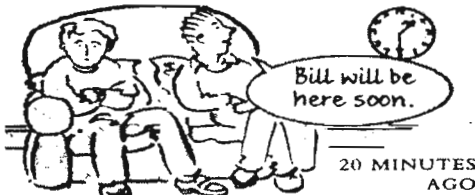
It is still raining now.

Still བོ་དོན་དེ་སྤར་བཞིན་འགྱུར་བ་མ་བྱུང་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry. (ངས་ཟ་མ་ཐོས་ཀྱང་ད་ལྟོ་ད་དུང་སྤར་བཞིན་ཤོགས་པའི་དོན)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

ཁ yet

Yet བོ་དོན་དེ་སྤར་བཞིན་འགྱུར་བ་མ་བྱུང་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།



ནམ་རྒྱུང་ང་ཚོས་Yet བོ་དགག་ལུན་དང་འབྲི་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- A: Where's Diane?  
B: She isn't here yet. (ད་དུང་མ་སྐྱབས་པའི་དོན)
- A: What are you doing this evening?  
B: I don't know yet. (ད་དུང་ཤེས་མེད་པའི་དོན)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?  
B: Not yet. Wait a moment. (ད་ལྟོ་ད་དུང་ག་སྐྱིག་བྱས་མེད་པའི་དོན)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?  
B: NO, I'm still reading it.

yet དང་still གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- She hasn't gone yet. = she's still here. མོ་ད་དུང་སྤར་བའི་དོན། ('she is yet here' ཞེས་འཕྲི་མེ་རུང)
- I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating. ངས་ད་དུང་ཟ་བཞིན་བའི་དོན།

ག already བོ་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་རེ་བའི་སྟོན་དུ་འགྲུབ་ཟིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

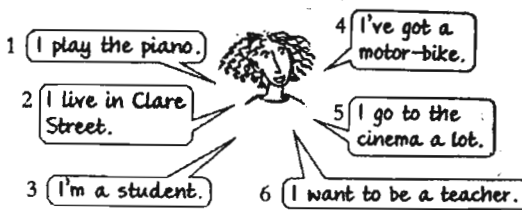
- 'What time is John arriving?' 'He's already here.'
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I already know.'
- Ann doesn't want to go to the cinema. She has already seen the film.



གཤམ་ཕྱུང་།

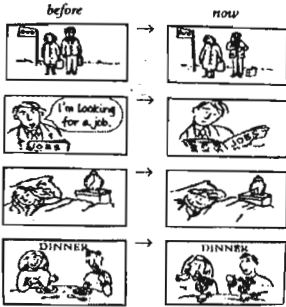
94.1 མ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཡར་སྔན་རྒྱ་མཁའ་བའི་ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་ཤྲགས་མོ་ལེ་ས་ལ་དེ་རིང་ཡང་བསྐྱར་རྒྱ་མཁའ་བས། ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་still

བཀོལ་ནས་མོ་ལ་འདྲི་ཚིག་ཁ་ཤས་འདྲི་དགོས།



1. Do you still play the piano.
2. Do you .....
3. Are .....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

94.2 གཤམ་གྱི་གནས་སྟངས་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་དེ་མོ་དེ་ལ་ཆོག་པུ་བ་གསུམ་དེ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. (before) They were waiting for the bus. (still) They are still waiting.  
(yet) The bus hasn't come yes.
2. (before) He was ..... (still) He .....  
(yet) .....
3. (before) She ..... (still) .....  
(yet) .....
4. (before) They ..... (still) .....  
(yet) .....

94.3 yet བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཐུབ་ནམས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: **Are you ready yet?**
2. You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: .....  
Ann .....
3. Mary did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: .....  
you .....
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him: .....

94.4 already བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་བྱ་བ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་ར་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. What time is John arriving?        | <b>He's already</b> here.           |
| 2. Does Ann want to see the film?     | No, she <b>has already seen</b> it. |
| 3. I must see Julia before she goes.  | It's too late. She .....            |
| 4. Do you need a pen? No, thanks.     | I ..... One.                        |
| 5. Shall I pay the bill? No, it's ok. | I .....                             |
| 6. Shall tell Paul about the meeting? | No, he..... I told him.             |



ཆེ་ཆེན་གྱི་ལུ་བ། GIVE ME THAT BOOK! GIVE IT TO ME! སྐད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཀྱི་

ག གིང་      give      lend      pass      send      show

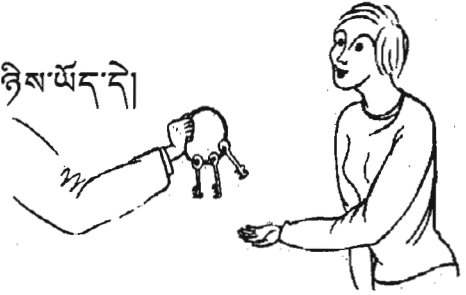
གང་གི་ལས་ཆེན་འདི་དག་ལ་ཆེན་གྱི་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ལ་གཉིས་པོ་དེ།

༡) བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + དངོས་པོ་ + to གང་ཟག

➤ I gave the keys to Liz

༢) བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + གང་ཟག + དངོས་པོ།

➤ I gave Liz the keys.



ཁ བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + བྱ་དངོས་ + to + གང་ཟག་ཉེ་ཆེན་གྱི་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ལ་དང་པོ་དེ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི།

|                                     | བྱ་དངོས་      | to + མི              |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| That's my book. Give                | it            | to me.               |
| These are Sue's keys, can you give  | them          | to her?              |
| Can you give                        | these flowers | to your mother?      |
| I lent                              | my car        | to a friend of mine. |
| Did you send                        | a postcard    | to Kate?             |
| We've seen these photos. You showed | them          | to us                |

ག བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + མིའམ་གང་ཟག + བྱ་དངོས་ཉེ་ཆེན་གྱི་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ལ་གཉིས་པོ་དེ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི།

|                           | མིའམ་གང་ཟག | བྱ་དངོས་                        |
|---------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Give                      | me         | that book. It's mine.           |
| Tom gave                  | his mother | some flowers.                   |
| I lent                    | John       | some money.                     |
| How much money did I lend | him?       |                                 |
| I sent                    | you        | a postcard. Did you receive it? |
| Linda showed              | us         | her holiday photos.             |
| Can you pass              | me         | the salt, please?               |

གཞན་དང་ཆོས་ buy / get གཉིས་ཀྱང་ཆེན་གྱི་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ལ་གཉིས་པོ་དེ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི།

➤ I bought my mother some flowers.

➤ Can you get me a newspaper when you go out?

ང ཆེན་གྱི་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ལ་གཉིས་པོ་དེ།

➤ I gave the keys to Liz.

I gave Liz the keys. ('I gave to Liz the keys.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

➤ That's my book. Can you give it to me?

Can you give me that book? ('give to me that book' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

གལ་ཉེ་ཆེན་གྱི་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི་དང་པོ་དེ་ it དང་ them གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཆབ་མཆོན་བྱེད་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི་དང་པོ་དེ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི།

བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི་དང་པོ་དེ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི།

➤ I gave it to her. ('I gave her it' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

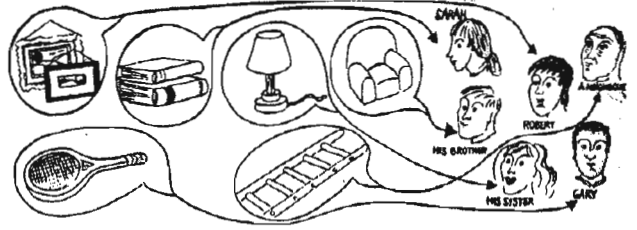
➤ Here are the keys. Give them to your father. ('Give your father them' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)





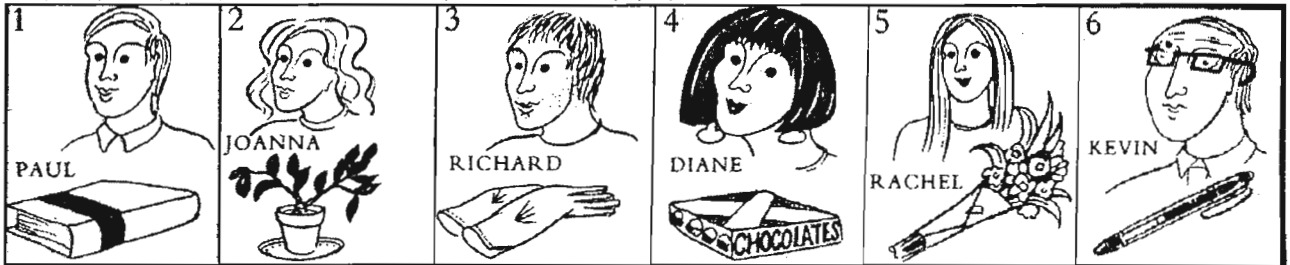
## གསལ་བྱུང་།

95.1 རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་དངོས་པོ་དག་ནི་ལྷན་ཁུ་ལགས་  
ལ་མ་དགོས་པས། ཁོས་དེ་ནམས་རང་གི་སྒྲིགས་པོ་ཆོར་  
སྤང་བྱེད། རྒྱུ་ཁྱིམ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་he gave...ཟིན་  
ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆོར་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. What did Mark do with the armchair? **He gave it to his brother.**
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He have .....
3. What happened to the books? He .....
4. What about the lamp? .....
5. What did he do with the pictures? .....
6. And the ladder? .....

95.2 གསལ་བྱེད་རིམ་འོ་ནང་གི་དངོས་པོ་དག་རྒྱུ་ཁྱིམ་རང་གི་སྒྲིགས་པོ་ཆོར་ལེགས་སྐྱེས་སུ་འབུལ་བྱུང་ཁེམས་ཐག་  
བཅད་བྱེད་པས། རྒྱུ་ཁྱིམ་རིམ་འོ་ལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རེ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. I gave **Paul a book.**
2. I gave .....
3. I .....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

95.3 can you give me..?/can you pass me ...? སྒྲིགས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (you want the salt) (pass) **Can you pass me the salt.**
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you .....
3. (you want my address) (give) Can ..... you .....
4. (you need ten pounds) (lend) .....
5. (you want some information) (send) .....
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) .....
7. (you want some stamps) (get) .....

95.4 བརྒྱུ་ཤ་གཙོད་པ།

1. I gave to Liz the keys. / I gave Liz the keys. **I gave Liz the keys** is right.
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / did you send the letter to me ?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Ann's bag. Can you give it go her? / can you give her it?
7. I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.



མེ་ཆུ་མོ་བྱུག་པ། 6 AT 8 O' CLOCK ON MONDAY IN APRIL སྐག་ས།

༡ at བོ་རུས་ཆོད་ལ་བེད་སྤྱོད། དཔེར་ན།

- I start work at 8 o'clock.
- The shops close at 5.30.

|    |           |
|----|-----------|
| at | 8 o'clock |
|    | 10.30     |
|    | midnight  |

at



on



On བོ་གཟའ་འཁོར་དང་ཉིན་མར་བཀོལ། (ཆོས་གྲངས་སམ་རུས་ཆོད་སྐག་ས)

- Goodbye! See you on Friday.
- I don't work on Sundays.
- The concert is on 22 November.

|    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|
| on | Sunday/Monday            |
|    | 25 April/ 6 June 7, 2006 |
|    | New Year's Day           |

In བོ་ལ་དང་ཟླ་བ། རུས་ཆོག་ས་བཅས་ལ་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm going on holiday in October.
- Emma left school in 1993.
- The garden is lovely in spring.

|    |                |
|----|----------------|
| in | April / June   |
|    | 1985/ 1750     |
|    | Summer /spring |

in



ཁ ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

at the weekend  
at night  
at Christmas / at Easter  
at the end of  
at the moment

- Are you going away at the weekend?
- I can't sleep at night.
- Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
- I'm going on holiday at the end of October.
- Are you busy at the moment?

༢ In the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening སྐག་ས།

Morning/ afternoon/ evening སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་སྤྱོད་རུས་ཆོད་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆོག་གཞན་མེད་སྐབས། ང་ཆོས་དེ་དག་གི་སྤྱོད་རུས་ཀྱི་ཕེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I always feel good in the morning.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

ཡིན་ནའང་། ང་ཆོས་གོང་གི་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྤྱོད་རུས་ཆོད་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆོག་ཡོད་སྐབས་དེ་དག་གི་སྤྱོད་རུས་ཀྱི་ཕེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། མི་བཀོལ་བར་ on བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night སྐག་ས་ལྟ་བུའོ།

- I'm meeting Jill on Monday morning.
- Are you doing anything on Saturday evening?

༣ ང་ཆོས་གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལྷ་མེད་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྤྱོད་རུས་ཀྱི་ཕེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།

this...(this morning/ this week)  
last...(last August/ last week)  
next...(next Monday/ next week)  
every....(every day/ every week)

- Are you going out this evening?
- The garden was lovely last summer.
- I'm going on holiday next Monday.  
( ' on next Monday' ལྟར་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

༤ few minutes/ a few days/ six weeks/ two years སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་སྤྱོད་རུས་ཆོད་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆོག་གི་ཕེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes. (ད་ནས་མེ་འཁོར་འགྲོ་བའི་བར་སྐར་མ་བྱུག་ཡོད་པའི་དོན་ཅི།)
- Goodbye! I'll see you in a few days. (ཉིན་ལ་སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སུ།)









## གསལ་སྒྲུབ།

97.1 གསལ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་དག་བསྒྲགས་རྗེས་ from... to / until/ since སྤྱི་ལོ་བཞུགས་ཆེག་གྱུ་བ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།



|   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
| Alex<br>I live in England now. I lived in Canada before. I came to England in 1990. | Alice<br>I live in Switzerland now. I lived in France before. I came to Switzerland in 1991. | Carol<br>I work in a restaurant now. I worked in a hotel before. I started work in the restaurant in 1993. | Gerry<br>I'm a salesman now. I was a teacher before. I started work as a salesman in 1989 |
|---|--|--|---|

- (Alex/ Canada/ 1982-1990) Alex lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- (Alex / Canada/ -1990) Alex lived in Canada ..... 1990.
- (Alex/ England/ 1990-) Alex has lived in England .....
- (Alice/ France/ -1991) Alice lived in .....
- (Alice /Switzerland/ 1991-) Alice has lived in .....
- (Carol/ a hotel/ 1990-1993) Carol worked ..... 1990.....
- (Carol / a restaurant/ 1993-) Carol has worked .....
- (Gerry/ a teacher/ 1983-1989) Gerry was a .....
- (Gerry/ a salesman/ 1989- ) Gerry has been .....

for བཞུགས་ཆེག་གྱུ་བ་བཅོ་དགོས།

- (Alex/ Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
- (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England .....
- (Alice/ Switzerland) Alice has.....
- (Carol/ a hotel) Carol worded .....
- (Carol/ restaurant) Carol .....
- (Cerry/ a teacher) Gerry .....
- (Gerry/ a salesman) Gerry .....

97.2 until/ since/ for སྤྱི་ལོ་བཞུགས་ཆེག་གྱུ་བ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ཆ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ཆེད་དུ་བཅོ་དགོས།


- Mr. and Mrs. Kelly have been married since 1968.
- I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed ..... 10 o'clock.
- We waited for Sue ..... half an hour but she didn't come.
- 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here ..... half past seven.'
- 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '..... midnight.'
- David and I are good friends. We have known each other ..... ten years.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie down ..... a few minutes.
- Don't open the door of the train ..... the train stops.
- This is my house. I've lived here ..... I was seven years old.
- Jack has gone away. He'll be away ..... Wednesday.
- Next week I'm going to Paris..... three days.
- I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work .....six.
- 'How long have you known Ann?' '..... we were at school together.
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you ..... twenty minutes.



## ཕྱི་ཆེན་གྱི་བརྒྱུད་པ། BEFORE AFTER DURING WHILE སྐག་སྤ།


༡

before




before the film

during



during the film

after

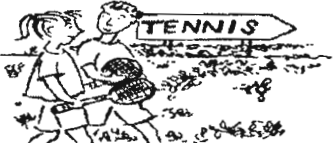


after the film

- Everybody is nervous before exams.
- I went to sleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.


༢

before




before we played

while



while we were playing

after



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often go to sleep while I'm watching television.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

## ༣ during, while དང་ for སྐག་སྤ།

ང་ཚོས་ during + མིང་ཆོག་བཤེད་སྤྱད་ཁྱེད་ལ། while + ཁྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་བསྐོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- We didn't speak during the meal.
- We didn't speak while we were eating. ('during we were eating' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

For + དུས་ཆེད་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བཤེད་སྤྱད་ཁྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- We played tennis for two hours. ('during two hours' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I lived in London for a year. ('during a year' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

༤ ང་ཚོས་ before/after + རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་ལས་མ་མིང་བསྐོལ་བ། (ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་+ ing སྟེན་པའི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་ང་ཚོས་ལས་མ་མིང་བྱེད་) དཔེར་ན།

- I always have breakfast before going to work. (before I go to work དང་འདྲའོ)
- After doing the shopping, they went home. (after they did དང་འདྲའོ)

ང་ཚོས་ before to go/ after to do སྐག་སྤྱོད་སྤྱོད་ཁྱེད་མི་རུང་སྟེ། དཔེར་ན།

- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. ('before to eat' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I started work after reading the newspaper. ('after to read' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



## གསལ་སྤྱད་

98.1 Before/during/after/while སྐད་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་ the concert/the exam/they went to Australia/the course/lunch/you are waiting/the end/ the night སྐད་ཀྱི་ལས་གང་རུང་འདྲེ་བདམས་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Everybody was nervous before the exam.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another two hours .....
3. The film was very boring. We left .....
4. Ann went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot.....
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London .....
6. A: Somebody broke a window ..... did you hear anything? B: No. I was asleep all the time.
7. Would you like to sit down .....
8. 'Are you going home ..... ?' 'No, we're going to a restaurant.'

98.2 during/ while / for སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We didn't speak while we were eating.
2. We didn't speak during the meal.
3. George phoned ..... you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome ..... five days.
5. Sally wrote a lot of letters..... she was on holiday.
6. The students looked very bored ..... the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed ..... I was asleep.
8. Yesterday evening I watched TV ..... three hours.
9. I don't usually watch TV ..... the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV ..... you are having dinner?

98.3 ལས་མ་མེད་ (doing) བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. After doing the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after..... too much chocolate.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before .....it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I left better after..... a shower.
5. After ..... my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before ..... to a foreign country, it's a good idea to learn a few words of the language.

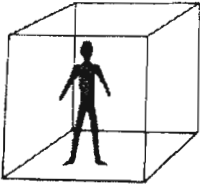
98.4 before དང་ after གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་ལས་མ་མེད་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home. After doing the shopping, they went home.
2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years. John worked .....
3. I read a few pages of my book. Then I went to sleep. Before .....
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired. After .....
5. Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out. Let's .....

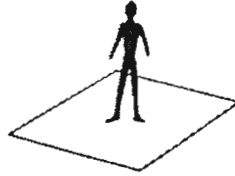


# ཐེ་ཚན་གོ་དབྱེ་བ། IN AT ON ས་ཆ། ཉ

ཀ in



In a room  
In a shop  
In a car  
In the water



in a garden  
in a town  
in the city center  
in France

- 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Angela works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I had a swim in the river / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy.
- I live in a town but I want to live in the country.

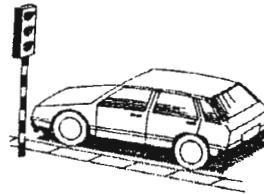
ཁ at



At the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic lights



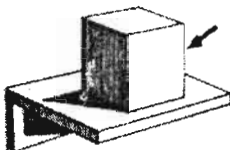
at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Julia is working at her desk.

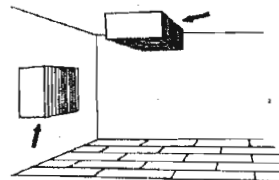
At the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...)

- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the street.

ག on



On a shelf  
On a plate  
On a balcony  
On the floor etc.



on a wall  
on a door  
on the ceiling etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.



གཞན་ཡང་། on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motor - bike:

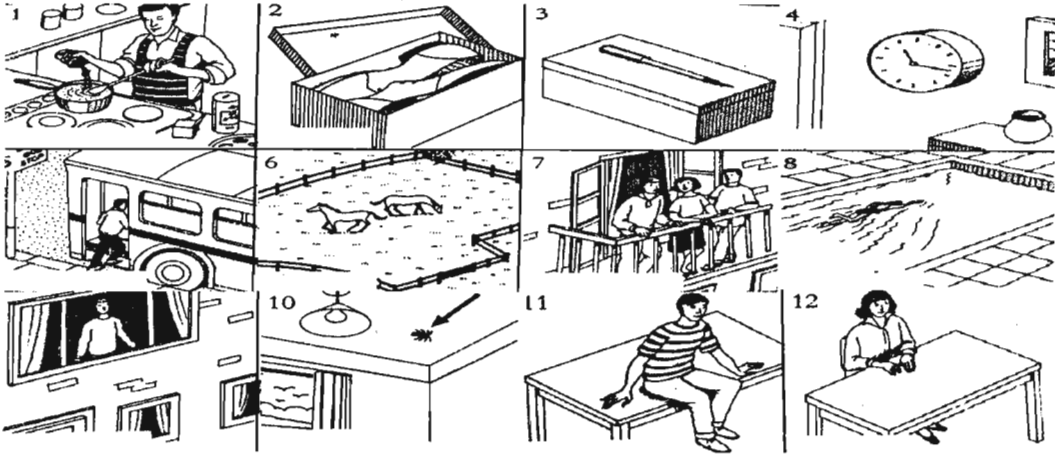
- Who is that man on the motor - bike?





## གཤམ་སྒྲིག་

འཇོག་པའི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ in/ at/ on སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞག་པའི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་



- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Where is he? <b>In the kitchen.</b> | 7. Where are they standing? ..... |
| 2. Where are the shoes? .....          | 8. Where is the swimming? .....   |
| 3. Where is the pen? .....             | 9. Where is he standing? .....    |
| 4. Where is the clock? .....           | 10. Where is the spider? .....    |
| 5. Where is the bus? .....             | 11. Where is he sitting? .....    |
| 6. Where are the horses? .....         | 12. Where is she sitting? .....   |

99.2 in/ at/ on སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞག་པའི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- What have you got ..... your bag?
- Look! There's man..... the roof. What's he doing/
- There are a lot of fish..... this river.
- Our house is number 45- the number is ..... the door.
- 'Is the cinema near here?' 'Yes, turn left ..... the traffic lights.'
- I usually do my shopping..... the city centre.
- My sister lives ..... Brussels.
- There's a small park ..... the top of the hill.
- I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody..... the door.
- Munich is a large city ..... the south of Germany.
- There are a few shops ..... the end of the street.
- It's difficult to carry a lot of things ..... a bicycle.
- I looked at the list of names. My name was ..... the bottom of the list.
- There is a mirror ..... the wall ..... the living room.



## ཕྱི་ཆོན་འགྲུ་ཐམ་པ། IN AT ON ས་ཆ། ༡

### ཀ in

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| In bed                         | 'Where's Kae?' 'She's in bed.'                   |
| In hospital / in prison        | David's father is ill. He's in hospital.         |
| In a street                    | I live in a small street near the station.       |
| In the sky                     | I like to look at the stars in the sky at night. |
| In the world                   | What's the largest city in the world?            |
| In a newspaper / in a book     | I read about the accident in the newspaper.      |
| In a photograph / in a picture | You look sad in this photograph.                 |
| In a car / in a taxi           | Did you come here in your car?                   |
| In the middle (of...)          | There's a big tree in the middle of the garden.  |

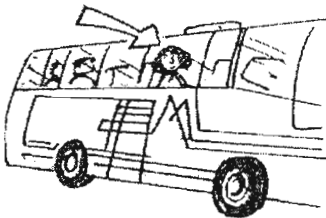
### ཁ at

|  |   |
|--|---|
| At home  | Will you be at home this evening?             |
| At work / at school  | 'Where's Kate?' 'She's at work.'              |
| At university/ at college  | Helen is studying law at university.          |
| At the station / at the airport  | Do you want me to meet you at the station?    |
| At Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc. | 'Where were you yesterday?' 'At my sister's.' |
|  | I saw Tom at the doctor's.                    |
| At a concert / at a party / at a football match  | There weren't many people at the party.       |

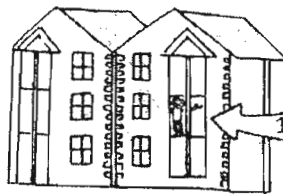
ནང་ཁྱུ་དང་ཆོས་ buildings ,hotel, restaurants སྐག་ས་ལ་ in དང་ཡང་ན་ at བེད་སྡུང་བྱས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

➤ We stayed at a nice hotel. ཡང་ན་ we stayed in a nice hotel.

### ག on



On a bus



on the first floor



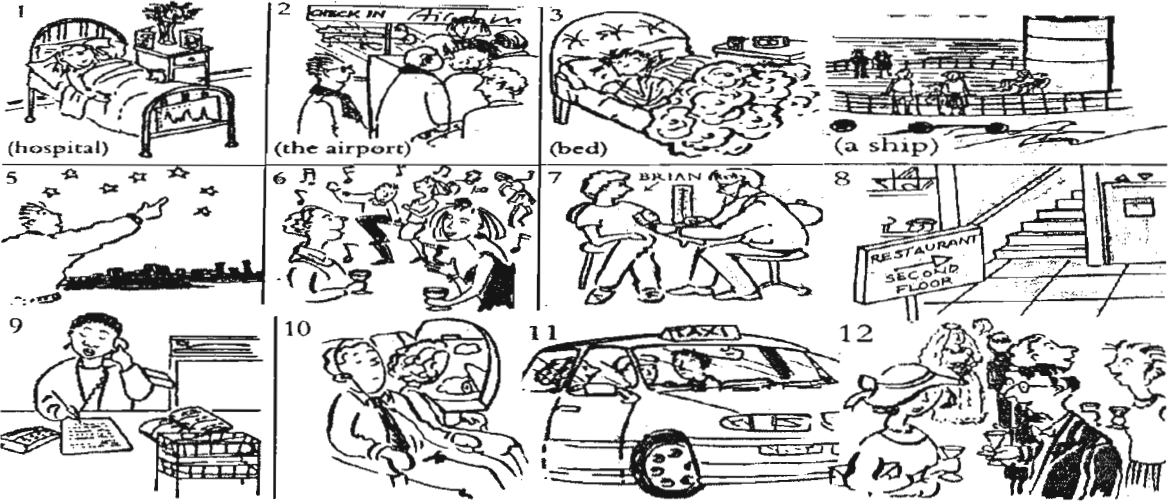
on the way from A to B

|  |  |
|--|--|
| On a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship | ➤ Did you come here on the bus?  |
| On the ground floor / on the first floor etc.  | ➤ The office is on the first floor. ( ' in the first floor' ཞེས་འབྲི་མེད་ཅུང་) |
| On the way (to...) / on the way home           | ➤ I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.                              |



## གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

100.1 རི་མོར་བཞུགས་ཇེས་in/at/on སྐགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་རི་མོའི་འདེབས་ཀྱི་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཚིག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་  
གཤམ་ཀྱི་འདྲི་ཚིག་ནུམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།



- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Where is she? <b>In hospital.</b> | 7. Where is Brian.....            |
| 2. Where are they? .....             | 8. Where is the restaurant? ..... |
| 3. Where is he? .....                | 9. Where is she? .....            |
| 4. Where are they? .....             | 10. Where are they? .....         |
| 5. Where are the stars? .....        | 11. Where are they? .....         |
| 6. Where are they? .....             | 12. Where are they? .....         |


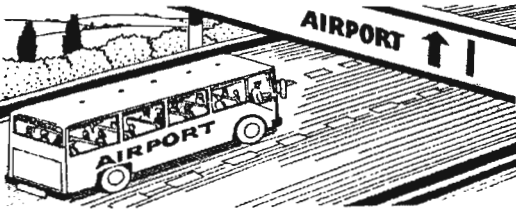

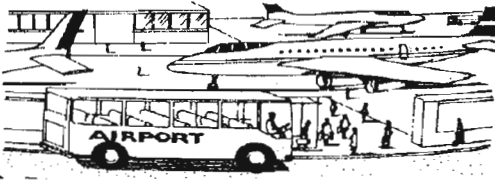
100.2 in/at/on སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་ཀྱི་ཚིག་ཁྱུང་ནུམས་ལང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- Helen is studying law **at** university.
- There was a big table ..... the middle of the room.
- What is the longest river .....the world?
- Were there many people ..... the concert last night?
- Will you be ..... home tomorrow afternoon?
- Who is that man ..... this photograph? Do you know him?
- Where are your children? Are they ..... school?
- George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him ..... the station.
- Charlie is ..... hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
- How many pages are there ..... this book?
- 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had a meal ..... the train.'
- I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down ..... the way here.
- 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's ..... his brother's.
- Don't believe everything you see ..... the newspaper!
- I walked to work but I came home ..... the bus.



## ཕྱི་ཆུང་བཟུང་དང་གཅིག་ TO IN AT ས་ཆ། ༣

༡

| To  | In/ at (ཕྱི་ཆུང་99 དང་100 ལ་སྟེ།)   |
|---|---|
| <p>Go/come/ return/ walk སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ to...</p> <p>———— To London ———→ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ We're going to London next week.</li> <li>➤ I want to go to Italy.</li> <li>➤ We walked from my house to the city center.</li> <li>➤ What time do you go to bed?</li> </ul>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The bus is going to the airport.</li> <li>➤ Sally didn't go to work yesterday.</li> <li>➤ I went to a party last night.</li> <li>➤ You must come to our house.</li> </ul> | <p>Be /stay / do something སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ in...</p> <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Piccadilly Circus is in London.</li> <li>➤ My bother lives in Italy.</li> <li>➤ The main shops are in the city center.</li> <li>➤ I like reading in bed.</li> </ul> <p>Be/stay / do something སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ at...</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The bus is at the airport.</li> <li>➤ Ann wasn't at work yesterday.</li> <li>➤ I met her at a party.</li> <li>➤ Ann stayed at her brother's house.</li> </ul> |

འ home

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Go/ come / walk + home (to མེད་པར་བཞོལ་དགོས་)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</li> <li>➤ Did you walk home?</li> </ul> | <p>be/stay/ do + བྱ་དངོས་ + at home:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I'm staying at home this evening.</li> <li>➤ 'Where's Ann?' 'At home.'</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

ག arrive དང་ get

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Arrive in རྟེན་ལུ་ཁབ་དང་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་ལུ་འབྱོར་བའི་སྐབས་ལུ་བཞོལ། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ They arrived in England last week. ('arrived to England' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</li> </ul> <p>Arrive at གཞན་པའི་ས་ཆ་གང་ཡིན་ལ་བཞོལ་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག་པ། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ What time did you arrive at the hotel? ( 'arrive to the hotel' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</li> </ul> <p>Get to + ས་ཆ་ཞིག་</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ What time did you get to the hotel?</li> <li>➤ What time did you get to Paris?</li> </ul> <p>Get home / arrive home (འབྲི་ཆོག་མེད་པར་བཞོལ་)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I was tired when I got home. ཡང་ན། I was tired when I arrived home.</li> </ul> |  |
|---|--|



## གསལ་བྱུང་།

101.1 to འཕྲིན་ཡང་ན་ in བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I like reading <u>in</u> bed.                | 5 I was tired, so I stayed ..... bed late.      |
| 2. We're going ..... Italy next month.          | 6 What time do you usually go ..... bed?        |
| 3. Sue is on holiday ..... Italy at the moment. | 7 Does this bus go ..... the centre?            |
| 4. I must go ..... the bank today.              | 8 Would you like to live ..... another country? |

101.2 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ཏེ་ to དང་ཡང་ན་ at བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།  
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་ + འདི་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོལ་ཆོག

- Paula didn't go to work yesterday.
- I'm tired. I'm going ...+... home.(no preposition)
- Ann is not very well. She has gone ..... the doctor.
- Would you like to come ..... a party on Saturday?
- 'Is Liz ..... home?' 'No, she's gone ..... work.'
- There were 20,000 people ..... the football match.
- Why did you go ..... home early last night?
- A boy jumped into the river and swam ..... the other side.
- There were a lot of people waiting..... the bus stop.
- We had a good meal ... a restaurant and then we went back ... the hotel.

101.3 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ཏེ་ to/ in/at སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།  
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་ + འདི་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོལ་ཆོག

- I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying at home.
- We're going ..... a concert tomorrow evening.
- I went ..... New York last year.
- How long did you stay ..... New York?
- Next year we hope to go ..... Canada to visit some friends.
- Shall we go ..... the cinema this evening?
- Is there a restaurant ..... the station?
- After the accident three people were taken ..... hospital.
- How often do you go ..... the dentist?
- 'Is Diane here?' 'No, she's ..... Ann's.'
- My house is ..... the end of the street on the left.
- I went ..... Mary's house but she wasn't ..... home.
- There were no taxis, so we had to walk ..... home.
- 'What did you study ..... university?' 'I didn't go ..... university.'

101.4 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ཏེ་ to/ at/ in སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།  
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་ + འདི་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོལ་ཆོག

- What time do you usually get ..... work?
- What time do you usually get ..... home?
- What time did you arrive ..... the party?
- When did you arrive ..... London?
- What time does the train get ..... Paris?
- We arrived ..... home very late.

101.5 to/ in/ at སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་ཁྱོད་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྐོར་གསལ་བྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས།


- At three o'clock this morning I was in bed.
- Yesterday I went .....
- At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was .....
- One day I'd like to go .....
- I don't like going .....
- At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was .....



ཕྱི་ཆེན་བརྒྱ་དང་གཉིས། UNDER BEHIND OPPOSITE འབྲེལ་ཆོག ༡

༡

next to (or beside) / between / in front of / behind སྤྱི་བཞུགས་ཆོག



A is next to B. ཡང་ན་ A is beside B.

B is between A and C.

D is in front of B.

E is behind B.

གཞན་ཡང་།

A is on the left.

C is on the right.

B is in the middle (of the group)

༢

opposite / in front of སྤྱི་བཞུགས་

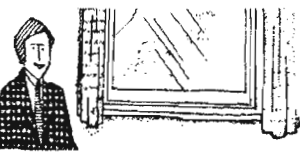


A is sitting in front of B.

A is sitting opposite C.

C is sitting opposite A.

༣ by (འགྲམ་དུ་ཟུར་རྒྱུ་ཡིན་ནེ།) ཡི་བཞུགས་ཆོག




➤ Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)

➤ Who is that man by the window?

➤ 'Is there a public phone here?' 'Yes, by the door.'

By the window

༤ under ཡི་བཞུགས་ཆོག



➤ The cat is under the table.


➤ The girl is standing under a tree.


➤ I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.


Under the table

under a tree

༥ above དང་ below གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་ཆོག

A  A is above the line.  
(ཕྱི་ཆེན་མཐོ་བའི་དོན་ཅི།)

B  B is below the line.  
(ཕྱི་ཆེན་དམར་ཁྱིམ་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན་ཅི།)



The pictures are above the shelves.

The shelves are below the pictures.



## གཤམ་ལྗང་།

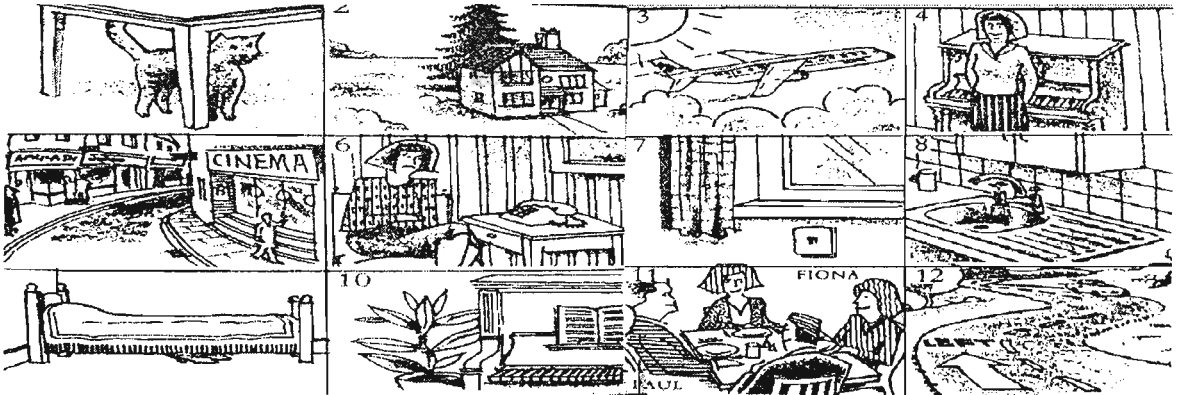
102.1 རི་མོ་འོ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གནས་གང་དུ་ཡོད་པ་སྟོན་དགོས།



1. Colin is standing **behind** Frank.
2. Frank is sitting ..... Emma.
3. Emma is sitting ..... Barbara.
4. Emma is sitting ..... Donna and Frank.
5. Donna is sitting ..... Emma.
6. Frank is sitting ..... Colin.
7. Alan is standing ..... Donna.
8. Alan is standing ..... left.
9. Barbara is standing ..... middle.

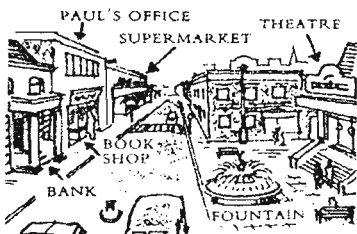
A = Alan B = Barbara C = Colin D = Donna E = Emma F = Frank

102.2 རི་མོ་ར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཁ་སྐོང་བྱེད་དགོས།



1. The cat is **under** the table.
2. There is a big tree ..... the house.
3. The plane is flying ..... the clouds.
4. She is standing ..... the piano.
5. The cinema is ..... the right.
6. She's sitting ..... the phone.
7. The switch is ..... the window.
8. The cupboard is ..... the sink.
9. There are some shoes ..... the bed.
10. The plant is ..... the piano.
11. Paul is sitting ..... Fiona.
12. In Britain we drive ..... the left.

102.3 སྐོར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཞུགས་པའི་མི་འོ་ནང་གི་ས་གནས་དག་སྟོན་དགོས།



1. (next to) The bank is **next to** the bookshop.
2. (in front of) The ..... .
3. (opposite) ..... .
4. (next to) ..... .
5. (above) ..... .
6. (between) ..... .



# ཐོ་ཆེན་བརྒྱ་དང་གསུམ། UP OVER THOUGHT འབྲེལ་ཆོག་ ༢

|                   |   |                                      |
|-------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| <p>to → </p>      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Jane is going to France next week.</li> <li>➤ We walked from the hotel to the station.</li> <li>➤ A lot of English words come from Latin.</li> </ul>   | <p> from</p>                         |
| <p> into (in)</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ We jumped into the water.</li> <li>➤ A man came out of the house and got into a car.</li> <li>➤ Why are you looking out of the window?</li> <li>➤ I took the old batteries out of the radio.</li> </ul> <p>ང་ཆོས་put something in ཞེས་བཞོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་པ་ལས། ལྷན་དུ་put into ལྷན་བཞོལ་སྤྱད་མི་ཅིང་།</p>   | <p> out of</p>                       |
| <p> on</p>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Don't put your feet on the table.</li> <li>➤ Please take your feet off the table.</li> <li>➤ I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall.</li> <li>➤ Be careful! Don't fall off your bicycle.</li> <li>➤ We got on the bus in Princes Street.</li> </ul>   | <p> off</p>                          |
| <p> up</p>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ We walked up the hill to the house.</li> <li>➤ Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs.</li> </ul>  | <p> down</p>                         |
| <p> over</p>      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The plane flew over the mountain.</li> <li>➤ I jumped over the wall into the garden.</li> <li>➤ Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.</li> </ul>   | <p> under</p>                        |
| <p> through</p>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ A bird flew into the room through a window.</li> <li>➤ The old road goes through the village.</li> <li>➤ The new road goes round the village.</li> <li>➤ The bus stop is just round the corner.</li> <li>➤ I walked round the town and took some photographs.</li> <li>➤ You can also use around (= round):</li> <li>➤ We walked around the town.</li> </ul> | <p> round</p> <p> round the town</p> |
| <p> along</p>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I was walking along the road with my dog.</li> <li>➤ Let's go for a walk along the river.</li> <li>➤ The dog swam across the river.</li> </ul>   | <p> across</p>                       |
| <p> past</p>      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ They walked past me without speaking.</li> <li>➤ A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?</li> <li>➤ B: Go along this road. Past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.</li> </ul>   | <p> cinema, bridge, hospital</p>     |

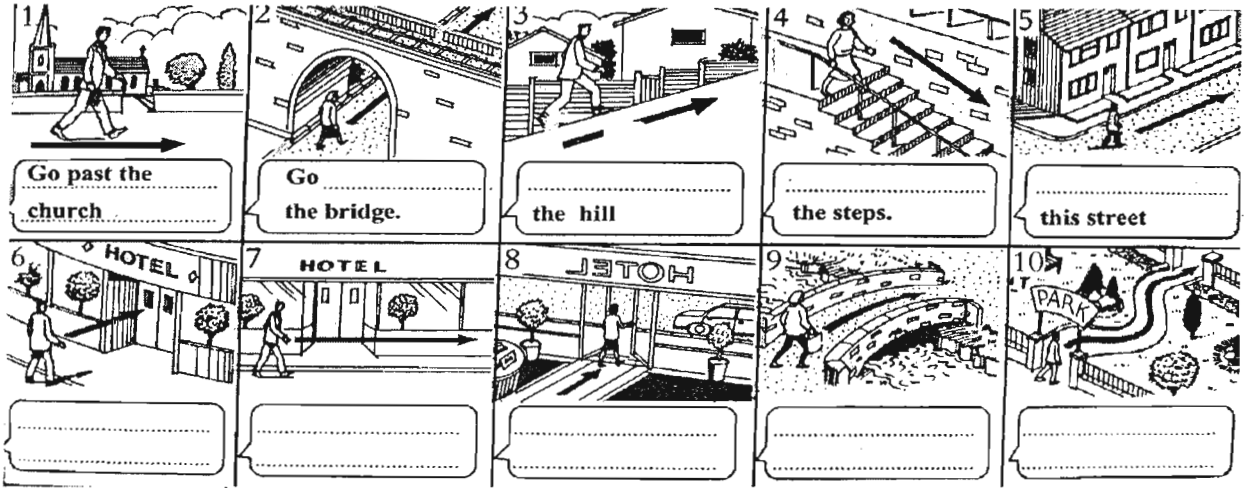




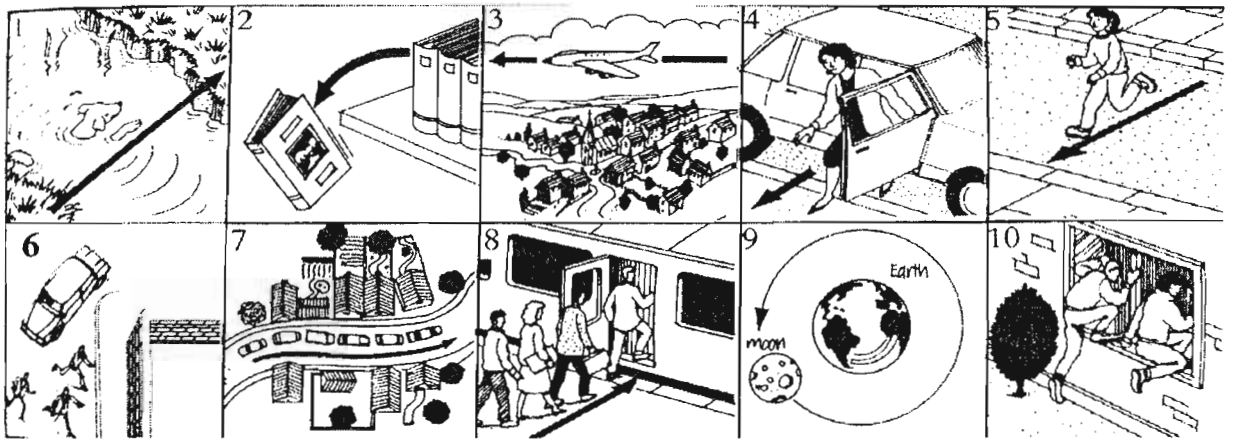
## གཤམ་ཕྱོད་

103.1 གཤམ་གྱི་རིམ་པ་ལྟས་ནས་ཁྱོད་གྱིས་མི་གཞན་ལ་ལམ་སྟོན་བྱེད་པའི་

ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས། ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མགོ་རྒྱུ་ལ་ཐེ་ཏུ་སྟོན་བྱེད་དགོས།



103.2 རིམ་པ་ལྟས་རྗེས་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་རིམ་པ་ལྟས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་དག་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. The dog swam across the river.
2. A book fell ..... the shelf.
3. A plane flew ..... the village.
4. A woman got ..... the car.
5. A girl ran ..... the road.
6. Suddenly a car came ..... the corner.
7. They drove ..... the village.
8. They got ..... the train.
9. The moon travels ..... the earth.
10. They got ..... the house ..... a window.

103.3 འབྲེལ་ཆོག་རིམ་པ་ལྟས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I looked ..... the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is very near here. It's just ..... the corner.
3. Do you know how to put a film ..... this camera?
4. How far is it ..... here ..... the airport.
5. We walked ..... the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat ..... the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball ..... the net.
8. Silvia took a key ..... her bag and opened the door.



# ཐེ་ཚན་བརྒྱ་དང་བཞི། ON AT BY WITH ABOUT འབྲེལ་ཆེག ༩

༡

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| On holiday                           | Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday. |
| On television                        | We watched the news on television.              |
| On the radio                         | We listened to the news on the radio.           |
| On the phone                         | I spoke to Carol on the phone last night.       |
| On fire                              | The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.    |
| On time(ཐེས་སྤྱི་མཁའ་ལོ་འདྲི་ཐོག་ལ།) | 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was on time.'     |

༢

མི་དང་ལེ་དབར། རུས་ཚེད། རྫོང་ཚད་སྟགས་ཀྱི་མིན་ཏུ་འཛིན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Lisa got married at 21 ... (ཡང་ན་... at the age of 21)
- The car was traveling at 50 kilometers and hour when the accident happened.
- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

༣

car / bus / plane / air / bike སྟགས་ཀྱི་མིན་ཏུ་འཛིན་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Do you like traveling by train?
- Jane usually goes to work by bike.

མིན་ནའང་ཀང་བ་ལ། on foot ཞེས་བཀོལ་པ་ལས་by foot ཞེས་བེད་སྤྱོད་མི་བྱེད།

- She goes to work on foot. (ཀང་ཐང་ཏུ་སོང་བའི་དོན་དུ་)

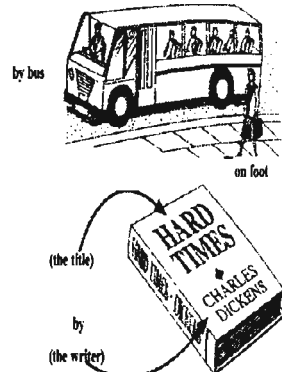
A book by... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... སྟགས་ཀྱི་

མིང་ + by + མིའམ་སྟག་ཆགས་ཀྱི་མིང་། དེ་ནི་མིའམ་སྟག་ཆགས་དེ་ཡིས་ལས་ཀ་དེ་བསྐྱབ་པའི་དོན་དུ་།

- Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
- Who is that painting by? Picasso?

By བྱི་ཆེག་བྱུ་བ་གཞན་དབང་ཅན་གྱི་ཐེས་སྤྱི་མཁའ་ལོ་འདྲི་ཐོག་ལ། དཔེར་ན། (ཐེ་ཚན་ 21 ལ་སྟོས་)

- I was bitten by a dog.



༤

with /without གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

A man with a beard / a woman with glasses སྟགས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- Do you know that man with the beard?
- I'd like to have a house with a big garden.



༥

talk / speak / think / hear / know about སྟགས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ལས་ཆེག་ + about + མིང་ཆེག་གམ་ཚབ་ཆེག་བཀོལ་དུ། དེ་ནི་མིང་ཆེག་གམ་ཚབ་ཆེག་དེའི་སྐོར་ཞིག་བཤད་པའམ་བསམ་པ། ཟླེང་བ། ཡང་ན་ཤེས་པའམ་གོ་བ་ སྟགས་ཀྱི་དོན་དུ་།

- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- I don't know much about cars.

A book / a question / a programme about མིང་ཆེག་+ about + མིང་ཆེག་གམ་ཚབ་ཆེག་བཀོལ་ལ། དེའི་དོན་དུ་གོང་དང་འདྲ།

Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?



གཤམ་ལྷོད་།

104.1 on དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་ Holiday/the phone/the radio/television/time སྐབས་བཞེད་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ལྷན་ལྷན་ཡང་

དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We listened to the news on the radio.
2. Please don't be late. Try to be here .....
3. I won't be here next week. I'm going .....
4. 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her .....
5. 'What ..... this evening?' 'There's a film at 9 o'clock.'

104.2 རིམ་རྒྱུ་ལྟ་བུ་ཆེས་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་བསོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཡུལ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆར་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- |    |   |    |  |
|----|---|----|--|
| 1. | I cut the paper <b>with</b> a pair of scissors. | 6  | She's listening to some music ..... Mozart.  |
| 2. | She usually goes to work ..... car.             | 7  | The plane is flying ..... 600 miles an hour. |
| 3. | Who is the woman ..... short hair?              | 8  | They're ..... holiday.                       |
| 4. | They are talking ..... the weather.             | 9  | Do you know the man ..... sunglasses?        |
| 5. | The car's ..... fire.                           | 10 | He's reading a book..... grammar .....       |

Vera P. Bull.

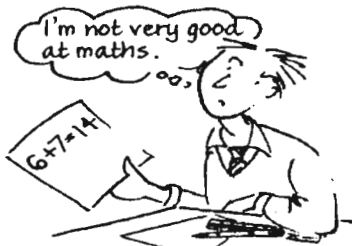
104.3 འབྲེལ་ཆེག་བསོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆེག་ལྟ་བུ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆར་བར་བཞོ་དགོས།

1. In tennis, you hit the ball ..... a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don't go out ..... a coat.
3. Hamlet, Othello and Macbeth are plays ..... William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything ..... computers?
5. My grandmother died ..... the age of 98.
6. How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles ..... plane?
7. I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it ..... television.
8. My house is the one ..... the red door on the right.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel ..... very high speeds.
10. I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go ..... bike.
11. Can you give me some information ..... hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested ..... two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They're nearly always ..... time.
14. What would you like to drink ..... your meal?
15. We traveled from Paris to Moscow ..... train.
16. One of the most famous paintings in the world is the Mona Lisa ..... Leonardo da Vinci.



## ཐེ་ཆེན་བརྟུ་དང་ཕྱ། AFRAID OF... GOOD AT ... སྟགས།

༡ afraid of / good at སྟགས་སྟེ། བྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆེག་ + འབྲེལ་ཆེག་ + མིང་ཆེག་དང་ཡང་ན་ལས་མ་མིང་  
བཀོལ་དགོས།



|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Afraid of ...                  | Are you afraid of dog?  |
| Angry with somebody            | Why are you angry with me? What have I done?  |
| Angry about something          | Are you angry about last night? (=something that happened last night.)                |
| Different from ...             | Ann is very different from her sister.  |
| Fed up with ...                | I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different.(=I've had enough of my job) |
| Full of...                     | The room was full of people.  |
| Good at .../ bad at...         | Are you good at maths? Tina is very bad at writing letters.                           |
| Interested in ...              | I'm not interested in sport.  |
| Married to...                  | Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)                             |
| Nice / kind of somebody to...  | It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.                                   |
| (be) nice / kind to (somebody) | David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.                                  |
| Sorry about (something)        | I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.                                    |
| Sorry for (doing something)    | I'm sorry for not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)            |

༢ འབྲེལ་ཆེག་ + ལས་མ་མིང་བཤུད་བྱེད་ཚུལ། (for + telling)

ང་ཆོས་འབྲེལ་ཆེག་ at / with / for སྟགས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སྤྲུལ་ཆེག་བཤུད་བྱེད་དགོས་ཆོ། ལས་ཆེག་དེ་ངེས་པར་དུ་ལས་  
མ་མིང་གི་ནམ་པར་བཞོ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

|                      |             |                                   |
|----------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| I'm not very good at | telling     | stories.                          |
| Are you fed up with  | doing       | the same thing every day?         |
| I'm sorry for        | not phoning | you yesterday.                    |
| Mark is thinking of  | buying      | a new car.                        |
| Tom left without     | saying      | goodbye. (=he didn't say goodbye) |
| After                | doing       | the shopping, they went home.     |



## གསལ་བཤད་

105.1 རི་མོ་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་



1. He's afraid of dogs.
2. She's interested ..... science.
3. She's married ..... a footballer.
4. She's very good ..... languages.
5. He's fed up ..... the weather.
6. 'Can I help you?' 'Oh, that's very kind ..... you.'

105.2 རི་མོ་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

1. I'm not very good in sport.
2. I like Sarah. She's always very kind ..... me.
3. I'm sorry ..... your broken window. It was an accident.
4. He's very brave. He isn't afraid ..... anything.
5. It was very nice ..... Julia to let us stay in her flat.
6. Life today is very different ..... life 50 years ago.
7. Are you interested ..... politics?
8. Some people are afraid ..... spiders.
9. Chris was angry ..... what happened.
10. These boxes are very heavy. They are full ..... books.
11. I'm sorry ..... getting angry ..... you yesterday.

105.3 གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

1. I'm not very good at telling stories. (good/ tell)
2. I wanted to go to the cinema but Paula wasn't ..... (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very ..... up in the morning. (good/ get)
4. Let's go! I'm ..... (fed up/ wait)
5. I'm ..... you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/ wake)

105.4 **without** རི་མོ་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

1. (Tom left/ he didn't say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye.
2. (Sue walked past me/ she didn't speak) Sue walked .....
3. (Don't do anything / ask me first) Don't! .....
4. (I went out/ I didn't lock the door) I .....

105.5 རི་མོ་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་བཞུགས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

1. (interested) I'm interested in sport.
2. (afraid) I'm .....
3. (not very good) I am not .....
4. (not interested) .....
5. (fed up) .....

ཕྱི་ཆ་ན་བརྒྱ་དང་ཕྱེད། LISTEN TO / LOOK AT སྟགས།



७

ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྗེས་སུ་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ask (ཁང་ཟག)for...   | A man stopped me and asked me for money.              |
| Belong to...  | Does this book belong to you? (དེས་འདི་ཚུད་གི་ཟེད་དམ) |
| Happen to ...   | I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?           |
| Listen to...  | Listen to this music. It's beautiful.                 |
| Speak / talk to (ཁང་ཟག) about (བྱ་དོན)  | Did you talk to Paul about the problem? (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ)  |
|   | Can speak to Chris, please?                           |
| Thank (ཁང་ཟག) for...  | Thank you very much for your help.                    |
| Think about ... or think of...  | He never thinks about (or of) other people.           |
|   | Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new car.      |
| Wait for ...  | Don't go yet. Wait for me.                            |
| Write to (ཁང་ཟག)  | I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.             |
| ཡིན་ནའང་། ང་ཚོས་ <sup>phone</sup> ཡི་ཆེས་སུ་ཐད་ཀར་ཁང་ཟག་བཞོལ་བ་ལས་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་ཕེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱིད། |   |
| I must phone my parents. ('phone to my parents' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)                             |   |

**P**

**Look at / look for / look after** རོགས་

|               |   |   |
|---------------|---|---|
| Look at...    |  | She's looking at her watch.   |
| Look for      |  | Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.<br>Why are you looking at me like that?<br>He's lost his key. He's looking for it.<br>I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her? |
| Look after... |   | When Barbara is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.<br>Don't lose this book. Look after it.   |

depend

ང་ཚོས་depend on...ཞེས་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ།

A: Do you like eating in restaurants?

B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not 'it depends of')

གནད་ཡང་ངོས་ it depends what / where / how གནས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལེ་on དུས་ཚོགས་མཉམ་སྐྱེས་ཀྱི་དཔེ་རྩུབ་

A: Do you want to come out with us?

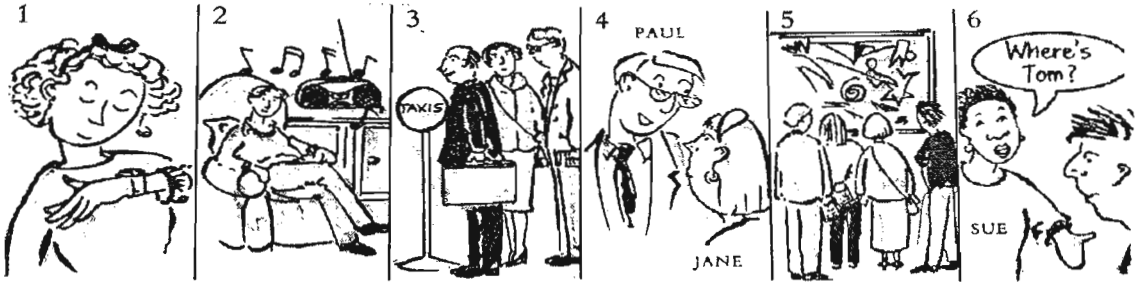
B: It depends where you're going. ཡང་། It depends on where....

ཞིབ་ཏུ་ཐེ་ཆན་48 ལ་སྟུང་།



## གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

106.1 རི་མོ་ར་བལྟས་ཇེས་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. She's looking <u>at</u> her watch. | 4. Paul is talking ..... Jane.      |
| 2. He's listening ..... The radio.    | 5. They're looking ..... a picture. |
| 3. They're waiting ..... a taxi.      | 6. Sue is looking ..... Tom.        |

106.2 གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས། གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས། གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Thank you very much for your help.
2. This is not my umbrella. It belongs ..... a friend of mine.
3. (On the phone) Can I speak ..... Mr. Davis, please?
4. (On the phone) Thank you ..... phoning. Goodbye.
5. What happened ..... Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
6. We're thinking ..... going to Australia next year.
7. We asked the waiter ..... coffee but he brought us tea.
8. 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends ..... the book.'
9. John was talking but nobody was listening ..... what he was saying.
10. We waited ..... Karen until 2 o'clock but she didn't come.
11. 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes. I'm writing ..... Diane.'
12. Don't forget to phone ..... your mother this evening.
13. He's alone all day. He never talks ..... anybody.
14. 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends ..... the type or room.'
15. Catherine is thinking ..... Changing her job.

106.3 at/ for/ after གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I looked ..... the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
2. When you are ill, you need somebody to look ..... you.
3. Excuse me, I'm looking ..... Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
4. Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look ..... yourself.
5. I'm going to take a photograph of you. Please look ..... the camera and smile.
6. Garry is looking ..... a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

106.4 It depends... གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Do you want to go out with us?     | <u>It depends where you're going.</u> |
| 2. Do you like eating in restaurants? | <u>It depends on the restaurant.</u>  |
| 3. Do you enjoy watching TV?          | It depends .....                      |
| 4. Can you do something for me?       | It .....                              |
| 5. Are you going away this weekend?   | .....                                 |
| 6. Can you lend me some money?        | .....                                 |



ཕྱི་ཆོན་བརྒྱུད་དང་བརྒྱུན།




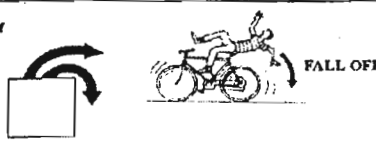
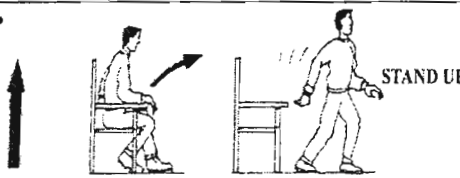
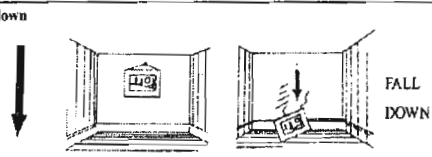

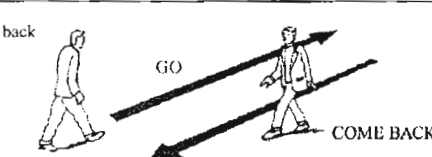
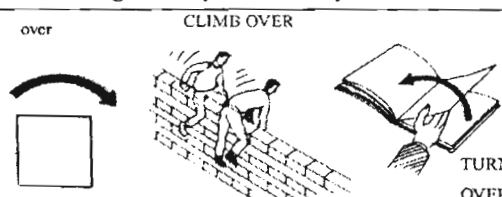

GO IN

FALL OFF

RUN AWAY

ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་ས། 7

༡ ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ས་ནི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཇེས་སུ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་སྐྱར་བ་ལས་སྐྱབ་བ་ཞིག་ཡིན། དཔེར་ན།

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>in</b></p>  <p>➤ Ann opened the door of the car and got In. (=into the car ཞེས་བྲིས་གྲུང་ཆོག)</p> <p>➤ I waited outside the house. I didn't go in.</p>   | <p><b>out</b></p>  <p>➤ The car stopped and a woman got out.(out of the car ཞེས་བྲིས་གྲུང་ཆོག)</p> <p>➤ I went to the window and looked out.</p>  |
| <p><b>on</b></p>  <p>➤ The bus arrived and I got on.</p>   | <p><b>off</b></p>  <p>➤ Be careful! Don't fall off.</p>   |
| <p><b>UP</b></p>  <p>➤ He stood up and left the room.</p> <p>➤ I usually get up early. (=get out of bed)</p> <p>➤ We looked up at the stars.</p>  | <p><b>down</b></p>  <p>➤ Would you like to sit down?</p> <p>➤ The picture fell down.</p> <p>➤ Lie down on the floor.</p>  |
| <p><b>away or off</b></p>  <p>➤ The thief ran away. (ཡང་ན་ ... ran off)</p> <p>➤ Ann got into the car and drove away. (ཡང་ན་ drove off)</p> <p><b>Be / go away</b> (= ས་གནས་ཞིག་ཏུ་སང་བའི་དོན)</p> <p>➤ Ann has gone away for a few days.</p> | <p><b>back</b></p>  <p>➤ We went out for dinner and then went back to our hotel.</p> <p>➤ Go away and don't come back.</p> <p><b>Be back:</b></p> <p>➤ Ann is away. She'll be back on Monday.</p>     |
| <p><b>over</b></p> <p><b>CLIMB OVER</b></p>  <p>➤ The wall wasn't very high, so we climbed over.</p> <p>➤ Turn over and look at the next page.</p>   | <p><b>round (or around)</b></p>  <p>➤ Somebody shouted my name, so I looked round (ཡང་ན་ around).</p> <p>➤ We went for a long walk. After six miles we turned round (ཡང་ན་ around) and went back.</p> |

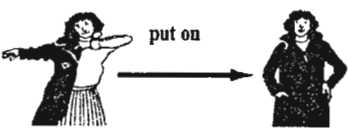
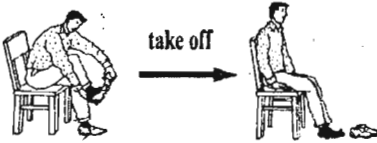




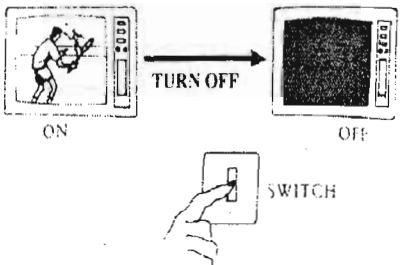
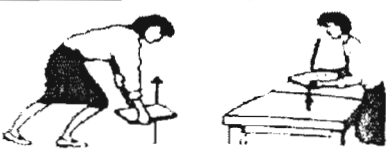
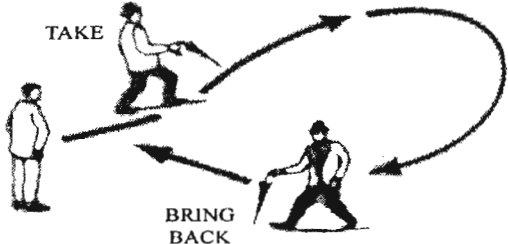


ཟླ་ཚེན་བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱད། PUT ON YOUR SHOES    PUT YOUR SHOES ON ལས་ཚོག་ཚོག་ཚོགས་ ༩  
ག

སྐབས་རེར་ལས་ཚོག་ཚོག་ཚོགས་ལ་བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་མེད་པར་བཀོལ་ཚོག་དཔེར་ན།

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>ལས་ཚོག་    བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།<br/>Put on    your coat</p>  <p>Put on your coat<br/>ཡང་ན་ put your coat on</p> <p>ཇ་ཚེས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚོག་སྟེ།<br/>Put it on ('put on it ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)<br/>Here's your coat. Put it on.<br/>It was cold, so I put on my coat.<br/>(ཡང་ན་ I put my coat on)</p> | <p>ལས་ཚོག་    བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།<br/>take off    your shoes</p>  <p>Take of your shoes<br/>ཡང་ན་ Take your shoes off</p> <p>ཡིན་ནའང་། it/ them གཉིས་ནི་ནམ་རྒྱུན་on /of ཡི་ཚུན་བྱ་བའི་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།<br/>Take them off ( take off them ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)<br/>I'm going to take off my shoes.<br/>(ཡང་ན་ take my shoes off)<br/>Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.</p> |
|--|--|

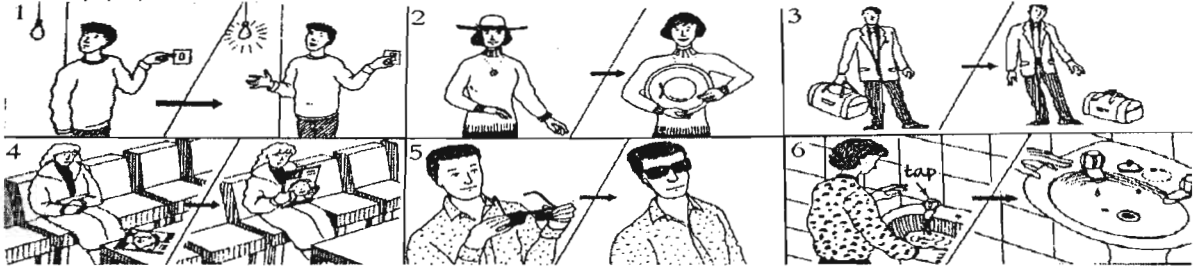
ཁ ལས་ཚོག་ཚོག་ཚོགས་མང་ཤས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>Turn on / turn off</b> (སྟོན་དང་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་, རྒྱ་སྤྱད་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་སྟགས་ལ་བཀོལ་བ་དཔེར་ན།)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; It was dark, so I turned on the light. (ཡང་ན་འདི་ལྟར་འབྲི་དགོས་ I turned the light on)</li> <li>&gt; I don't want to watch this programme.<br/>You can turn it off.</li> </ul> <p>གཞན་ཡང་switch on / switch off (སྟོན་དང་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་, རྒྱ་སྤྱད་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་སྟགས་ལ་བཀོལ་བ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; I switched on the light and switched off the television.</li> </ul> |  |
| <p><b>Pick up / put down:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?</li> <li>&gt; I stopped reading and put my book down. (ཡང་ན་put down my book)</li> </ul>   |  |
| <p><b>Bring back / take back / give back / put back:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; You can take my umbrella but please bring it back.</li> <li>&gt; I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.</li> <li>&gt; I've got Diane's keys. I must give them back to her.</li> <li>&gt; I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.</li> </ul>  |  |



## གཤམ་སྒྱུབ་

108.1 རི་མོ་འོ་ན་ཁོ་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་མེད་ལ་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. He <u>turned on the light.</u> (or <u>turned the light on.</u> ) | 4 She ..... |
| 2. She .....  | 5 He .....  |
| 3. He .....   | 6 She.....  |

108.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདི་དག་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་བཟོ་སྟངས་ལྟ་གསུམ་བཀོལ་ནས་བཟོས་ཆོག།

|                           |                               |                        |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| I turned on the radio.    | I <u>turned the radio on.</u> | I <u>turned it on.</u> |
| He put on his jacket.     | He .....                      | He .....               |
| She .....                 | She took her glasses off.     | .....                  |
| Put down your pens.       | .....                         | .....                  |
| They gave back the money. | .....                         | .....                  |
| .....                     | I turned the lights off.      | .....                  |

108.3 **Bring/pick/switch/Take/turn.** སྐགས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་it/ them དང་དེའི་ཇེས་སུ་on/ off/ up/ back སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I wanted to watch something on television. so I turned it on.
- I bought a lamp but it doesn't work. I'm going to ..... to the shop.
- There were some gloves on the floor, so I..... and put them on the table.
- When I finished working on the computer, I .....
- Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to .....

108.4 རེ་ལྷ་མིག་གལས་གཡོན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།  
ལས་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་ནང་དོན་ཟུར་བཀོད་པར་གསལ།

|                 |            |                 |     |      |      |       |
|-----------------|------------|-----------------|-----|------|------|-------|
| Your cigarette  | a glass    | or me/ it/ them | In  | up   | on   | away  |
| a pair of shoes | ten houses |                 | out | down | over | round |

- They knocked ten houses down ཡང་ན་down ten houses when they built the new road.
- That music is very loud. Can you turn it down/
- I knocked .....and broke it.
- If you want to know what a word means, you can look ..... in a dictionary.
- I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw .....
- Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill .....
- I tried ..... in the shop but I didn't buy them.
- I visited the school. One of the teachers showed .....
- 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn but I gave ..... after a month.'
- You're not allowed to smoke here. Please put .....



མེ་མཁོ་བཞུགས་དང་དབྱུག AND BUT OR SO BECAUSE སྐད་ཀྱི་མཁོ་བཞུགས།

ཀ and but or so because

ང་ཚོས་གོང་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་འདི་དག་ནི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཐུང་བ་གཉིས་རེ་པན་ཚུན་སྤྱད་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་བཟོ་བའི་  
སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

ཚིག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ། The car stopped. ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ། The driver got out.  
The car stopped and the driver got out.

ཁ and / but / or

| ཚིག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ།       |     | ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ།        |
|-----------------------|-----|-------------------------|
| We stayed at home     | and | (we)* watched TV.       |
| My sister is married  | and | (she)* lives in London. |
| He doesn't like her   | and | she doesn't like him.   |
| I bought a newspaper  | but | I didn't read it.       |
| It's a nice house     | but | it hasn't got a garden. |
| Do you want to go out | or  | are you too tired.      |

འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ང་ཚོས་ we དང་ she གཉིས་བསྐྱར་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་དགོས།

གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ལས་ང་ཚོས་ཤེས་ཐུབ་པ་ནི་and དེ་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གྱི་ཆེས་ཆེས་མའི་དོན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བར་དུ་བཀོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell sleep.
- Ann is at work, sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

ག so བཤད་དོན་ཞིག་གི་མཚུགས་ལྟར་བཤད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཀོལ་སྟུང་བྱེད། (དེར་བརྟེན་ནས་དེའི་ཕྱིན་ཕྱིས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།)

| ཚིག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ།         |    | ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ།             |
|-------------------------|----|------------------------------|
| It was very hot,        | so | I opened the window.         |
| The water wasn't clean, | so | we didn't go swimming.       |
| They like films,        | so | they often go to the cinema. |

ང because བཤད་དོན་ཞིག་གི་རྒྱ་ཁྱེན་ལྟར་བཤད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད། (རྒྱ་མཚན་ནི་)

| ཚིག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ།       |         | ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ།           |
|-----------------------|---------|----------------------------|
| I opened the window   | because | it was very hot.           |
| We didn't go swimming | because | the water wasn't clean.    |
| Lisa is hungry        | because | she didn't have breakfast. |

Because བཤད་སྟུང་བའི་མཁོ་བཞུགས་ཀྱི་མཁོ་བཞུགས་ལྟར་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད།

- Because the water wasn't clean, we didn't go swimming.

ཅ ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་གི་ནང་དུ་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་གཅིག་ལས་མང་བ་ཡོད་སྟེ་དེ་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, but wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.



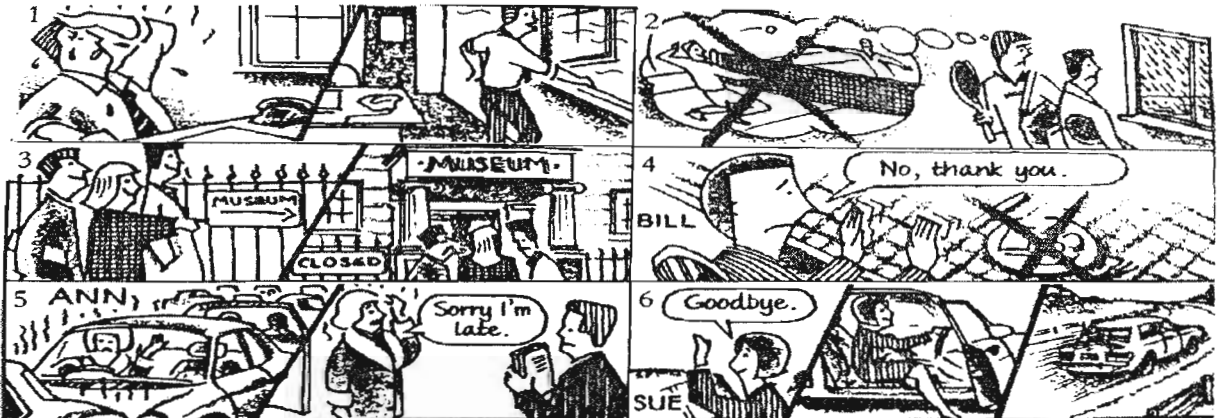
## གཤམ་ཐུང་།

109.1 རེ་ལུ་མིག་གཡས་གཡོན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་and/ but/ or སྟགས་ཀྱིས་པན་ཚུན་སླེལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཡང་དག་པ་གཅིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I stayed at home.                | I didn't have your number.  |
| I bought a newspaper.            | I didn't read it.           |
| I went to the window.            | I went by bus this morning. |
| I wanted to phone you.           | I swam to the other side.   |
| I jumped into the river.         | I watched television.       |
| I usually drive to work.         | I looked out.               |
| Do you want me to come with you? | Shall I wait here?          |

1. I stayed at home and watched television.
2. I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.
3. I .....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....

109.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་and/ but/so/because སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཚུམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2. They didn't play tennis .....
3. They went to the museum .....
4. Bill wasn't hungry, .....
5. Ann was late .....
6. Sue said .....

109.3 and/ but སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་བྱུང་གྱིས་ཁ་སང་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་མིན་སྟོར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2. (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3. (but) .....
4. (and) .....
5. (so) .....
6. (because) .....



## ཞི་ཚེན་འབྱུང་དང་འབྱུ། WHEN ...

༡ when I went out, it was raining.

ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདི་ནི་ཆ་ཤས་གཉིས་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་ཡོད་པ་རྟེ།

ཆ་ཤས་དང་པ།                      ཆ་ཤས་གཉིས་པ།  
When I went out + it was raining

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁྲིམ་གྱི་ཆ་ཤས་དང་པོ་དང་གཉིས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་ཅུང་

ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་བཅའ་ས་ཀྱང་ཆོག

- When I went out, it was raining.
- It was raining when I went out.



གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆ་ཤས་དང་པོ་དེ་ཆ་ཤས་གཉིས་པ་འདི་ལྟ་བུ་ཡོད་སྐབས། ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བར་དུ་ནྟགས་ཤིག་

འདི་བཅུད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- When you're tired, don't drive.
- Don't drive when you're tired.
- Ann was very happy when she passed her exam.
- When Ann passed her exam, she was very happy.

before / while / after སྐགས་ཀྱང་when ལྟར་བཅུད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག དཔེར་ན།

- Always look both ways before you cross the road.
- Before you cross the road, always look both ways.
- While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
- It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again after he broke his leg.
- After he broken his leg, he never played football again.

བ when I am... / When I go... སྐགས།

ཇི་ལི་གཟའ་ཇིས་མར་ཉིལ་ཡོ་བྱ་འགྲོ་བྱ་ཡིན་ལ། གནས་དེར་མོའི་ཤྱགས་མོ་ཞིག་ཡོད་ལ་དེའི་མིང་ལ་ལྷ་ར་ལྷ་ར་  
ཟེར། མོ་ཡང་དུས་སྐབས་དེར་མོའི་ཞུག་དུ་འགྲོ་བྱ་ཡིན་ཟེན། སྐགས་ཉིལ་ཡོ་བྱ་དོ་འཕྲད་མི་ཐུང་།

Barbara will be in Mexico when Jill is in New York.

མ་འོངས་པའི་དུས་ཆེད་ལྟོན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་འབྲི་དགོས་ཏེ།

... when Jill is in New York. (not 'when Jill will be' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)



when ཀྱི་རྒྱུས་སུ་མ་འོངས་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་ཤིག་འབྲི་དགོས་ཆོང་ཆོས་དེར་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་ནམ་པ་བཅུད་སྤྱད་

ནས་འབྲི་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower. ( 'when I will get home' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when I have more time.

before / while / after / until སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུས་སུ་ཡང་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བཅུད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Please close the window before you go out. ('before you will go' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Julia is going to live in our flat while we are away. ('while we will be' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- I'll stay here until you come back. ('until you will come back' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)



## གསལ་བཤད་

110.1 when ཡི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་བཅུ་མས་རྒྱུ་འཕྲུལ་གཉིས་ལས་ཚིག་བདམས་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I went out             | I switched off the TV         |
| I'm tired              | I always go to the same place |
| I phoned her           | there were no rooms           |
| I go on holiday        | it was raining                |
| The programmer ended   | there was no answer           |
| I arrived at the hotel | I like to watch TV            |

1. When I went out, it was raining.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

110.2 རེ་འུ་མིག་ལས་ཚིག་བདམས་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྒྱུ་འཕྲུལ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                               |                       |                          |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| Somebody broke into the house | before they came here | when they heard the news |
| before they crossed the road  | while they were away  | they didn't believe me   |
| they went to live New Zealand |                       |                          |

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2. They were very surprised .....
3. After they got married, .....
4. The letter arrived .....
5. Where did they live .....
6. While they were asleep, .....
7. When I told them the news, .....

110.3 བཅར་ཤ་གཙོ་དཔ།

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come/ you'll come back. I'll stay and you come are right.
2. I'm going to bed when I finish/ I'll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it's/ it will be too late.
4. Julia is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves/ she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet, wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come/ we'll come and visit you when we're/ we'll be in England again.
7. When I come/ I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring/ I'll bring the photographs.
8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9. 'Don't forget to give me your address.' 'Ok, I give / I'll give it to you before I go/ I'll go.'

110.4 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིག་དང་བསྐྱུག་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྒྱུ་འཕྲུལ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Can you close the window before you go out?
2. What are you going to do when .....
3. When I have more time, .....
4. I'll wait for you while .....
5. When I start my new job, .....
6. Will you be here when .....



ཕྱི་ཆེན་འབྲུ་དང་འབྲུ་གཅིག IF WE GO... IF YOU SEE ... སྐག་སྐྱེ།

ག



if བོ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་མཐུང་དུས་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

If ..., .... (ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་མཐུང་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ་)  
If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.  
If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.  
If you're hungry, have something to eat.  
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

...if ..... (ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ་)  
It will be cheaper if we go by bus.  
You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.  
I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.  
Do you mind if I use your phone? (=Is it OK if I use it?)

ཁ་བརྒྱུད་ཁྱེད་དུ་ང་ཆོས་ནམ་རྒྱན་if ཡོད་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཤས་དེ་ཁེར་རྒྱུང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

➤ 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

ཁ ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཀྱི་Ann tomorrow... སྐག་སྐྱེ།

ང་ཆོས་if ཡི་རྩེས་སུ་སྤྱིར་བཏང་དུ་ལྷ་བ་ལས་མ་འོངས་པ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་། དཔེར་ན།

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to phone me?
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. ('if I will be' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.
- What shall we do if it rains? ('if it will rain ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ག if དང་when

If I go out བོ་མ་འོངས་པར་བྱེད་ཀྱི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ངེས་གཏན་གྱི་ཆ་རྒྱུང་ཞུང་།

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Perhaps. If I go out, I'll close the window.

When I go out བོ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་འགྲོ་བར་གཏན་འཁེལ་ཡོད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཞག་ལྷོད་བྱེད།

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the window.
- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. ('when I'm late' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. ('when it doesn't rain ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)







## གསལ་བྱུང་།

111.1 if ཡི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་བརྒྱུད་ཆེས། རེ་བྱ་མིག་གཉིས་ལས་ཚིག་བདམས་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| You don't hurry              | we can have lunch now    |
| You pass the exam            | you can have them        |
| You fail the exam            | I can lend you some      |
| You don't want this magazine | you'll get a certificate |
| You want those pictures      | you'll be late           |
| You're busy now              | I'll throw it away       |
| You're hungry                | we can talk later        |
| You need money               | you can do it again      |

1. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2. If you pass .....
3. If .....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....

111.2 འགྲིག་མེན་བརྟན་ཤ་གཙོད་པ།

1. If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. I'm is right.
2. Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address/
3. If there is/ will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I phone / I'll phone you in the evening.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Julia get/ will get married.
6. Do you go/ will you go to the party if they invite/ they'll invite you?

111.3 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don't hurry you'll miss the train.
3. I don't want to go swimming if .....
4. If you go to bed early tonight, .....
5. Turn the television off if .....
6. Tina won't pass her exams if .....
7. If I have time tomorrow, .....
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if .....

111.4 if དང་ཡང་ན་when བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going to do some shopping now. .... I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm going to do some shopping now ..... I go, will you come with me?
4. .... you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Do you mind ..... I close the window?
6. John is still at school. .... he leaves school, he wants to go to university.
7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow ..... the weather is good?
8. We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel ..... we arrive. I don't know what we'll do ..... we don't find anywhere.




# ཕྱི་ཆོས་འབྱུང་དང་འབྱུང་གཉིས། IF I HAD... IF WE WENT... སྟགས།

ག

ཏན་ནི་ཆངས་འཁོར་མཚོགས་པའི་རིགས་ལ་དགའ་ཡོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ཁོར་ཆངས་འཁོར་མཚོགས་པ་ཞིག་ད་ལྟ་མེད། རྒྱ་མཚོན་ནི་ཁོར་དཔུལ་འདང་ངེས་ཞིག་མེད་པས་སྟ།

If he had the money, he would buy a fast car.

ནཱ་རྒྱན་had ནི་འདས་པར་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཡོད། འོན་ཀྱང་། ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདིའི་ནང་དུ་འདས་པའི་དོན་མ་ཡིན། If he had the money ནི་གལ་ཏེ་ད་ལྟ་ཁོར་སྒྲོལ་ཡོད་ཆོ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན། (ཁོར་སྒྲོལ་མ་མེད་པའི་དོན།)



If I had the money...

|    |                             |   |                        |                          |                                      |
|----|-----------------------------|---|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| If | I<br>You<br>It<br>They etc. | Had / knew / lived / went<br>Didn't have / know / go<br>Was / were...,<br>Could..., | I<br>You<br>It<br>They | Wouldn't<br><br>Couldn't | buy...<br>be ...<br>have...<br>go... |
|----|-----------------------------|---|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|

## ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- If he had the money, he would buy a car. (If ...ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཞག་ལ་བ)
- ཡང་ན། He would buy a car if he had the money. (If...ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བཞག་ལ་བ)

## I'd / she'd / they'd སྟགས་ནི་I would / she would / they would སྟགས་ཀྱི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་ནཱ་པ་ཡིན།

- I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd get wet if we went out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country.
- If you didn't have a job, what would you do? (ཡིན་ནའང་ཁྱེད་ལ་ལས་ཀ་ཤིག་ཡོད།)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd help you if I could. (ཡིན་ནའང་ངས་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན།)
- If we had a car, we could travel more. (ཡིན་ནའང་ང་ཆོར་ཆངས་འཁོར་མེད་པས་ང་ཆོར་སྒྲོལ་སྒྲོལ་ཏུ་འགྲོ་མ་ཐུབ།)

## བ If (I) was / were...

## ང་ཆོས་ if + I/ he / she / it + was/were གཉིས་རིས་མེད་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག་དཔེར་ན།

- It's cold. If I were you, I'd put your coat on. (ཡང་ན་ if I was you...)
- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there if I was you. (ཡང་ན་ If I were you)
- It would be nice if the weather were (ཡང་ན་ was) better.

བསྐྱུར་བ།



| If I have / if it is སྟགས།   | If I had / If it was སྟགས།  |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I must go and see Ann. If I have time, I will go today. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ང་ལ་དུས་ཚོད་ཡོད་མྱིང་གལ་མྱིང་དེ་ལྟར་ཡིན་ཆོང་བཟུ་དུ་འགྱོ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།)</li> <li>➤ I like that jacket. I'll buy it if it isn't too expensive. (གལ་ཏེ་ལུ་བ་དེ་གོང་ཆེན་ཞིག་མིན་ཆོང་ས་ཉོ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།)</li> <li>➤ I'll help you if I can. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ངས་རོགས་རམ་བྱེད་ཐུབ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I must go and see Ann. If I had time, I would to today. (གལ་ཏེ་དེ་རིང་ང་ལ་དུས་ཚོད་ཡོད་ཆོང་བཟུ་དུ་འགྱོ་དགོས་མོད་འོན་ཀྱང་ང་ལ་དུས་ཚོད་མེད་པས་འགྱོ་མི་ཐུབ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།)</li> <li>➤ I like that jacket but it's very expensive. I'd buy it if it wasn't so expensive. (གལ་ཏེ་ལུ་བ་འདི་དེ་འདྲིའི་གོང་ཆེན་ཞིག་མིན་ཆོང་ས་ཉོ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།)</li> <li>➤ I'd help you if I could but I can't.</li> </ul> |



## གཤམ་ཁྱེད་

### 112.1 གཤམ་ཁྱེད་སྤྱི་ཆ་སྤྱི་ཆ་དགོས།

1. I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
2. I have a car, I couldn't travel very much if I didn't have a car.
3. I don't want to go out. If I ..... to go out, I'd go.
4. We haven't got a key. If we ..... a key, we could get into the house.
5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I ..... hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she ..... it.
7. You can't drive. If you ..... drive, I would lend you my car.
8. He speaks too fast. I could understand him better if he ..... more slowly.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I ..... so much to do, we could go out.

### 112.2 སྤྱི་ཆ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ལྷན་པས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཀོལ་དགོས།

1. If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/ have)
2. Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country. (she/ not/ be)
3. If I wanted to learn Italian ..... to Italy. (I / go)
4. I haven't told Ann what happened. She'd be angry if ..... (she/ know)
5. If ..... a map, I could show you where I live. (we/ have)
6. What would you do if ..... a lot of money? (you/ win)
7. It's not a very good hotel. .... there if I were you. (I / not/ stay)
8. If ..... nearer London, we would go there more often. (it/ be)
9. It's a pity you have to go now. .... nice if you had more time. (it/ be)
10. I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if ..... better. (the salary/ be)
11. I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, ..... what to do. (I / not/ know)
12. If you could change one thing in the world, what ..... ? (you/ change)

### 112.3 རེ་ལུ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་དག་བདམས་ཐེས་སྤྱི་ཆ་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་ཆོག་དག་ཡང་དག་པར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ ལྷན་པས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                                    |                         |                       |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| We (have) a bigger house           | I (watch) it            | it (be) a bit cheaper |
| We (buy) a bigger house            | every day (be) the same | I (be) bored          |
| We(have) some pictures on the wall | the air (be) cleaner    |                       |

1. I'd buy that jacket if it was a bit cheaper.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight, .....
3. This room would be nicer if .....
4. If there wasn't so much traffic, .....
5. Life would be boring if .....
6. If I had nothing to do, .....
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if .....
8. If we had more money, .....

### 112.4 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་ཚུལ་ལྟར་གཤམ་ཁྱེད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལྷན་པས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I'd go to the dentist if I had a toothache.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world, .....
3. I wouldn't be very happy if .....
4. I'd buy a house if .....
5. If I saw an accident in the street, .....
6. The world would be a better place if .....



ཕྱི་ཚུན་འབྲུ་དང་འབྲུ་གཞུག། A PERSON WHO... A THING THAT /WHICH...འབྲེལ་བའི་ཚབ་ཚིག་ ༡

ག



I met a woman. She can speak six languages.

འདིར་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

**She - who**

འདི་ནི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཡིན།

I met a woman who can speak six languages.

JIM



Jim was wearing a hat. It was too big for him.

འདི་ནི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

**It - that or which**

འདི་ནི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཡིན།

Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. ཡང་ན།

Jim was wearing a hat which was too big for him

ཁ who བོ་མི་ཡི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

|                      |                         |                       |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| A thief is a person  | who steals things?      |                       |
| Do you know any body | who can play the piano? |                       |
| The man              | who phoned              | didn't give his name. |
| The people           | who work in the office  | are very friendly.    |

ག that བོ་དངོས་པོ་དང་ཡང་ན་མི་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

|                            |                         |                    |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| An aero plane is a machine | that flies.             |                    |
| Emma lives in a house      | that is 500years old.   |                    |
| The people                 | that work in the office | are very friendly. |

ང་ཚོས་that བོ་མི་ལ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཚིག་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ང་ཚོས་མི་ལ་who བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད།

ང which བོ་དངོས་པོའི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| An air plane is a machine | which flies. ( 'a machine who...'ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) |
| Emma lives in a house     | which is 500 years old.                            |

which བོ་མི་ཡི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་། དཔེར་ན།

➤ Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party? ( 'the woman which...'ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



## གཞན་ལྟར་

113.1 དཔེ་བཞིན་དང་པོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

|            |           |                            |                    |
|------------|-----------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| A thief    | a dentist | doesn't tell the truth     | is ill in hospital |
| A butcher  | a fool    | looks after your teeth     | steals things      |
| A musician | a genius  | is very intelligent        | is very stupid     |
| A patient  | a liar    | plays a musical instrument | sells meat         |

1. **A thief is a person who steals things.**

2. A butcher is a person.....

3. A musician .....

4. ....

5. ....

6. ....

7. ....

8. ....

113.2 སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པོ་དེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.) **The man who phoned didn't give his name.**

2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.) The woman ..... a yellow dress.

3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.) Most of the students .....

4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.) The .....

113.3 **who** དང་ **which** གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ཅམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I met a woman **who** can speak six languages.

2. What's the name of the woman ..... lives next door?

3. What's the name of the river..... flows through the town?

4. Where is the picture ..... was hanging on the wall?

5. Do you know anybody ..... wants to buy a car?

6. You always ask questions ..... are difficult to answer.

7. I have a friend ..... is very good at repairing cars.

8. I think everybody ..... went to the party enjoyed it very much.

9. Why does he always wear clothes ..... are too small for him?

113.4 གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཅམས་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་དག་ནོར་བཙོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

1. A thief is a person which steals things ..... **A person who steals** .....

2. An air plane is a machine that flies. .... **Ok.** .....

3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee .....

4. Have you seen the money that was on the table? .....

5. I don't like people which never stop talking. ....

6. I know somebody that can help you. ....

7. I know somebody who works in that shop. ....

8. Correct the sentences who are wrong. ....



# ཕྱི་ཆོས་འབྲུ་དང་འབྲུ་བཞི།

THE PEOPLE WE MET

THE HOTEL YOU STAYED AT

འབྲེལ་བའི་ཆབ་ཆོག་ ༡

ག



The man is carrying a bag.

It's very heavy

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཡིན།

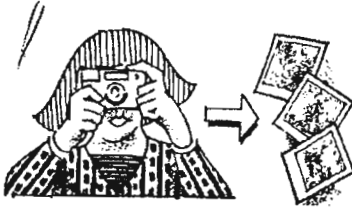
Ann took some photographs.

Have you seen them?

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

Have you seen the photographs (that ) Ann took?

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཡིན།



ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- > The bag that he is carrying... ཡང་ན་ The bag he is carrying... ( that གི་ཐོད་སྒྲིལ་བྱེད་མིན་རང་གི་འདྲིང་པའོ)
- > ...the photographs that Ann took? ཡང་ན་... the photographs Ann took?

གལ་ཏེ་ཆབ་བྱེད་དགོས་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་གང་ཡིན་པ་དེ་ནི་བྱ་ལྡུལ་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཆོས་ that/who/which འདི་དག་  
བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་མི་དགོས།

|                       |                        |                       |                                      |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| བྱེད་པ་པོ།<br>The man | ལས་ཆོག<br>was carrying | བྱ་བའི་ལྡུལ།<br>a bag | the bag (that ) the man was carrying |
| Ann                   | took                   | some photographs      | the photographs (that) Ann took      |
| You                   | wanted                 | the book              | the book (that) you wanted           |
| We                    | met                    | some people           | the people (who) we met              |

- > Did you find the book you wanted? (ཡང་ན་ ... the book that you wanted?)
- > The people we met were very nice. (ཡང་ན་ the people who we met...)
- > Everything I said was true. (ཡང་ན་ Everything that I said....)

ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

- > The film we saw was very good. ('the film we saw it was... ཞེས་འབྲིམ་ཅུང་)

ཁ སྐབས་རེར་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྗེས་སུ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་ཡོང་སྲིད་དེ། དཔེར་ན། ( talk + to )

Jill is talking to a man.

Do you know the man Jill is talking to?

We stayed at a hotel.

The hotel we stayed at was near the station.

I told you about some books.

These are the books I told you about.

ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

... the books I told you about ('the books I told you about them' ཞེས་འབྲིམ་ཅུང་)

ང་ཆོས་ས་ཆའི་ཆབ་ཏུ་ where... ཐོད་སྒྲིལ་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- > The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (the hotel we stayed at... དང་མཆུངས་)

ག གལ་ཏེ་ཆབ་བྱེད་དགོས་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་གང་ཡིན་པ་དེ་ནི་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཆོས་ that / who / which སྐབས་ངས་པར་དུ་  
ཐོད་སྒྲིལ་བྱེད་དགོས། (ཞེ་ཆོན་ 8 དང་11 ལ་སྟོན་)

- > I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who གི་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་)
- > Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that གི་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་)



## གཞི་རྒྱུ་ཆ་

114.1 མོ་འཕྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་གཉིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (Ann took some photographs. Have seen them?)  
**Have you seen the photographs Ann took?**
2. (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)  
I've lost the.....
3. (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)  
I like the.....
4. (I give you some flowers. Where are they?)  
Where are the.....
5. (He told us a story. I didn't believe it. )  
I .....
6. (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)  
How.....

114.2 མོ་འཕྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་གཉིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)  
**The bag I was carrying was very heavy.**
2. (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)  
The.....
3. (I'm wearing shoes, they aren't very comfortable.)  
The shoes.....
4. (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come)  
The.....

114.3 རེ་ལུ་མིག་ནང་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

|                          |                             |                            |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| I looked a map           | they live in house          | you were looking some keys |
| I was sitting on a chair | we were waiting for a bus   | you spoke to some people   |
| You stayed at a hotel    | Linda is dancing with a man |                            |

- 1) What's the name of **the hotel you stayed at?**
- 2) Who are the people.....?
- 3) Did you find the.....?
- 4) The .....is too small for them.
- 5) The .....wasn't very clear.
- 6) I fell off.....
- 7) .....was very late.
- 8) Who is.....?

114.4 གསལ་གྱི་གནས་སྟངས་བཞག་ས་ཇེས་where བཞོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:  
Did you like **the hotel where you stayed?**
2. Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:  
What's the name of the restaurant.....
3. Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:  
Do you like.....
4. Richard works in a factory. You ask him:  
How big.....



## བྱིན་ཡིག་གི་དཔུང་པོ་འབྲས་ལྗོངས་ ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཞན་དབང་ཅན་དང་རང་དབང་ཅན་

### 1. ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་འདས་པ།

རང་དབང་ཅན་

གཞན་དབང་ཅན་

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| བྱིན་པ་ཉེ་ད་ལྟ་བ། | We make butter from milk.<br>Somebody cleans these rooms every day.<br>People never invite me to parties.<br>How do they make butter?             | Butter is made from milk.<br>These rooms are cleaned every day.<br>I am never invited to parties.<br>How is butter made?          |
| བྱིན་པ་ཉེ་འདས་པ།  | Somebody stole my car last week.<br>Somebody stole my keys yesterday.<br>They didn't invite me to the party.<br>When did they build these houses? | My car was stolen last week.<br>My keys were stolen yesterday.<br>I wasn't invited to the party.<br>When were these houses built? |

|                      |   |  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།    | They are building a new airport at the moment. (ད་ལྟ་འབྲུབ་མེད་པའི་དོན་)<br>They are building some new houses near the river. | A new airport is being built at the moment.<br>Some new houses are being built near the river. |
| འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ། | When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport.<br>(དུས་རྒྱུ་ལས་དེ་རུ་ཡིག་པ་འབྲུབ་བྱེད་མེད་པའི་དོན་)       | When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built.                                |

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| གྲུབ་ཅིན་ད་ལྟ་བ། | Look! They have painted the door.<br>These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them.<br>Somebody has stolen my car. | Look! The door has been painted.<br>These shirts are clean. They have been washed.<br>My car has been stolen. |
| གྲུབ་ཅིན་འདས་པ།  | Ann said that somebody had stolen her car.  | Ann said that her car had been stolen.  |

### 2. will/ can/ must/ have to སྟོན་པ།

ཆོག་གྲུབ་རང་དབང་ཅན་

གཞན་དབང་ཅན་

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Somebody will clean the office tomorrow.<br>Somebody must clean the office.<br>I think they'll invite you to the party.<br>They can't repair my watch.<br>You should wash this sweater by hand.<br>They are going to build a new airport.<br>Somebody has to wash these clothes.<br>They had to take the injured man to hospital. | The office will be cleaned tomorrow.<br>The office must be cleaned.<br>I think you'll be invited to the party.<br>My watch can't be repaired.<br>This sweater should be washed by hand.<br>A new airport is going to be built.<br>These clothes have to be washed.<br>The injured man had to be taken to hospital. |
|---|--|





## རྒྱ་བོད་གཉིས་ལ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག (ཁྱེ་ཆན་ 24 ལ་སྟོན་)

| རང་གཞུགས། | འདས་པ།    | འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། | རང་གཞུགས།  | འདས་པ།     | འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། |
|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------|------------|----------------|
| Be        | was/ were | been           | Let        | Let        | Let            |
| Beat      | beat      | beaten         | Lie        | Lay        | Lain           |
| Become    | began     | become         | Light      | Lit        | Lit            |
| Begin     | became    | began          | Lose       | Lost       | Lost           |
| Bite      | bit       | bitten         | Make       | Made       | Made           |
| Blow      | blew      | blown          | Mean       | Meant      | Meant          |
| Break     | broke     | broken         | Meet       | Met        | Met            |
| Bring     | brought   | bought         | Pay        | Paid       | Paid           |
| Build     | built     | bought         | Put        | Put        | Put            |
| Buy       | bought    | built          | Read       | Read       | Read           |
| Catch     | caught    | caught         | Ride       | Rode       | Ridden         |
| Choose    | chose     | chosen         | Ring       | Rang       | Rung           |
| Come      | came      | come           | Rise       | Rose       | Risen          |
| Cost      | cost      | cost           | Run        | Ran        | Run            |
| Cut       | cut       | cut            | Say        | Said       | Said           |
| Do        | did       | done           | See        | Saw        | Seen           |
| Draw      | drew      | drawn          | Sell       | Sold       | Sold           |
| Drink     | drank     | drunk          | Send       | sent       | Sent           |
| Drive     | ate       | eaten          | Shine      | Shone      | Shone          |
| Eat       | drove     | driven         | Shoot      | Shot       | Shot           |
| Fall      | fell      | fallen         | Show       | Showed     | Shown          |
| Feel      | felt      | felt           | Shut       | Shut       | Shut           |
| Fight     | fought    | fought         | Sing       | Sang       | Sung           |
| Find      | found     | found          | Sit        | Sat        | Sat            |
| Fly       | flew      | flown          | Sleep      | Slept      | Slept          |
| Forget    | forgot    | forgotten      | Speak      | Spoke      | Spoken         |
| Get       | got       | got            | Spend      | Spent      | Spent          |
| Give      | gave      | given          | Stand      | Stood      | Stood          |
| Go        | went      | gone           | Steal      | Stole      | Stolen         |
| Grow      | grew      | frown          | Swim       | Swam       | Swum           |
| Hang      | hung      | had            | Take       | Took       | Taken          |
| Have      | had       | hung           | Teach      | Taught     | Taught         |
| Hear      | heard     | heard          | Tear       | Tore       | Torn           |
| Hide      | hid       | hidden         | Tell       | Told       | Told           |
| Hit       | hit       | hit            | Think      | Thought    | Thought        |
| Hold      | held      | held           | Throw      | Threw      | Thrown         |
| Hurt      | hurt      | hurt           | Understand | Understood | Understood     |
| Keep      | kept      | kept           | Wake       | Woke       | Woken          |
| Know      | knew      | known          | Wear       | Wore       | Worn           |
| Leave     | left      | left           | Win        | Won        | Won            |
| Lend      | lent      | lent           | write      | wrote      | written        |

འཕྲི་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་འདི་དག་ནི་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་དང་གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་

གཉིས་ཀ་ཡིན་ཆོག

| རང་གཞུགས། | འདས་པ།  | འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། |
|-----------|---------|----------------|
| Burn      | burned  | burnt          |
| Dream     | dreamed | dreamt         |

| རང་གཞུགས། | འདས་པ།  | འདས་པའི་འདས་པ། |
|-----------|---------|----------------|
| Learn     | learned | learnt         |
| Smell     | smelled | smelt          |



# ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་དཔེ་འཁོར་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་གཅིག་མཚུངས་ཡིན་པའི་ལས་ཚིག་

|      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| Cost | cost | Let  | let  |
| Cut  | cut  | Put  | put  |
| Hit  | hit  | Shut | shut |
| Hurt | hurt |      |      |

|       |        |       |       |
|-------|--------|-------|-------|
| lend  | lent   | lost  | lost  |
| send  | sent   | shoot | shot  |
| spend | spent  | get   | got   |
| build | built  | light | lit   |
|       |        | sit   | sat   |
| burn  | burnt  | keep  | kept  |
| learn | learnt | sleep | slept |
| smell | smelt  |       |       |

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| feel  | felt   |
| leave | left   |
| meet  | met    |
| dream | dreamt |
| mean  | meant  |

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| bring | brought |
| buy   | bought  |
| fight | fought  |
| think | thought |
| catch | caught  |
| teach | taught  |

|      |      |
|------|------|
| sell | sold |
| tell | told |

|      |       |
|------|-------|
| find | found |
| have | had   |
| hear | heard |
| hold | held  |
| read | read  |
| say  | said  |

|      |      |
|------|------|
| pay  | paid |
| make | made |

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| stand      | stood      |
| understand | understood |

འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་གཅིག་མཚུངས་ཡིན་པའི་ལས་ཚིག་

|        |       |        |
|--------|-------|--------|
| break  | broke | broken |
| choose | chose | chosen |
| speak  | spoke | spoken |
| steal  | stole | stolen |
| wake   | woke  | woken  |

|       |       |         |
|-------|-------|---------|
| drive | drove | driven  |
| ride  | rode  | ridden  |
| rise  | rose  | risen   |
| write | wrote | written |

|      |      |        |
|------|------|--------|
| beat | beat | beaten |
| bite | bit  | bitten |
| hide | hid  | hidden |

|        |        |           |
|--------|--------|-----------|
| eat    | ate    | eaten     |
| fall   | fell   | fallen    |
| forget | forgot | forgotten |
| give   | gave   | given     |
| see    | saw    | seen      |
| take   | took   | taken     |

|       |        |        |
|-------|--------|--------|
| blow  | blew   | blown  |
| grow  | grew   | grown  |
| know  | knew   | known  |
| throw | threw  | thrown |
| fly   | flew   | flown  |
| draw  | drew   | drawn  |
| show  | showed | shown  |

|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| begin | began | begun |
| drink | drank | drunk |
| swim  | swam  | swum  |
| ring  | rang  | rung  |
| sing  | sang  | sung  |
| run   | ran   | run   |

|        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|
| come   | came   | come   |
| become | became | become |



## ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

4.1 ང་ཚོས་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་སྐབས་ 'I am' གི་ཆོག་གཅིག་ལྟར་སྐྱོད་པའི་དེ་ལྟར་བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་གི་གཤམ་གསལ་ལྟར།

I am            I'm            I'm feeling tried this morning.  
It is            it's            'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, it's very nice.'  
They have    they've    'Where are your friends?' 'They've gone home?'

ང་ཚོས་བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་འདི་བཤད་སྐབས་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

I am - I'm,    he is - he's    you have - you've    she will - she'll

4.2 ང་ཚོས་བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ 'I / he / she' སྐད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

am 'm I'm  
is 's he's she's it's  
are 're we're you're they're  
have 've I've we've you've they've  
has 's he's she's it's  
had 'd I'd he'd she'd we'd you'd they'd  
will 'll I'll he'll she'll we'll you'll they'll  
would 'd I'd he'd she'd we'd you'd they'd

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's གི་is འཕྲུལ་པ་has ཡི་བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཡིན།

She's going out this evening. (She's going = she is going)

She's gone out. (She's gone = she has gone)

'd གི་would འཕྲུལ་པ་had ཡི་བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཡིན།

A: What would you like to eat?

B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)

I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)

'm /s/ 'd སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གཅིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མཁུག་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་མི་རུང་། (ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ 39 ལ་སྟོན།)

'are you tired?' 'yes. I am.' (ཆོག་གཅིག་གྲུབ་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ 'yes, I'm' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་།)

4.3 ང་ཚོས་བསྐྱེད་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ 'I / you / he / she' སྐད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་འཕྲུལ་པའི་ཆོག་གཅིག་གྲུབ་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

དང་མཁུག་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་ལྟར་འཕྲུལ་པའི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ་

Who's your favorite singer? (= who is)

What's the time? (= what is)



There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)

My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)

Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)

What color's your car? (= what color is your car?)

#### 4.4 དགག་ཚིག་གི་བསྐྱེས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ།

Isn't (= is not)      don't (=do not)      can't (= can not)

Aren't (= are not)      doesn't (= does not)      couldn't (= could not)

Wasn't (=was not)      didn't (=did not)      won't (= will not)

Weren't (= were not)      wouldn't (= would not)

Hasn't (=has not)      shouldn't (= should not)

Haven't (=have not)      mustn't (= must not)

Hadn't (= had not)      needn't (= need not)

- We went to her house but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's David?' 'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

#### 4.5 's

's ཡི་དོན་མི་འདྲ་ལྟེ།

's བོ་is དང་ཡང་ན། has ཡི་དོན། (བྱུར་བསྐྱོད་འདིའི་དོན་ཚན་4.2 ལ་སྟོན།)

Let's བོ་let us ཡི་བསྐྱེས་འབྲི་ཡིན། (ལྟེ་ཚན་52 ལ་སྟོན།)

- The weather is nice. Let's go out. (= let us go out)

Ann's camera (ནི་མོའི་པར་ཆས་ཀྱི་དོན།) my brother's car (ནི་ངའི་ཕུ་བོའི་རྒྱངས་འཁར་ཀྱི་དོན།) / the manger's office (ནི་དོ་དམ་པའི་ལས་ཤག་གི་དོན།)  
མགས་ཉེ་ཞིབ་མོར་ལྟེ་ཚན་63 ལ་སྟོན།

བསྐྱེས་པ།

- Ann's camera was very expensive. (Ann's camera བོ་ her camera)
- Ann's a very good photographer. (Ann's བོ་ Ann is)
- Ann's got new camera. (Ann's got བོ་ Ann has got)



## བྱིན་པོ་དེ་ལྟ་བུ། དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ།

### 5.1 མིང་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྲུ་s ངང་es བསྟོན་ཚུལ། (birds/ watches )

མིང་ཚིག་མང་ཤས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སྲུ་ཐད་ཀར་+ s བསྟོན་ཚིག་ (མང་གུངས་ཡིན།) (ཁྲེ་ཚན་65 ལ་སྟོས།)

Bird birds mistake mistakes hotel hotels

ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྲུ་ + s (བྱིན་པོ་དང་དེ་ལྟ་བུ་པའི་ནང་བྱེད་པ་པོ་he/she/it སྟགས་ཡིན་སྐབས་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྲུ་  
ངེས་པར་དུ་s སྟོན་དགོས། ཁྲེ་ཚན་5 ལ་སྟོས།)

Think thinks live lives remember remembers

### ཡིན་ནའང་།

གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་s/sh/ch/x སྟགས་ཡིན་ཆེད་ཆོས་དེ་དག་གི་རྩིས་སྲུ་ངེས་པར་དུ་es བསྟོན་དགོས།

Bus buses pass passes address addresses

Dish dishes wash washes finish finishes

Watch watches teach teaches sandwich sandwiches

Box boxes

གཞན་ཡང་།

Potato potatoes tomato tomatoes

Do does go goes

གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཚིག་ཚིག་མཐའ་f ངང་fe ཡིན་སྐབས་སྲུང་ཆོས་དེ་གཉིས་v ཅུ་བསྐྱར་རྩིས་es བསྟོན་དགོས།

Shelf shelves knife knives bur roof roofs

### 5.2 གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཚིག་གམ་ལས་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་སྟོན་གྱི་ཡི་གེ་དེ་དབྱངས་མིན་ཆེད་ཆོས་y དེ་

### ཅུ་བསྐྱར་རྩིས་es བསྟོན་དགོས།

མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་སྐབས།

Study studies ( 'studys' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) family families (familys ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Story stories city cities baby babies

Try tries marry marries fly flies

ལས་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་སྐབས། (ཁྲེ་ཚན་11 ལ་སྟོས།)

Study studied ( 'studied' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Try tried marry married copy copied

ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་སྐབས། ier/ -iest (ཁྲེ་ཚན་86 ངང་89 གཉིས་ལ་སྟོས།)

Easy easier/ easiest ( 'easier/ easiest' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Happy happier/ happiest lucky luckier/ luckiest

Heavy heavier/ heaviest funny funnier/ funniest

རྩམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་སྐབས། ily (ཁྲེ་ཚན་85 ལ་སྟོས།)

Easy easily ( 'easily' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Happy happily luck luckily heavy heavily



གལ་ཏེ་y ཡི་སྒྲིབ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་ཏེ་དབྱངས་ཡིག་ཡིན་ཆོང་ཆོས་ཐད་ཀར་s ལྷན་ཆོག་ ay/ ey/ oy/ uy

Holiday holidays ('holidayes' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Enjoy enjoys/ enjoyed stay stays/ stayed buy buys key keys

ཡིན་ན་འང་།

Say said pay paid (གཟུགས་འཕྱར་ལས་ཆོག)

### 5.3 -ing

གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་e ཡིན་སྐབས་སྤང་ཆོས་e དེ་མེད་པར་བྱས་ཇེས་ing བསྒྲན་དགོས།

Make making write writing come coming dance dancing

གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ie ཡིན་སྐབས་སྤང་ཆོས་ie དེ་y ཅུ་བསྐྱར་ཇེས་ing བསྒྲན་དགོས།

Lie lying die dying tie tying

### 5.4 stop-stopped/big- bigger སྤྱད་སྤྱད་པ་

དབྱངས་དང་གསལ་བཤད།

དབྱངས། a, e, i, o, u

གསལ་བཤད། b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ཅུ་དབྱངས་གཅིག་དང་གསལ་བཤད་གཅིག་ཡིན་སྐབས་སྤང་ཆོས་ཆོག་མཐའ་

གསལ་བཤད་དེ་ཡང་བསྐྱར་ཐེངས་གཅིག་བྲིས་ཇེས་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྤྱད་སྤྱད་པ་ དཔེར་ན།

V ཡི་དབྱངས་ཡིག་མཆོན།

C ཡི་གསལ་བཤད་མཆོན།

| V + C |      |       |          |          |
|-------|------|-------|----------|----------|
| Stop  | STOP | p -pp | stopping | stopped  |
| Run   | RUN  | n- nn | running  |          |
| Get   | GET  | t -tt | getting  |          |
| Swim  | SWIM | m-mm  | swimming |          |
| Big   | BIG  | g -gg | bigger   | biggest  |
| Hot   | HOT  | t -tt | hotter   | hottest  |
| Thin  | THIN | n- nn | thinner  | thinnest |

(1) གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ཅུ་གསལ་བཤད་གཉིས་ཡོད་ཆོང་ཆོས་ཐད་ཀར་ཅུ་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est

སྤྱད་སྤྱད་པ་

| C+C  |      |         |         |
|------|------|---------|---------|
| He'p | HELP | helping | helped  |
| Work | WORK | working | worked  |
| Fast | FAST | faster  | fastest |

(2) གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་

གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ཅུ་

གསལ་བཤད་གཅིག་དང་དེའི་སྒྲིབ་ཅུ་དབྱངས་ཡིག་གཉིས་ཡོད་

སྐབས་སྤང་ཆོས་ཐད་ཀར་ཅུ་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྤྱད་སྤྱད་པ་



|       | V+V+C |         |          |
|-------|-------|---------|----------|
| Need  | NEED  | needing | needed   |
| Wait  | WAIT  | waiting | waited   |
| Cheap | CHEAP | cheaper | cheapest |

(3) གལ་ཏེ་སློ་ཚིག་ས་གཉིས་ལས་མང་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་དེའི་སླ་ཚྱལ་ཁྱད་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཚོས་

ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྐབས་ཐད་ཀར་དུ་བསྒྲན་ཆོག

|  |                 |                                     |
|--|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| Happed   | HAP – pen       | happing/ happened (not ‘happenned’) |
| Visit  | VIS – it        | visiting/ visited                   |
| Remember   | re- MEM- ber    | remembering/ remembered             |
| གལ་ཏེ་ཚིག་མཐའ་དེའི་སླ་ཚྱལ་ཁྱད་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཚོས་མང་ཚིག་དེའི་ཚིག་མཐའ་དེ་ཡང་བསྐྱར་ཐེངས་གཅིག་བྱས་ཇེས་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྐབས་བསྒྲན་ཆོག |                 |                                     |
|  | prefer per- PER | preferring/ preferred               |
|  | Begin be- GIN   | beginning                           |







(4) གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ནང་w ཡིན་ལ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སླ་དུ་དབྱངས་ཡིག་ཡོད་སྐབས་ང་ཚོས་ing/

-ed/ -er/ -est སྐབས་ཐད་ཀར་དུ་བསྒྲན་ཆོག

Enjoy enjoying/ enjoyed snow/ snowing/ snowed few/ fewer/ fewest



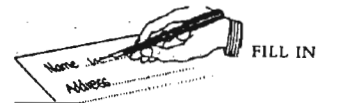



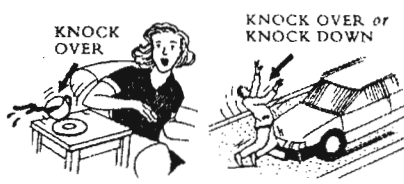
## ཟླ་བ་འོད་ཅུག་ལ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་ས།

|      |   |
|------|---|
| Out  | look out/ watch out གི་གཟུགས་གཟུགས་དང་དྲགས་ཐོན་གྱི་དོན།<br>> Look out! There's car coming!<br>  |
| On   | come on གི་མཆོགས་པོར་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།<br>> Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.<br>Hold on གི་སྐྱག་པའི་དོན། wait:<br>> Can you hold on a minute? (can you wait? ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)<br>Carry on གི་རྒྱུན་འཁྱོངས་སུ་མཐུན་ཏེ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།<br>> Don't stop working. Carry on. ( continue working ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)<br>> A: excuse me, where is the station, please?<br>B: carry on along this road and turn right at the lights. (continue along ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)<br>go on/ walk on/ drive on སྐྱགས་ཀྱི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྐྱུ་མཐུན་ཏེ་སྐྱབ་པའི་དོན།<br>> Don't stop here. Drive on.<br>Get on གི་བདག་གཉེར་རམ་དོན་མཆོག་དོན།<br>How are you getting on in your new job? (are you doing ok? ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)<br> |
| Off  | take off གི་ས་ངོས་དང་བྲལ་བའི་དོན་དེ་གནས་ཁུ་སྐྱོགས་འཕུར་བའི་དོན།<br>The plane took off 20 minutes late but landed on time.<br>   |
| Up   | wake up གི་གཉིད་སང་པའི་དོན།<br>> I often wake up in the middle of the night.<br>Speak up གི་སྐད་མཐོན་པས་བཤད་པའི་དོན།<br>Hurry up གི་མཆོགས་པོར་ལས་པའི་དོན།<br>> Hurry up! We haven't got much time.<br>Wash up གི་ཟ་མ་ཐོས་ཐེས་ལྷོ་མ་སྐྱགས་བུགས་པའི་དོན།<br>> Do you want me to wash up?<br>Grow up གི་ན་ར་སྐྱོན་པའི་དོན།<br>> What does your son want to do when he grow up?<br>Give up གི་སྐྱང་བའམ་དོར་བའི་དོན།<br>> I know it's difficult but don't give up. (don't stop trying ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)<br>  |
| Down | slow down གི་ཉ་ཅང་དལ་མོར་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན། (མཆོགས་ཆད་སྐྱགས་)<br>> You're driving too fast. Slow down.<br>Break down གི་འབྲུལ་འཁོར་སྐྱགས་ཀྱི་ལས་མཆོམས་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན།<br>Sue was very late because her car broke down.<br>   |
| Over | fall over གི་ལ་བྱབ་སྐྱག་པའི་དོན།<br>I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.<br>   |





## ཟླ་བཀོད་བརྒྱན་པ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་ས + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>In</b> fill in (a form) རྟོག་ཆ་མགས་ཆའང་བར་བཅོས་པའམ་ཡང་ན་སྐོང་བའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ Can you fill in this form, please?</p>   |     |
| <p><b>Out</b> put out རྟེ་མེ་སྐག་ས་གསོད་པའི་དོན། (a fire/ a cigarette):</p> <p>➤ The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out.</p> <p>Cross out རྟེ་སྐག་ས་འཐེན་པའི་དོན། (བསུབ་པ)</p> <p>➤ If you make a mistake, cross it out.</p>   |     |
| <p><b>On</b> try on (clothes) རྟོག་པ་སྐག་ས་ཆད་དང་རན་པ་ཡིན་མིན་བརྟག་པའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ (in a shop) this is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?</p>  |   |
| <p><b>Up</b> give up རྟེ་ལས་སྐག་ས་ལས་མཆོམས་བཞག་པའི་དོན། (ལྷུང་བའམ་དྲོར་བ)</p> <p>➤ Tom gave up smoking five years ago. (= he stopped smoking)</p> <p>➤ 'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I gave it up.'</p> <p>Ring up ཁ་པར་བཏང་བའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ Sue rang me up last night. ('Sue rang me last right.' up ཟེད་པར་བཞོལ་བྱུང་ཆོག)</p> <p>Look up རྟེ་མིང་ཆོག་སྐག་ས་ཆོག་མཛད་དུ་འཆོལ་བའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.</p> <p>Turn up རྟེ་བརྟན་འཕྱིན་སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་སྒྲ་ཆེ་བ་བཏང་བའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ Can you turn the radio up? I can't hear it.</p> |   |
| <p><b>Down</b> knock down (a building) རྟེ་ཁང་བ་སྐག་ས་བཞིག་པའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.</p> <p>Turn down རྟེ་བརྟན་འཕྱིན་སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་སྒྲ་ཆུང་བ་བཏང་བའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?</p>  |   |
| <p><b>Away</b> throw away རྟེ་དག་ལྷོག་ས་སྐག་ས་བའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ These apples are bad. Shall throw them away?</p> <p>➤ Don't throw away that picture. I want it.</p> <p>Put away རྟེ་དངོས་བའི་སྐག་ས་ཉར་ཆགས་བྱས་པའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.</p>  |  |
| <p><b>Back</b> pay somebody back རྟེ་དངོས་བའམ་དངུལ་སྐག་ས་བྱིར་སྤྲད་པའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.</p>   |   |
| <p><b>Over</b> knock over རྟེ་མོར་བ་སྐག་ས་སྐྱོག་པའམ་རྒྱང་ཁ་རྒྱབ་པའི་དོན།</p> <p>➤ Be careful. Don't knock your cup over.</p> <p>➤ There was an accident at the end of the road.</p> <p>A man was knocked over by a car. (ཡང་ན་a man was knocked down by a car.)</p>   |   |
| <p><b>Round/</b> show (somebody) round/ around རྟེ་སྐོར་དུ་ཁྱེད་པའི་དོན།</p> <p><b>Around</b> we visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round..</p>   |   |



# ཁྱིམ་ལ་ཕྱག་

## ཁྱེ་ཆོན་ 1

- 1.1  
2 they're  
3 it's not/ it isn't  
4 that's  
5 I'm not  
6 you're not/ you aren't
- 1.2  
2 'm/ am 6 are  
3 is 7 is... are  
4 are 8 'm/ am...is  
5's /is
- 1.3  
2 my brother is a teacher  
3 this house isn't/ is not very big.  
4 the shops aren't/ are not open today.  
5 my keys are in my bag.  
6 Jenny is 18 years old.  
7 you aren't / are not very tall.
- 1.4  
འདྲི་ལྟར་ཁྱིམ་ཆོན་  
1 my name is Robert.  
2 I'm from Australia.  
3 I'm 25  
4 I'm a computer programmer.  
5 I'm married  
6 my favorite colors are black and white.  
7 I'm interested in machines.
- 1.5  
2 they're/ they are cold.  
3 he's / he is hot.  
4 he's / he is afraid.  
5 they're / they are hungry.  
6 she's / she is angry.
- 1.6  
2 I'm/ I am hungry . or I'm not hungry.  
3 it's / it is warm today or it isn't / it is not warm today.  
4 I'm/ I am afraid of dogs. Or I'm not/

- I am not afraid of dogs.  
5 my hands are cold,. Or my hands aren't / are not cold.  
6 Canada is a very big country.  
7 diamonds aren't / are not cheap.  
8 I'm/ I am interested in football.  
Or I'm not/ I am not interested in football.  
9 Rome isn't / is not in Spain.

## ཁྱེ་ཆོན་ 2

- 2.1  
2 f 6 e  
3 h 7 b  
4 c 8 l  
5 a 9 d
- 2.2  
3 is your job interesting?  
4 are the shops open today?  
5 are you interested in spot.  
6 is the post office near here?  
7 are your children at school?  
8 why are you late?
- 2.3  
2 Where is  
3 how old are  
4 how much are  
5 what is  
6 who is  
7 what colour are
- 2.4  
2 are you married or single?  
3 are you American?  
4 how old are you?  
5 are you a teacher?  
6 is your wife a lawyer?  
7 where's/ where is she from?  
8 what's / what is her name?  
9 how old is she?

- 2.5  
2 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.  
3 yes, it is or no, it isn't./ no, it's not.  
4 yes, they are. Or no, they aren't/ no, they're not.  
5 yes, it is. Or no, it isn't ./ it's not.  
6 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.

## ཁྱེ་ཆོན་ 3

- 3.1  
2 's/ is waiting.  
3 're/ are playing.  
4 he's/ he is laying.  
5 they're / they are having.  
6 she's/ she is sitting.
- 3.2  
2 's/ is cooking  
3're/ are standing  
4 is swimming.  
5 're/ are staying  
6 's/ is having  
7 're/ are building  
8 'm/ am going
- 3.3  
3 She's / she is sitting on the floor.  
4 She's not / she isn't reading a book.  
5 She's not/ she isn't playing the piano.  
6 She's / she is laughing.  
7 She's / she is wearing a hat.  
8 She's not/ she isn't writing a letter.
- 3.4  
3. I'm sitting on a chair. Or I'm not sitting on a chair.  
4. I'm eating. Or I'm not eating.  
5 it's raining or it isn't raining/ it's not raining.  
6 I'm learning English.  
7 I'm listening to music. Or I'm not listening to music.  
8 the sun is shining. Or the sun isn't shining.  
9 I'm wearing shoes. Or I'm not wearing shoes.  
10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

## ཁྱེ་ཆོན་ 4

- 4.1  
2 are you going now?  
3 is it raining?  
4 are you enjoying the film?  
5 is that lock working?  
6 are you writing a letter?



4.2  
2 where is she going?  
3 what are you eating?  
4 are you enjoying the film?  
5 is that clock working?  
6 are you writing a letter?

4.2  
2 where is she going?  
3 what are you eating?  
4 why are you crying?  
5 what are they looking at?  
6 why is he laughing?

4.3  
3 are you listening to me?  
4 where are your friends going?  
5 are your parents watching television?  
6 what is Ann cooking?  
7 why are you looking at me?  
8 is the bus coming?

4.4  
2 yes, I am or no, I'm not.  
3 yes, I am or no, I'm not.  
4 yes, it is. Or no, it isn't/ no, it's not.  
5 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.  
6 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 5

5.1  
2 thanks 5 has  
3 flies 6 finishes  
4 dances  
5.2  
2 live 5 they go  
3 she eats 6 he sleeps  
4 they play  
5.3  
2 open 7 costs  
3 closes 8 cost  
4 teachers 9 boils  
5 meet 10 like... likes  
6 washes  
5.4  
2 I often play basketball.  
3 Margaret usually works hard.

4 Jenny always wears nice clothes.  
5 we always have dinner at 7.30.  
6 Tim never watches television.  
7 children usually like chocolate.  
8 Julia always enjoys parties.  
5.5  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད་  
2 I usually read in bed.  
3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.  
4 I never go to work by bus.  
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 6

6.1  
2 Jane doesn't play the piano very well.  
3 they don't know my phone number.  
4 we don't work very hard.  
5 he doesn't have a bath every day.  
6 you don't do the same thing every day.  
6.2  
2 Carol doesn't like classical music. I like (or I don't like) classical music.  
3 Bill and Rose don't like boxing. Carol likes boxing. I like ( or I don't like) boxing.  
4 Bill and Rose like horror films. Carol doesn't like horror films. I like (or I don't like) horror films.  
6.3  
2-5 you can use:  
I never ... (go/ ride etc. ) or I often ... or I don't ... very often.  
6.4  
2 doesn't use  
3 don't go  
4 doesn't wear  
5 don't know  
6 doesn't cost  
7 don't see  
6.5  
2 don't know  
3 doesn't talk  
4 drinks

5 don't believe  
6 like  
7 doesn't eat  
ཞེ་ཚན་ 7  
7.1  
2 do you play tennis?  
3 does Ann play tennis?  
4 do your friends live near here?  
5 does your brother speak English?  
6 do you do exercises every morning?  
7 does Paul often go away?  
8 do you want to be famous?  
9 does Linda work hard?  
7.2  
3 how often do you watch TV?  
4 what do you want for dinner?  
5 do you like football?  
6 does your brother like football?  
7 what do you do in the evening?  
8 where does your sister work?  
9 do you often go to the cinema?  
10 what does this word mean?  
11 does it often snow here?  
12 what time do you usually go to bed?  
13 how much does it cost to phone New York?  
14 what do you usually have for breakfast?  
7.3  
2 do you enjoy/ do you like  
3 do you start  
4 do you work  
5 do you go  
6 does he do  
7 does he teach  
8 does he enjoy/ does he like  
7.4  
2 yes, I do. Or no, I don't.  
3 yes, I do. Or no, I don't  
4 yes, it does. Or no, it doesn't  
5 yes, I do. Or no, I don't.  
ཞེ་ཚན་ 8  
8.1



|                                       |   |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 2 no, she isn't.                      | 7 what kind of car has Julia got?             | 10.2                              |
| yes, she does.                        | Or ... does Julia have?                       | 2 is ... was 6 are                |
| She's playing the piano.              | 9.3   | 3 am 7 was                        |
| 3 yes, he does.                       | 2 Tina hasn't got a bicycle./ Tina            | 4 was 8 was                       |
| Yes, he is.                           | doesn't have a bicycle.                       | 5 were 9 are.. were               |
| He's cleaning a window.               | I've got a bicycle./ I have a bicycle.        | 10.3                              |
| 4 no, they aren't.                    | Or I haven't got a bicycle. / I don't         | 2 wasn't ... was                  |
| Yes, they aren't.                     | have a bicycle.                               | 3 was...were                      |
| They teach.                           | 3 Tin has got long hair./ Tina has long       | 4 were... was... wasn't           |
| 8.2                                   | hair.   | 5 were                            |
| 2 don't 6 do                          | I've got long hair./ I have long hair.        | 6 weren't ... were                |
| 3 are 7 does                          | Or I haven't got long hair./ I don't          | 10.4                              |
| 4 does 8 doesn't                      | have long hair.                               | 2 was your exam difficult?        |
| 5 's/is ... don't                     | 4 Tina has got two sisters and two            | 3 where were Ann and Chris last   |
| 8.3                                   | brothers./ Tina has two... (འདི་ལྟར་བློ་བྲིས་ | week?                             |
| 4 is singing                          | ཆོག) I've got two brothers and one            | 4 how much was your new camera?   |
| 5 she wants                           | sister.                                       | 5 why were you angry yesterday?   |
| 6 do you read                         | 9.4   | 6 was the weather nice last week? |
| 7 you're/ you are sitting             | 3 's got / has got                            |                                   |
| 8 I don't understand                  | 4 haven't got                                 | ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 11                       |
| 9 I'm going... are you coming         | 5 've got/ have got                           | 11.1                              |
| 10 does your father                   | 6 haven't got                                 | 2 opened                          |
| 11 I'm not listening                  | 7 hasn't got                                  | 3 started... finished             |
| 12 he's/ he is cooking                | 9.5   | 4 wanted                          |
| 13 doesn't usually drive ... usually  | 3 have got four wheels (or have four          | 5 happened                        |
| walks.                                | wheels)                                       | 6 rained                          |
| 14 doesn't like... she prefers        | 4 's got/ has got a lot of friends (or has    | 7 enjoyed... stayed               |
|                                       | a lot of friends)                             | 8 died                            |
| ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 9                            | 5 've got/ have got a toothache. (or          | 11.2                              |
| 9.1                                   | have a toothache)                             | 2 saw 8 thought                   |
| 2 he's got                            | 6 hasn't got a key (or doesn't have a         | 3 played 9 copied                 |
| 3 they've got                         | key)  | 4 paid 10 knew                    |
| 4 they've got                         | 7 has got six legs (or has six legs)          | 5 visited 11 put                  |
| 5 it's got                            | 8 haven't got much time (or don't             | 6 bought 12 spoke                 |
| 6 I haven't got                       | have much time)                               | 7 went                            |
| 9.2                                   |   | 11.3                              |
| 2 have you got a passport? Or do you  | ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 10                                   | 2 got 9 had                       |
| have...?                              | 10.1  | 3 had 10 went                     |
| 3 has your father got a car? Or does  | 2 Carol and Jack were at / in the             | 4 left 11 waited                  |
| your father have...?                  | cinema.                                       | 5 drove 12 departed               |
| 4 has Carol got many friends? Or does | 3 Sue was at the station.                     | 6 arrived 13 arrived              |
| Carol have...?                        | 4 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in/ at a             | 7 parked 14 took                  |
| 5 have you got any brother or sister? | restaurant.                                   | 8 went                            |
| Or do you have ...?                   | 5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach/          | 11.4                              |
| 6 how much money have we got?         | at the seaside.,                              | 2 lost her keys                   |
| Or ... do we have?                    | 6 (འདི་ལྟར་བློ་བྲིས་ཆོག) I was at work.       | 3 met her friends                 |



4 bought two newspapers.

5 went to the cinema

6 ate an orange

7 had a shower

8 came (to see us)

11.5

འདྲི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེན།

2 I got up late yesterday.

3 I met some friends at lunchtime.

4 I played volleyball.

5 I wrote a letter.

6 I lost my keys.

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 12

12.1

2 didn't work

3 didn't go

4 didn't have

5 didn't do

12.2

2 did you enjoy the party?

3 did you have a good holiday?

4 did you finish work early?

5 did you sleep well last night?

12.3

2 I got up before 7 o'clock. Or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.

3 I had a shower. Or I didn't have a shower.

4 I bought a magazine. Or I didn't buy a magazine.

5 I ate meat. Or I didn't eat meat.

6 I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4

2 did you arrive

3 did you win

4 did you go

5 did it cost

6 did you go to bed late

7 did you have a nice time

8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

2 bought

3 did it rain

4 didn't stay

5 opened

6 didn't have

7 did you do

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 13

13.1

2 Carol and Jack were at / in the cinema. They were watching a film.

3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.

4 Catherine was at the station. She was waiting for a train.

5 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in the park. They were walking.

6 I was in café. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2

2 the was swimming/ she was having a swim.

3 she was reading a / the newspaper

4 she was cooking (lunch)

5 she was having breakfast.

6 she was listening to music/ listening to the radio.

13.3

2 what were you doing

3 was it raining

4 why was Ann driving so fast

5 was Tim wearing suit

13.4

2 he was carrying a bag

3 he wasn't going to the dentist.

4 he was eating an ice-cream.

5 he wasn't carrying an umbrella

6 he was't going home.

7 he was wearing a hat

8 he wasn't riding a bicycle

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 14

14.1

1 happened ... was painting ... fell

2 arrived... got... were waiting

3 was walking ... met... was going ... was carrying... stopped

14.2

2 was studying

3 did the post arrive ... came ... was

having

4 didn't go

5 were you driving... stopped ... wasn't driving

6 did your team win ... didn't play

7 did you break the window... were playing ... kicked... hit

8 did you see ... was wearing

9 were you doing

10 lost.. did you get ... climbed

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 15

15.1

2 she has closed the door

3 they have gone to bed

4 it has stopped raining

5 he has had a bath

6 the picture has fallen down

15.2

2 've bought / have bought

3 's gone/ has gone

4 have you seen

5 has broken

6 've told / have told

7 has taken

8 has she gone

9 've forgotten/ have forgotten

10 's invited/ has invited

11 have you decided

12 haven't seen

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 16

16.1

2 he's / he has just got up

3 they've/ they have just bought a car.

4 the race has just started

16.2

2 they've/ they have already seen it.

3 I've/ I have already phoned him

4 he's / he has already gone (away)

5 I've / I have already read it

6 she's / she has already started (it)

16.3

2 the bus has just gone

3 the bus hasn't gone yet

4 he hasn't opened it yet



5 they've they have just finished their dinner

6 it hasn't stopped raining yet

16.4

2 have you met your new neighbors yet?

3 have you written the letter yet?

4 has he / Tom sold his car yet?

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 17

17.1

3 have you ever been to Australia?

4 have you ever lost your passport?

5 have you ever flown in a helicopter?

6 have you ever eaten Chinese food?

7 have you ever been to New York?

8 have you ever driven a bus?

9 have you ever broken your leg?

17.2

Helen

2 Helen has never been to Australia

3 Helen/ she has eaten Chinese food a few times.

4 Helen/ she has never driven a bus.

You (example answers):

5 I've/ I have never been to New York

6 I've/ I have played tennis many times

7 I've/ I have never flown in a helicopter.

8 I've/ I have been late for work a few times.

17.3

2-6

She has done a lot of interesting things.

She has traveled all over the world. Or she has been all over the world.

She has been married three times.

She has written ten books.

She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4

2 gone

3 been... been

4 been

5 gone

6 been

7 been

8 gone

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 18

18.1

3 have been

4 has been

5 have lived/ have been living

6 has worked/ has been working

7 has had

8 have been learning

18.2

2 how long have they been there / in Brazil

3 how long have you known her?

4 how long has she been learning Italian?

5 how long has he lived in Canada? / how long has he been living...?

6 how long have you been a teacher?

7 how long has it been raining?

18.3

2 she has lived in Wales all her life.

3 they have been on holiday since Sunday.

4 the sun has been shining all day

5 she has been waiting for ten minutes.

6 he has had a beard since he was 20

18.4

2 know

3 have know

4 have you been

5 works

6 has been

7 have you lived

8 I've had

9 is... has been

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 19

19.1

3 for 6 for

4 since 7 for

5 since 8 for... Sincerely yours,

19.2

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག

2 a year ago

3 a few days ago

4 two hours ago

5 six months ago

19.3

3 for 20 years

4 20 years ago

5 ten minutes ago

6 an hour ago

7 for six months

8 for a long time

9 a few days ago

19.4

2 been here since Tuesday.

3 raining for an hour

4 known Sue for two years

5 had my/ a camera since 1989

6 been married for six months

7 been studying medicine (at university) for three years.

8 played / been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག

1 I've lived in ... all my life.

2 I've been in the same job for ten years.

3 I've been learning English for six months

4 I've known Chris for a long time.

5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 20

20.1

2 I started (it) last week.

3 they arrived at 5 o'clock

4 she went (away) on Friday.

5 I wore them yesterday.

20.2

3 WRONG – I finished

4 RIGHT

5 WRONG – did you ...



|                                  |   |                        |
|----------------------------------|---|------------------------|
| 6 RIGHT                          | 6 how many languages are spoken...                              | 6 is 10 are            |
| 7 WRONG – Jim's grandmother died | 7 ... but nothing was stolen                                    | 23.2                   |
| 8 WRONG – where were you         | 8 when was the bicycle invented?                                | 2 don't 6 doesn't      |
| 20.3                             | 21.3  | 3'm/ am not 7'm/am not |
| 3 played                         | 3 is made   | 4 isn't 8 aren't       |
| 4 did you go                     | 4 were damaged  | 5 don't                |
| 5 have you ever met              | 5 was given   | 23.3                   |
| 6 wasn't                         | 6 are shown   | 2 did 7 were           |
| 7 've / have just washed         | 7 were invited  | 3 were 8 has           |
| 8 washed                         | 8 was made  | 4 was 9 did            |
| 9 's/ has visited                | 9 was stolen ... was found                                      | 5 has 10 have          |
| 10 hasn't come                   | 21.4  | 6 did                  |
| 20.4                             | 2 Sally was born in Birmingham                                  | 23.4                   |
| 1 Did you have                   | 3 her parents were born in Ireland                              | 2 was6 've/ have       |
| Was                              | 4 I was born in ...   | 3 have 7 is            |
| 2 have you seen                  | 5 my mother was born in ...                                     | 4 are 8 was            |
| Went                             |   | 5 were 9 has           |
| Haven't seen                     |   | 23.5                   |
| 3 has worked/ has been working   | 22.1  | 3 eaten                |
| Was                              | 2 a bridge is being built                                       | 4 enjoying             |
| Worked                           | 3 the window are being cleaned                                  | 5 damaged              |
| Didn't enjoy                     | 4 the grass is being cut  | 6 use                  |
| 4 've/ have never spoken met     | 22.2  | 7 gone away            |
|                                  | 3 the window has been broken.                                   | 8 understand           |
|                                  | 4 the roof is being repaired                                    | 9 listening            |
|                                  | 5 the car has been damaged                                      | 10 pronounced          |
|                                  | 6 the housed are being knocked down                             | 11 open                |
|                                  | 7 the trees have been cut down                                  |                        |
|                                  | 8 they have been invited to a party                             |                        |
|                                  | 22.3  | 24.1                   |
|                                  | 3 has been repaired   | 3 got                  |
|                                  | 4 was repaired  | 4 brought              |
|                                  | 5 are made  | 5 paid                 |
|                                  | 6 were they built   | 6 enjoyed              |
|                                  | 7 is the computer being used (or is anybody using the computer) | 7 bought               |
|                                  | 8 are they called   | 8 sat                  |
|                                  | 9 were blown  | 9 left                 |
|                                  | 10 was damaged ... hasn't been repaired                         | 10 happened            |
|                                  |   | 11 heard               |
|                                  |   | 12 put                 |
|                                  |   | 13 caught              |
|                                  |   | 14 watched             |
|                                  |   | 15 understood          |
|                                  |   | 24.2                   |
|                                  |   | 2 began begun          |
|                                  |   | 3 ate eaten            |

ཐེ་ཚན 22

ཐེ་ཚན 21

ཐེ་ཚན 24

ཐེ་ཚན 23



4 drank drunk  
5 drove driven  
6 ran run  
7 spoke spoken  
8 wrote written  
9 came come  
10 knew know  
11 took taken  
12 went gone  
13 gave given  
14 threw thrown  
15 forgot forgotten  
24.3  
3 slept  
4 saw  
5 rained  
6 lost... seen  
7 stolen  
8 went  
9 finished  
10 built  
11 learnt/ learned  
12 ridden  
13 known  
14 fell... hurt  
24.4  
2 told  
3 won  
4 met  
5 woken up  
6 swam  
7 thought  
8 spoken  
9 cost  
10 driven  
11 sold  
12 flew

### ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 25

25.1  
2 he used to play football  
3 she used to be a taxi driver  
4 they used to live in the country  
5 he used to wear glasses  
6 this building used to be a hotel  
25.2

2-5  
She used to play volleyball  
She used to go out most  
Evenings/ she used to go out in the  
evenings  
She used to play the guitar  
She used to read a lot/ she used to like  
reading  
She used to go away two or three  
times a year/ she used to travel a lot.  
25.3  
3 used to have  
4 used to be  
5 go  
6 used to eat  
7 watches  
8 used to live  
9 get  
10 did you use to play

### ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 26

26.1  
2 Richard is going to the cinema.  
3 Barbara is meeting Dave  
4 Denise is having lunch with ken  
5 tom and sue are going to a party  
26.2  
2 are you working next week?  
3 what are you doing tomorrow  
evening?  
4 what time are your friends arriving?  
5 when is Liz going on holiday?  
26.3  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།  
3 I'm going away at the weekend  
4 I'm playing basketball  
5 I'm meeting a friend this evening  
6 I'm going to the cinema in Thursday  
evening  
26.4  
3 she's getting  
4 are going ... are they going  
5 finishes  
6 I'm not going  
7 I'm going ... we're meeting  
8 are you getting ... leaves

9 does the film begin  
10 are you doing... I'm working

### ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 27

27.1  
2 I'm going to buy a newspaper  
3 we're going to play football  
4 I'm going to have a bath  
27.2  
3 'm /am going to walk  
4 's/is going to stay  
5 'm/am going to eat  
6 're/ are going to give  
7 's/is going to lie down  
8 are you going to watch  
9 is Rachel going to do  
27.3  
2 the shelf is going go fall (down)  
3 the car is going to turn (left)  
4 he's / he is going to kick the ball  
27.4  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།  
1 I'm going to phone Ann this evening  
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes  
tomorrow

### ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 28

28.1  
2 she'll be 5 she's  
3 she was 6 she was  
4 she'll be 7 she'll be  
28.2  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།  
2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.  
28.3  
2'll /will 5 'll/ will  
3 won't 6 'll/will  
4 won't 7 won't  
28.4  
3 I think we'll win the game.  
4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.  
5 I think Sue will like her present.





6 I don't think they'll get married.  
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.  
28.5  
2 are you doing  
3 they're going  
4 she'll lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 he's working  
8 will

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 29

29.1  
2 I'll send 5 I'll do  
3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay  
4 I'll sit 7 I'll show  
29.2  
2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play.  
4 I don't think I'll buy  
29.3  
2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give  
7 are you doing ... I'm going  
29.4  
2 shall turn off the television?  
3 shall make some sandwiches?  
4 shall turn on the light?  
29.5  
2 where shall we go?  
3 what shall we buy  
4 who shall we invite?

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 30

30.1  
2 I might see you tomorrow.  
3 Ann might forget to phone  
4 it might snow today  
5 I might be late tonight.  
6 Mary might not be here.  
7 I might not have time to meet you.  
30.2  
2 I might go away

3 I might see her on Monday  
4 I might have fish  
5 I might get/ take a taxi. Or ... go by taxi.  
6 I might buy a new car.  
30.3  
3 he might get early.  
4 he isn't/ he's not working tomorrow  
5 he might be at home tomorrow morning.  
6 he might watch television  
7 he's going out in the afternoon.  
8 he might go shopping  
30.4  
Example answers:  
1 I might read a newspaper  
2 I might go for a drink with some friends.  
3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 31

31.1  
2 can you ski?  
3 can you play chess?  
4 can you run ten kilometers?  
5 can you drive?  
6 can you ride a horse?  
7 I can/ can't swim.  
8 I can/ can't ski  
9 I can/can't play chess.  
10 I can/ can't run ten kilometers.  
11 I can/ can't drive.  
12 I can/ can't ride a horse.  
31. 2  
2 can see 4 can't find  
3 can't hear 5 can speak  
31.3

2 couldn't eat  
3 can't decide  
4 couldn't find  
5 can't go  
6 couldn't go  
31.4  
2 can / could you pass the salt, (please)?  
3 can / could you turn off the radio.

(please)?  
4 can/ could I have tomato soup, (please)?  
5 can / could you give me your phone number, (please)?  
6 can/ could I borrow your pen, (please)?  
Can/ could you lend me...?

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 32

32.1  
2 must meet  
3 must wash  
4 must learn  
5 must go  
6 must win  
7 must be  
32.2  
2 I must 5 I had to  
3 I had to 6 I had to  
4 I must 7 I must  
32.3  
2 needn't hurry  
3 mustn't lose  
4 needn't wait  
5 mustn't forget  
6 needn't write  
32.4  
2 C 4 E  
3 A 5 B  
32.5  
3 needn't 7 must  
4 had to 8 had to  
5 must 9 needn't  
6 mustn't

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 33

33.1  
2 you should go  
3 you should clean  
4 you should visit  
5 you should wear  
6 you should take  
33.2  
2 he shouldn't eat so much.  
3 she shouldn't work so hard.





9 there was  
10 there weren't  
37.3  
2 there are  
3 there was  
4 there's / there is  
5 there's/ there has been  
6 there was  
7 there will be  
8 there were ... there are  
9 there have been  
10 there will be (or there are)  
  
ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 38  
38.1  
2 it's cold  
3 it's windy  
4 It's sunny/ fine  
5 it's snowing  
6 it's cloudy.  
38.2  
2 it's / it is  
3 is it  
4 is it ... it's/ it is  
5 it's / it is  
6 is it  
7 is it  
8 it's/ it is  
9 it's / it is  
38.3  
2 how far is it from the hotel to the beach?  
3 how far is it from New York to Washington?  
4 how far is it from your house to the airport?  
38.4  
3 it 6 it  
4 there 7 there  
5 it 8 it  
38.5  
2 it's nice to see you again  
3 it's impossible to work in this office  
4 It's easy to make friends.  
5 it's interesting to visit different places

6 it's dangerous to go out alone  
  
ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 39  
39.1  
2 is 5 will  
3 can 6 was  
4 has  
39.2  
2'm not 5 isn't  
3 weren't 6 hasn't  
4 haven't  
39.3  
3 doesn't 6 does  
4 do 7 don't  
5 did 8 didn't  
39.4  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས་  
2 I like sport but my sister doesn't  
3 I don't eat meat but Jenny does  
4 I'm American but my husband isn't  
5 I haven't been to Japan but jenny has  
39.5  
2 wasn't 7 has  
3 are 8 do  
4 has 9 hasn't  
5 can't 10 will  
6 did 11 might  
39.6  
2 yes, I have. Or no, I haven't.  
3 yes, I do. Or no, I don't.  
4 yes, it is. Or no, it isn't.  
5 yes, I am. Or no, I am not.  
6 yes, I do. Or no, I don't  
7 yes, I will. Or no, I won't.  
8 yes, I have. Or no, I haven't.  
9 yes, I did. Or no, I didn't.  
10 yes, I was. Or no, I wasn't.

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 40

40.1  
2 do you? 5 do I ?  
3 didn't you? 6 did she?  
4 doesn't she?  
40.2  
3 have you?

4 can't she?  
5 were you?  
6 didn't you?  
7 is there?  
8 aren't you?  
9 did you?  
10 does she?  
11 won't you?  
12 isn't it?  
40.3  
2 aren't they  
3 wasn't she  
4 haven't you  
5 don't you  
6 doesn't he  
7 won't you  
40.4  
2 are you  
6 didn't she  
3 isn't she 7 was it  
4 can't you 8 doesn't she  
5 do you? 9 will you?

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 41

41.1  
2 either 5 either  
3 too 6 either  
4 too 7 too  
41.2  
2 so am I.  
3 so have I.  
4 so do I.  
5 so will I.  
6 so was I.  
7 neither can I.  
8 neither did I.  
9 neither have I.  
10 neither am I.  
11 neither do I.  
41.3  
1 so am I.  
2 so can I. or I can't.  
3 neither am I. or I am.  
4 so do I. or I don't.  
5 neither do I. or I do.  
6 so did I. or I didn't.



- 7 neither have I . or I have.
- 8 neither do I . I do.
- 9 so am I . or I'm not.
- 10 neither have I . or I have.
- 11 neither did I . or I did.
- 12 so do I . or I don't.

### ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 42

42.1

- 2 they aren't / they're not married.
- 3 I haven't had dinner.
- 4 it isn't cold today.
- 5 we won't be late.
- 6 you shouldn't go.

42.2

- 2 I don't like cheese.
- 3 they didn't understand.
- 4 he doesn't live here.
- 5 don't go away!
- 6 I didn't do the shopping.

42.3

- 2 they haven't arrived.
- 3 I didn't go to the bank.
- 4 he doesn't speak German.
- 5 we weren't angry.
- 6 he won't be pleased.
- 7 don't phone me tonight.
- 8 it didn't rain yesterday.
- 9 I couldn't hear them.
- 10 I don't believe you.

42.4

- 2 'm not/ am not
- 3 can't
- 4 doesn't
- 5 isn't/ 's not
- 6 don't ... haven't
- 7 don't
- 8 didn't
- 9 haven't
- 10 won't
- 11 didn't
- 12 weren't

42.5

- 3 he wasn't born in London.
- 4 he doesn't like London.
- 5 he'd like to live in the country.

6 he can drive.

7 he hasn't got a car.

8 he doesn't read newspapers.

9 he isn't interested in politics.

10 he watches TV most evenings.

11 he didn't watch TV last night,

12 he went out last night.

### ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 43

43.1

- 3 were you late this morning.
- 4 has Ann got a key?
- 5 will you be here tomorrow?
- 6 is Paul going out this evening?
- 7 do you like your job?
- 8 does Linda live near here?
- 9 did you have a shower this morning?

43.2

- 2 do you use it a lot?
- 3 did you use it yesterday?
- 4 do you enjoy driving?
- 5 are you a good driver?
- 6 have you ever had an accident?

43.3

- 3 what are the children doing?
- 4 how is cheese made?
- 5 is your sister coming to the party?
- 6 why don't you tell the truth?
- 7 have your guests arrive yet?
- 8 what time does your train leave?
- 9 was your car damaged in the accident?
- 10 why didn't Ann go to work?

43.4

- 3 what are you reading?
- 4 what time did she go (to bed)?
- 5 when are they going?
- 6 where did you meet him?
- 7 where has she gone?
- 8 why can't you come (to the party)?
- 9 how much do you need?
- 10 why doesn't she like you?
- 11 how often does it rain?
- 12 when did you do the shopping?

### ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 44

44.1

- 2 what fell off the shelf?
- 3 who wants to see me?
- 4 who took your umbrella?
- 5 what make you ill?
- 6 who is / who's coming?

44.2

- 3 who did you phone?
- 4 what happened last night?
- 5 who knows the answer?
- 6 Who did the washing-up?
- 7 what did Jill do?
- 8 what woke you up?
- 9 who saw the accident?
- 10 who did you see?
- 11 who has got/ who's got your pen?
- 12 what does this word mean?

44.3

- 2 who phoned you?
- What did she want?
- 3 who did you ask?
- What did he say?
- 4 who got married?
- Who told you?
- 5 who did you meet?
- What did she tell you?
- 6 who won?
- What did you do (after the game)?
- 7 who gave you a book?
- What did Catherine give you?

### ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 45

45.1

- 2 what are you looking for?
  - 3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
  - 4 What/ who was the film about?
  - 5 who did you give the money to?
  - 6 who was the book written by?
- 45.2
- 2 what are they looking at?
  - 3 who is he writing to?
  - 4 what are they talking about?
  - 5 what is she listening to?
  - 6 which bus are they waiting for?



- 45.3  
2 which hotel did you stay at?  
3 which (football) team does he play for?  
4 which school did you go to?  
45.4  
What is the food like?  
3 what are the people like?  
4 what is the weather like?  
45.5  
2 What was the film like?  
3 What were the lessons like?  
4 What was the hotel like?

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 46

- 46.1  
3 what colour is it?  
4 what time did you get up?  
5 what type of music do you like?  
6 what kind of car do you want (to buy)?  
46.2  
2 which coat  
3 which film  
4 which bus  
46.3  
3 which 8 who  
4 what 9 what  
5 which 10 which  
6 what 11 what  
7 which  
46.4  
2 how far  
3 how old  
4 how often  
5 how deep  
6 how long  
46.5  
2 how heavy is this box?  
3 how old are you?  
4 how much did you spend?  
5 how often do you watch TV?  
6 how far is it from Paris to Moscow?

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 47

47.1

- 2 how long does it take by car from Rome to Milan?  
3 how long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?  
4 how long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?  
47.2  
འདི་ལྟར་བྱིས་ཚུགས་  
2 it takes ... hours to fly from... to new York.  
3 it takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...  
4 it takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.  
5 it takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

- 47.3  
2 how long did it take you to walk to the station/  
3 how long did it take him to clean the windows?  
4 how long did it take you to learn to ski?  
5 how long did it take them to repair the car/  
47.4  
2 it took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.  
3 it took me six months to learn to drive.  
4 it took Mark / him two hours to drive to London.  
5 it took Linda a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.  
6 it took me ... to ...

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 48

- 48.1  
2 I don't know where she is.  
3 I don't know how old it is.  
4 I don't know when he'll be here.  
5 I don't know why he was angry.  
6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

48.2

- 2 where Susan works

- 3 what Peter said  
4 why he went home early  
5 what time the film begins  
6 how the accident happened  
48.3  
2 are you  
3 they are  
4 the museum is  
5 do you want  
6 elephants eat  
48.4  
2 do you know if/ whether they are married?  
3 do you know if / whether Sue knows Bill?

- 4 do you know if / whether George will be here tomorrow?  
5 do you know if/ whether he passed his exam?  
48.5  
2 do you know where Paula is?  
3 do you know if / whether she is working today?/ ... she's working today?  
4 do you know what time she starts work?  
5 do you know if/ whether the shop are open tomorrow?  
6 do you know where Sarah and Tim live?

- 7 do you know if/ whether they went to Ann's party?  
48.6  
འདི་ལྟར་བྱིས་ཚུགས་

- 2 do you know what time the bus leaves?  
3 excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?  
4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.  
5 do you know if tom is working today?

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 49

49.1

- 2 she said (that) she was very busy.



|   |                      |   |
|---|----------------------|---|
| 3 she said (that) she couldn't go to the party.                                       | 50-2                 | 5 to send   |
| 4 he said (that) he had to go out.  | 3 get                | 6 walking   |
| 5 he said (that) he was learning Russian.   | 4 going              | 7 to lose   |
| 6 she said (that) she didn't feel very well.  | 5 watch              | 8 to help   |
| 7 they said (that) they would be home late./ ... they'd be...                         | 6 flying             | 9 to go   |
| 8 she said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back...  | 7 listening          | 10 watching / to watch  |
| 9 she said (that) she was going to buy a computer.                                    | 8 eat                | 11 to wait  |
| 10 they said (that) they hadn't got a key. / they said (that) they didn't have a key. | 9 waiting            | 12 raining  |
| 49.2  | 10 wear              | 51.3  |
| 2 she said (that) she wasn't hungry.  | 11 doing ... staying | 2 going / to go museums.  |
| 3 he said (that) he needed it.  | 50.3                 | 3 writing / go write letters.   |
| 4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.  | 4 to go              | 4 to go (there)   |
| 5 she said (that) I could have it.  | 5 rain               | 5 traveling by train  |
| 6 he said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send...                      | 6 to leave           | 6 going to ... go eat at  |
| 7 Linda said (that) he had gone home./ ... he'd gone home.                            | 7 help               | 51.4  |
| 8 he said (that) he wanted to watch TV.   | 8 studying           | འདི་ལྟར་བྱས་ཆོག   |
| 9 she said (that) she was going to the cinema.  | 9 to go              | 1 I enjoy cooking   |
| 49.3  | 10 wearing           | 2 I don't like driving  |
| 3 said 7 said   | 11 to stay           | 3 if it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake. |
| 4 told 8 told   | 12 have              | 4 when I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.                      |
| 5 tell 9 tell   | 13 having            | 5 I don't mind travelling alone but I prefer to travel with somebody. |
| 6 say 10 say  | 14 to have           | 6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.                              |
|   | 15 hear              |   |
|   | 16 go                | ཞེ་ཆོན་ 52  |
|   | 17 listening         | 52.1  |
|   | 18 to make           | 2 I want you to listen carefully.                                     |
|   | 19 to know... tell   | 3 I don't want you to be angry  |
|   | 20 use               | 4 do you want me to wait for you?                                     |
|   |                      | 5 I don't want you to phone me tonight                                |
|   |                      | 6 I want you to meet Sarah.   |
|   |                      | 52.2  |
|   |                      | 2 a woman told me to turn left after the bridge                       |
|   |                      | 3 I advised him to go to the doctor                                   |
|   |                      | 4 she asked me to help her.   |
|   |                      | 5 I told Tom to come back in ten minutes                              |
|   |                      | 6 Paul let me use his phone   |
|   |                      | 7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock                            |
|   |                      | 8 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.                          |

ཞེ་ཆོན་ 51

ཞེ་ཆོན་ 50

252



### ཆེ་མཆན་ 57

57.1

3 he hasn't got / he doesn't have

4 George had

5 have you got / do you have

6 we didn't have

7 she hasn't got/ she doesn't have

8 did you have

57.2

2 she's/ she is having a cup of tea.

3 he's / he is having a rest.

4 they're / they are having a nice time

5 they're they are having dinner

6 he's / he is having a bath

57.3

2 have a nice / good journey!

3 did you have a nice / good weekend?

4 did you have a nice / good game (of tennis)?

5 have a nice / good meal!

57.4

2 have something to eat

3 had a glass or water

4 have a walk

5 had an accident

6 have a look

### ཆེ་མཆན་ 58

58.1

2 him 5 him

3 them 6 them

4 her 7 her

58.2

2 I ... them

3 he ... her

4 they ... us

5 we ... him

6 she ... them

7 they ... me

8 she ... you

58.3

2 I like him

3 I don't like it

4 do you like it?

5 I don't like her

6 do you like them?

58.4

2 him 7 them

3 them 8 me

4 they 9 her

5 us 10 he ... it

6 she

58.5

2 can you give it to him?

3 can you give them to her?

4 can you give it to me?

5 can you give it to them?

6 can you give them to us?

### ཆེ་མཆན་ 59

59.1

2 her hands

3 our hands

4 his hands

5 their hands

6 your hands

59.2

2 they live with their parents.

3 we live with our parents.

4 Julia lives with her parents.

5 I live with my parents.

6 John lives with his parents.

7 do you live with your parents?

8 most children live with their parents.

59.3

2 their 6 their

3 their 7 her

4 his 8 their

5 her

59.4

2 his 8 her

3 their 9 their

4 our 10 my

5 her 11 its

6 my 12 his ... his

7 your

59.5

2 my key

3 her husband

4 your coat

5 their homework

6 his name

7 our house

### ཆེ་མཆན་ 60

60.1

2 mine 6 yours

3 ours 7 mine

4 hers 8 his

5 their

60.2

2 yours

3 my ... Mine

4 yours ... mine

5 her

6 my ... hers

7 their

8 ours

60.3

3 of hers

4 friends of ours

5 friend of mine

6 friend of his

7 friends or yours

60.4

2 whose camera is this? It's hers.

3 whose gloves are these? They're mine.

4 whose hat is this? It's his.

5 whose money is this? It's yours.

6 whose books are these? They're ours.

### ཆེ་མཆན་ 61

61.1

2 yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.

3 yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.

4 yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

61.2

2 to stay with him at his house

3 to stay with them at their house

4 to stay with me at my house

5 to stay with her at her house





6 to stay with you at your house?  
61.3  
2 I give her my address and she gave me hers.  
3 he gave me his address and I gave him mine.  
4 we gave them our address and they gave us theirs.  
5 she gave him her address and he gave her his.  
6 you gave us your address and we gave you ours.  
7 they gave you their address and you gave them yours.  
61.4  
2 them  
3 him  
4 our  
5 yours  
6 us  
7 her  
8 their  
9 mine

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 62

62.1  
2 myself 6 himself  
3 herself 7 yourself  
4 themselves 8 yourselves  
5 myself  
62.2  
2 when I saw him. he was by himself.  
3 don't go out by yourself  
4 I went to the cinema by myself  
5 my sister lives by herself  
6 many people live by themselves.  
62.3  
2 they can't see each other  
3 they often write to each other  
4 they don't know each other  
5 they're / they are sitting next to each other.  
6 they gave each other presents/ a present.  
62.4  
3 each other

4 yourselves  
5 us  
6 ourselves  
7 each other  
8 each other  
9 them  
10 themselves

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 63

63.1  
3 Mary is Brian's wife  
4 James is Julia's brother.  
5 James is Daniel's uncle.  
6 Julia is Paul's wife.  
7 Mary is Daniel's grandmother.  
8 Julia is James's sister.  
9 Paul is Julia's husband.  
10 Paul is Daniel's father.  
11 Daniel is James's nephew.  
63.2  
2 Andy's 5 Diane's  
3 David's 6 Alice's  
4 Jane's  
63.3  
3 ok

4 Bill's phone number  
5 my brother's job  
6 ok  
7 ok  
8 Paula's favorite colour  
9 your mother's birthday  
10 my parents' house  
11 ok  
12 ok  
13 Silvia's party  
14 ok

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 64

64.1  
2 a 5 a 8 an  
3 a 6 an 9 an  
4 an 7 an  
64.2  
2 a vegetable  
3 a game  
4 a tool

5 a mountain  
6 a planet  
7 a fruit  
8 a river  
9 a flower  
10 a musical instrument  
64.3  
2 he's a shop assistant  
3 she's a photographer  
4 she's a taxi driver  
5 he's an electrician  
6 she's a nurse  
7 he's a private detective  
8 I'm a / an ...

64.4  
2-8  
Tom never wears a hat  
I can't ride a bicycle.  
My brother is an artist  
Barbara works in a bookshop.  
Ann wants to learn a foreign language  
Jim lives in an old house  
This evening I'm going to a party

### ཞེ་ཚན་ 65

65.1  
2 boats  
3 women  
4 cities  
5 umbrellas  
6 addresses  
7 knives  
8 sandwiches  
9 families  
10 feet  
11 holidays  
12 potatoes  
65.2  
2 teeth 5 fish  
3 people 6 leaves  
4 children  
65.3  
3 ... with a lot of beautiful trees.  
4 ... with two men  
5 ok  
6 ... three children



3 a  
4 the  
5 an  
6 the ... the  
7 a ... a  
8 a ... a  
9 ... a student ... a journalist ... a flat  
near the college ... the flat is ...  
10 ... two children, a boy and a girl.  
The boy is seven years old and the girl  
is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a  
job ...  
68.2  
2 the airport  
3 a cup

6 the floor  
68.3  
2 ... send me a postcard.  
3 what is the name of ...  
4 ... a very big country.  
5 what is the largest ...  
6 ... the colour of the carpet  
7 ... a headache.  
8 ... an old house near the station.  
9 ... the name of the director of the  
film ...

ཕྱི་ཆ་ 68



miles from the nearest village.

69.2

2 the same time

3 the same age

4 the same colour

5 the same problem

69.3

2 the guitar

3 breakfast

4 the radio

5 television / TV

6 the sea

69.4

2 the name

3 the sky

4 television

5 the police

6 the capital

7 lunch

8 the middle

ཞེ་ཚན་ 70

70.1

2 the cinema

3 hospital

4 the airport

5 home

6 prison

70.2

3 school

4 the station

5 home

6 bed

7 the post office

70.3

2 the cinema

3 go to bed

4 go to prison

5 go to the dentist

6 go to university / college

7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

70.4

3 the doctor

4 ok

5 ok

6 ok

7 the bank

8 ok

9 ok

10 the city centre

11 the station

12 ok

13 ok'

14 ok

15 the theatre

ཞེ་ཚན་ 71

71.1

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།

2 I don't like dogs.

3 I don't mind museums.

4 I love big cities.

5 I like basketball.

6 I love TV quiz shows.

7 I don't like loud music.

8 I hate computer games.

71.2

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།

2 I'm not interested in politics

3 I'm interested in sport.

4 I don't know much about art.

5 I don't know anything about astronomy.

6 I know a little about economics.

71.3

3 friends

4 parties

5 the shops

6 the milk

7 milk

8 football

9 computers

10 the water

11 cold water

12 the salt

13 the people

14 vegetables

15 the children

16 the words

17 photographs

18 the photographs

19 English ... international business

20 money ... happiness

ཞེ་ཚན་ 72

72.1

3 Sweden

4 the Amazon

5 Asia

6 the Pacific

7 the Rhine

8 Kenya

9 the United States

10 the Andes

11 Tokyo

12 the Alps

13 the Red Sea

14 Malta

15 the Bahamas

72.2

3 ok

4 the Philippines

5 the south of France

6 the regal cinema

7 ok

8 the museum or modern art

9 ok

10 Belgium is smaller than the Netherlands.

11 the Mississippi ... the Nile

12 the National gallery

13 the park hotel in Hudson road

14 ok

15 the Rocky Mountains are in North America.

16 ok

17 the Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.

18 the United States

19 the west of Ireland

20 ok

ཞེ་ཚན་ 73

73.1

2 that house

3 these postcards

4 those birds

5 this seat



|                                |   |                                  |
|--------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 6 these plates                 | The one with a moustache and            | 6there isn't any tea in the pot  |
| 73.2                           | glasses.                                | 7 there aren't any buses today   |
| 2 is that your umbrella?       | 10 which ones?                          | 8 tom hasn't got any brothers or |
| 3 is this your book?           | The ones you took on the beach last     | sisters.                         |
| 4 are those your books?        | week.                                   | 76.2                             |
| 5 I that your bicycle?         |   | 2 any 8 no                       |
| 6 are these your keys?         |   | 3 any 9 any                      |
| 7 are those your keys?         | 75.1                                    | 4 no 10 no                       |
| 8 is this your watch?          | 2 some 8 some                           | 5 any 11 none                    |
| 9 are those your glasses?      | 3 any 9 some                            | 6 no 12 any                      |
| 10 are these your gloves?      | 4 any 10 any ... any                    | 7 any                            |
| 73.3                           | 5 any 11 any... some                    | 76.3                             |
| 2 that's 6 this is             | 6 some 12 some                          | 2 no money                       |
| 3 this is 7 that's             | 7 any                                   | 3 any questions                  |
| 4 that's 8 that's              | 75.2                                    | 4 no friends                     |
| 5 that                         | 2 some letters                          | 5 no difference                  |
|                                | 3 any photographs                       | 6 any furniture                  |
|                                | 4 any foreign languages                 | 7 no answer                      |
|                                | 5 some friends                          | 8 any heating                    |
| 74.1                           | 6 some milk                             | 9 any photographs... no film     |
| 2 I don't need one.            | 7 any batteries                         | 76.4                             |
| 3 I'm going to buy one.        | 8 some fresh air                        | འདི་ལྟར་བྱས་ཆེད་                 |
| 4 I haven't got one            | 9 some cheese                           | 2 three                          |
| 5 I've just had one.           | 10 any help                             | 3 two cups                       |
| 6 there's one in Mill road.    | 75.3                                    | 4 none                           |
| 74.2                           | 3 I've got some / I have some           | 5 none                           |
| 2 a new one                    | 4 I haven't got any / I haven't any / I |                                  |
| 3 a better one                 | don't have any                          |                                  |
| 4.an old one                   | 5 I didn't buy any                      |                                  |
| 5 a big one                    | 6 I bought some                         |                                  |
| 6 a different one              | 75.4                                    |                                  |
| 74.3                           | 2 something                             |                                  |
| 2 which ones?                  | 3 anything                              |                                  |
| The green ones.                | 4 anything                              |                                  |
| 3 which one?                   | 5 somebody/ someone                     |                                  |
| The one with a / the red door. | 6 anything                              |                                  |
| 4 which one?                   | 7 anybody / anyone                      |                                  |
| The black one.                 | 8 something                             |                                  |
| 5which ones?                   | 9 anything                              |                                  |
| The ones on the wall.          | 10 anybody / anyone                     |                                  |
| 6 which ones?                  |   |                                  |
| The ones on the top shelf.     |   |                                  |
| 7 which one?                   |   |                                  |
| The tall one with long hair.   |   |                                  |
| 8 which ones?                  |   |                                  |
| The yellow ones.               |   |                                  |
| 9 which one?                   |   |                                  |

ཞེ་ཆ་ 75

ཞེ་ཆ་ 74

ཞེ་ཆ་ 77

ཞེ་ཆ་ 76



|                                   |                                 |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 77.3                              | 5 somebody / someone            | 8 everything                          |
| 3a nothing                        | 6 something                     | 79.5                                  |
| 4a nobody./ no – one.             | 7 anybody/ anyone... nobody/ no | 2 is 5 has                            |
| 5a nobody ./ no – one             | –one                            | 3 has 6 was                           |
| 6a nothing.                       | 8 anything                      | 4 likes 7 makes                       |
| 7a nothing                        | 9 nobody/ no- one               | ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 80                           |
| 8a nobody. / no – one             | 10 anybody/ anyone              |                                       |
|                                   | 11 nothing                      | 80.1                                  |
| 3b I don't want anything.         | 12 anywhere                     | 3 some 10 most                        |
| 4b I didn't meet anybody / anyone | 13 somewhere                    | 4 most of 11 most of                  |
| 5b nobody / no – one know the     | 14 anything                     | 5 most 12 some                        |
| answer.                           | 15 anybody/ anyone              | 6 any of 13 all or all of             |
| 6b I didn't buy anything          | 78.4                            | 7 all or all or 14 some of            |
| 7b nothing happened               | 2 anything to eat               | 8 none of 15 most of                  |
| 8b nobody/ no – one was late.     | 3 nothing to do                 | 9 any of                              |
| 77.4                              | 4 anywhere to sit               | 80.2                                  |
| 3 anything                        | 5 something to drink            | 2 all of them                         |
| 4 nobody/ no- one                 | 6 nowhere to stay               | 3 some of them                        |
| 5 nothing                         | 7 something to read             | 4 none of them                        |
| 6 anything                        | 8 somewhere to play             | 5 most of them                        |
| 7 anybody/ anyone                 | ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 79                     | 6 none of it                          |
| 8 nothing                         |                                 | 80.3                                  |
| 9 anything                        | 79.1                            | 3 some people...                      |
| 10 anything                       | 2 every day                     | 4 some of the questions ... or some   |
| 11 nobody/ no-one                 | 3 every time                    | questions...                          |
| 12 anything                       | 4 every room                    | 5 ok                                  |
| 13 nothing                        | 5 every word                    | 6 all insects                         |
| 14 nobody/ no –one ... anybody /  | 79.2                            | 7 ok (or ... all of these books)      |
| anyone                            | 2 every day                     | 8 most of the students... or most     |
| ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 78                       | 3 all day                       | students...                           |
|                                   | 4 every day                     | 9 ok                                  |
| 78.1                              | 5 all day                       | 10 ... most of the night              |
| 2 something                       | 6 every day                     | ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 81                           |
| 3 somewhere                       | 7 all day                       |                                       |
| 4 somebody/ someone               | 79.3                            | 81.1                                  |
| 78.2                              | 2 every 6 all                   | 3 both 9 neither                      |
| 2a nowhere                        | 3 all 7 every                   | 4 neither 10 either of                |
| 3a nothing                        | 4 all 8 all                     | 5 neither 11 both                     |
| 4a nobody./ no-one                | 5 every 9 every                 | 6 both 12 neither of                  |
| 2b I'm not going anywhere         | 79.4                            | 7 either 13 both                      |
| 3b I don't want anything          | 2 everything                    | 8 neither of 14 either of             |
| 4b I'm not looking for anybody/   | 3 everybody/ everyone           | 81.2                                  |
| anyone.                           | 4 everything                    | 2 both windows are open.              |
| 78.3                              | 5 everywhere                    | 3 neither man is wearing a hat.       |
| 3 anything                        | 6 everybody/ everyone           | 4 both men have (got) cameras. Or ... |
| 4 anything                        | 7 everywhere                    | are carrying cameras.                 |



5 both buses go to the airport. Or ...  
are going to the airport.

6 neither answer is right.

81.3

3 both of them are students.

4 neither of them has (got) a car.

5 both of them live in London.

6 both of them like cooking.

7 neither of them can play the piano.

8 both of them read newspapers.

9 neither of them is interested in sport.

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 82

82.2

2 many 8 many

3 much 9 how many

4 many 10 how much

5 many 11 how much

6 much 12 how many

7 much

82.2

2 much time

3 many countries

4 many people

5 much luggage

6 many times

82.3

2 a lot of interesting things.

3 a lot of accidents

4 a lot of fun

5 a lot of traffic

82.4

3 a lot of snow

4 ok

5 a lot of money

6 ok

7 ok

8 a lot

82.5

3 she plays tennis a lot.

4 he doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot)

5 he doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)

6 she travels a lot

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 83

83.1

2 a few

5 a little

3 a little

6 a few

4 a few

83.2

2 a little milk

3 a few days

4 a little Russian

5 a few friends

6 a few times

7 a few chairs

8 a little fresh air

83.3

2 very little coffee

3 very little rain

4 very few hotels

5 very little time

6 very few people

7 very little work

83.4

2 a few

5 few

3 a little

6 a little

4 little

7 little

83.5

2 ... a little luck

3 ... a few things

4 ok

5 ... a few questions

6 ... few people

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 84

84.1

2 I like that green jacket.

3 do you like classical music?

4 I had a wonderful holiday.

5 we went to a Chinese restaurant.

84.2

2 black clouds

3 long holiday

4 hot water

5 fresh air

6 sharp knife

7 dangerous job

84.3

2 it looks new

3 I feel ill.

4 you look surprised

5 they smell nice

6 it tastes horrible

84.4

2 it doesn't look new.

3 you don't sound American

4 I don't feel cold

5 they don't look heavy

6 it doesn't taste good

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 85

85.1

2 badly 5 fast

3 quietly 6 dangerously

4 angrily

85.2

2 come quickly

3 work hard

4 sleep well

5 win easily

6 think carefully

7 know her very well

8 explain things very clearly / well

85.3

2 angry 7 suddenly

3 slowly 8 quite

4 slow 9 badly

5 careful 10 nice

6 hard

85.4

2 well 5 well

3 good 6 good ... good

4 well

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 86

86.1

2 bigger

3 slower

4 more expensive

5 higher

6 more dangerous

86.2

2 stronger

3 happier



|                            |  |  |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| 4 more modern              | is.                                      | not as much as A or but less (money)       |
| 5 more important           | 3 you work harder than him. / ... than   | than A                                     |
| 6 better                   | I do                                     | 6 C works harder than A but not as         |
| 7 larger                   | 4 you watch TV more than him. / ...      | hard as B                                  |
| 8 more serious             | than he does.                            | 88.2                                       |
| 9 prettier                 | 5 you're better cook than me. / ...      | 2 your room isn't as big as mine. / ...    |
| 10 more crowded            | than I am. Or you cook better than me.   | as my room                                 |
| 86.3                       | / ... than I do.                         | 3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ...   |
| 2 hotter / warmer          | 6 you know more people than us. / ...    | as you did                                 |
| 3 more expensive           | than we do.                              | 4 they didn't play as well as us. / ... as |
| 4 worse                    | 7 you've got more money than them.       | we did.                                    |
| 5 further                  | / ... than they have                     | 5 you haven't been here as long as         |
| 6 more difficult or harder | 8 you can run faster than me. / ... than | me. / ... as I have                        |
| 86.4                       | I can.                                   | 6 he isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she |
| 3 taller                   | 9 you've been here longer than           | is.  |
| 4 harder                   | her. / ... than she has.                 | 88.3                                       |
| 5 more comfortable         | 10 you got up earlier than them. / ...   | 2 as 6 than                                |
| 6 better                   | than they did.                           | 3 than 7 as                                |
| 7 nicer                    | 11 you were more surprised than him.     | 4 than 8 than                              |
| 8 heavier                  | / than he was.                           | 5 as                                       |
| 9 more interested          | 87.3                                     | 88.4                                       |
| 10 warmer                  | 2 Jack's mother is much younger than     | 2 Julia lives in the same street as        |
| 11 better                  | his father.                              | Caroline.                                  |
| 12 bigger                  | 3 my camera cost a bit more than         | 3 Julia got up at the same time as         |
| 13 more beautiful          | yours. / than your camera. Or my         | Andrew                                     |
| 14 sharper                 | camera was a bit more expensive          | 4 Andrew's car is the same colour as       |
| 15 more polite             | than...                                  | Caroline's                                 |

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 87

- 87.1
- 3 Liz is taller than Ben
- 4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben
- 5 Ben works harder than Liz
- 6 Ben has got more money than Liz
- 7 Liz is better driver than Ben
- 8 Ben is more patient than Liz
- 9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz
- / Ben dances better than Liz
- 10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben
- 11 Liz speaks French better than Ben.
- / Liz speaks better French than Ben. /
- Liz's French is better than Ben's
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than
- Liz. / ... more often than Liz.
- 87.2
- 2 you're older than her. / ... than she

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 88

- 88.1
- 2 A is longer than B but not as long as
- C
- 3 C is heavier than A but not as heavy
- as B
- 4 A is older than C but not as old as B
- 5 B has got more money than C but

### ཞེ་ཆ་ 89

- 89.1
- 2 C is longer than A
- D is the longest
- B is the shortest
- 3 D is younger than C
- B is the youngest
- C is the oldest
- 4 D is more expensive than
- A
- C is the most expensive
- A is the cheapest
- 5 A is better than C
- A is the best
- D is the worst
- 89.2
- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film



4 the most popular singer  
5 the worst mistake  
6 the prettiest village  
7 the coldest day  
8 the most boring person  
89.3  
2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world  
3-6  
Alaska is the largest state in the USA  
Brazil is the largest country in south America  
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system  
The Nile is the longest river in Africa.  
/ ... in the world.

### ཁྱེ་ཆོད་ 90

90.1  
2 enough chairs  
3 enough paint  
4 enough wind  
90.2  
2 the car isn't big enough  
3 his legs aren't long enough  
4 he isn't strong enough  
90.3  
3 old enough  
4 enough time  
5 big enough  
6 eat enough  
7 enough fruit  
8 tired enough  
9 practise enough  
90.4  
2 sharp enough to cut  
3 warm enough to have  
4 enough bread to make  
5 well enough to win  
6 enough time to read

### ཁྱེ་ཆོད་ 91

91.1  
2 too heavy  
3 too low  
4 too fast

5 too big  
6 too crowded  
91.2  
3 enough 8 enough  
4 too many 9 too  
5 too 10 too many  
6 enough 11 too much  
7 too much  
91.3  
3 it's too far  
4 it's too expensive  
5 it isn't / it's not big enough  
6 it was too difficult  
7 it isn't good enough  
8 I'm too busy  
9 it was too long  
91.4  
2 too early to go to bed  
3 too young to get married  
4 too dangerous to go out at night  
5 too late to phone Ann (now)  
6 too surprised to say anything

### ཁྱེ་ཆོད་ 92

92.1  
3 I like this picture very much.  
4 Tom started his new job last week  
5 ok  
6 Jane bought a present for her friend.  
Or Jane bought her friend a present  
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day  
8 ok  
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother  
92.2  
2 I wrote two letters this morning  
3 Paul passed the exam easily  
4 Ann doesn't speak French very well  
5 I did a lot of work yesterday  
6 do you know London well?  
7 we enjoyed the party very much  
8 I explained the problem carefully  
9 we met some friends at the airport  
10 did you buy that jacket in England?  
11 we do the same thing every day

12 I don't like football very much  
92.3  
2 I arrived at the hotel early  
3 Julia goes to Italy every year  
4 we have lived here since 1988  
5 Sue was born in London in 1960  
6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday  
7 Ann went to the bank yesterday afternoon  
8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning  
9 Barbara is going to university in October  
10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning  
11 my parents have been to the United States many times  
12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night  
13 are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?  
14 I took the children to school this morning.

### ཁྱེ་ཆོད་ 93

93.1  
2 he always get up early  
3 he's/ he is never late for work  
4 he sometimes gets angry  
5 he often goes swimming  
6 he's / he is usually at home in the evenings.  
93.2  
2 Susan is always polite  
3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.  
4 Jill has just started a new job.  
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.  
6 the bus isn't usually late.  
7 I don't often eat fish.  
8 I will never forget what you said.  
9 have you ever lost your passport?  
10 do you still work in the same place?  
11 they always stay in the same hotel.  
12 Diane doesn't usually work on





|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| Saturdays.  | 3 have you got your (exam) results yet?            | 4 on 12 in  |
| 13 is Tina already here?  | / have you had your ... / have you                 | 5 in 13 on  |
| 14 what do you usually have for breakfast?  | received your...                                   | 6 in 14 on  |
| 15 I can never remember his name.   | 4 have you decided where to go yet?/               | 7 on 15 at  |
| 93.3  | do you know where you're going yet? ·              | 8 on 16 at  |
| 2 yes, and also speak French.   | 94.4   | 9 at 17 at  |
| 3 yes, and I'm also hungry.   | 3 she's / she has already gone/ left.              | 10 on 18 in   |
| 4 yes, and I've also been to Ireland.   | 4 I've already got one. / I already have           | 96.2  |
| 5 yes, and I also bought some books.  | one.   | 2 on 11 at  |
| 93.4  | 5 I've/ I have already paid (it).                  | 3 at 12 on  |
| 1 they both play football. They're / they are both students.                              | 6 he already knows.                                | 4 in 13 in  |
| They've both got cars. / they both have cars.   | ཐེ་ཚན་ 95  | 5 in 14 at  |
| 2 they are / they're all married they were all born in England they all live in new York. | 95.1   | 6 in 15 in  |
| ཐེ་ཚན་ 94   | 2 he gave it to Gary.                              | 7 on 16 on  |
| 94.1  | 3 he gave them to Sarah.                           | 8 on 17 in  |
| 2 do you still live in Clare street?  | 4 he gave it to his sister.                        | 9 in 18 at  |
| 3 are you still student?  | 5 he gave them to Robert.                          | 10 at 19 at   |
| 4 have you still got a motor – bike?/ do you still have ...                               | 6 he gave it to a neighbor.                        | 96.3  |
| 5 do you still go to the cinema a lot?  | 95.2   | 2 on Friday   |
| 6 do you still want to be a teacher?  | 2 I gave Joanna a plant.                           | 3 on Monday   |
| 94.2  | 3 I gave Richard some gloves / a pair of gloves.   | 4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday / or Thursday at 4 o'clock             |
| 2 he was looking for a job. He's / he is still looking (for a job).                       | 4 I gave Diane some chocolates a box of chocolates | 5 on Saturday evening   |
| 3 she was asleep / sleeping. Or she was in bed.   | 5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers. | 6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30 |
| She's / she is still asleep / sleeping. or ... still in bed.                              | 6 I gave Kevin a pen.                              | 96.4  |
| She hasn't work up yet. / she hasn't got up yet./ she isn't awake yet. She isn't up yet.  | 95.3   | 2 I'll phone you in three days.                                   |
| 4 they were having dinner./ they were eating.   | 2 can you lend me an umbrella?                     | 3 my exam is in two weeks.  |
| They're / they are still having dinner./ ... still eating                                 | 3 can you give me your address?                    | 4 tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.          |
| They haven't finished (dinner) yet./ they haven't finished eating yet.                    | 4 can you lend me ten pounds?                      | 96.5  |
| 94.3  | 5 can you send me some information?                | 3 in  |
| 2 is Ann here yet? Or has Ann arrived / come yet?   | 6 can you show me the letter?                      | 4 – (no preposition)  |
|   | 7 can you get me some stamps?                      | 5 – (no preposition)  |
|   | 95.4   | 6 in  |
|   | 2 lend you some money                              | 7 at  |
|   | 3 send the letter to me                            | 8 – (no preposition)  |
|   | 4 buy you a present                                | 9 – (no preposition)  |
|   | 5 pass me the sugar                                | 10 on   |
|   | 6 give it to her                                   | 11 in   |
|   | 7 the policeman my identity card                   | 12 at   |
|   | ཐེ་ཚན་ 96  | ཐེ་ཚན་ 97   |
|   | 96.1   | 97.1  |
|   | 3 at 11 at   | 2 Alex lived in Canada until 1990                                 |
|   |  | 3 Alex has lived in England since                                 |

263



|                             |   |                                  |
|-----------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 7 at                        | 2 the fountain is in front of the theatre | 4 on the phone                   |
| 8 to                        | 3 the bank / bookshop is opposite the     | 5 on television                  |
| 9 to                        | theatre. Or Paul's office is opposite     | 104.2                            |
| 10 at                       | the theatre. Or the theatre is            | 2 by                             |
| 11 at                       | opposite ...                              | 3 with                           |
| 12 to Mary's house ... home | 4 the bank / bookshop / supermarket is    | 4 about                          |
| 13 – (no preposition)       | next to ...                               | 5 on                             |
| 14 study at ... go to       | 5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.    | 6 by                             |
| 101.4                       | 6 the bookshop is between the bank        | 7 at                             |
| 1 to                        | and the supermarket.                      | 8 on                             |
| 2 – (no preposition)        |   | 9 with                           |
| 3 at                        |   | 10 about grammar by Vera P. bull |
| 4 in                        |   | 104.3                            |
| 5 to                        | 103.1                                     | 1 with 9 at                      |
| 6 – (no preposition)        | 2 go under the bridge.                    | 2 without 10 by                  |
| 101.5                       | 3 go up the hill.                         | 3 by 11 about                    |
| Example answers:            | 4 go down the steps.                      | 4 about 12 by                    |
| 2 to work                   | 5 go along this street.                   | 5 at 13 on                       |
| 3 at work                   | 6 go into the hotel.                      | 6 by 14 with                     |
| 4 to Canada                 | 7 go past the hotel.                      | 7 on 15 by                       |
| 5 to parties                | 8 go out of the hotel.                    | 8 with 16 by                     |
| 6 at a friend's house.      | 9 go over the bridge.                     |                                  |
|                             | 10 go through the park.                   |                                  |
|                             | 103.2                                     |                                  |
|                             | 2 off                                     | 105.1                            |
|                             | 3 over                                    | 2 in                             |
|                             | 4 out or                                  | 3 to                             |
|                             | 5 across                                  | 4 at                             |
|                             | 6 round / around                          | 5 with                           |
|                             | 7 through                                 | 6 of                             |
|                             | 8 on                                      | 105.2                            |
|                             | 9 round / around                          | 2 at                             |
|                             | 10 into the house through a window.       | 3 to                             |
|                             | 103.3                                     | 4 about                          |
|                             | 1 out or                                  | 5 of                             |
|                             | 2 round / around                          | 6 of                             |
|                             | 3 in                                      | 7 from                           |
|                             | 4 from here to the airport                | 8 in                             |
|                             | 5 round / around                          | 9 of                             |
|                             | 6 on/ over                                | 10 about                         |
|                             | 7 over                                    | 11 of                            |
|                             | 8 out of                                  | 12 for getting angry with you    |
|                             |   | 105.3                            |
|                             |   | 2 interested in going            |
|                             |   | 3 good at getting                |
|                             |   | 4 fed up with waiting            |
|                             |   | 5 sorry for waking               |

ཐེ་ཚན 103

ཐེ་ཚན 102

ཐེ་ཚན 105

ཐེ་ཚན 104



- 105.4  
2 Sue walked past me without speaking.  
3 don't anything without asking me first.  
4 I went out without locking the door.  
105.5  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས་  
2 I'm afraid of the dark.  
3 I'm not very good at drawing  
4 I'm not interested in cars.  
5 I'm fed up with living in London.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 106

- 106.1  
2 to 5 at 3 for 6 for  
4 to  
106.2  
2 to 3 to' 4 for 5 to 6 of/ about  
7 for 8 on 9 to 10 for  
11 to 12 - (no preposition)  
13 to 14 on 15 of/ about  
106.3  
1 at 4 after  
2 after 5 at  
3 for 6 for  
106.4  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས་  
3 it depends on the programmer.  
4 it depends (on) what it is.  
5 it depends on the weather.  
6 it depends (on) how much you want.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 107

- 107.1  
2 went in  
3 looked up  
4 rode off  
5 turned round / around or looked round / around  
6 got off  
7 sat down  
8 got out  
107.2  
2 away/ out  
3 round / around

- 4 going out ... be back  
5 down  
6 over  
7 back  
8 in  
9 up  
10 going away ... coming back  
107.3  
2 hold on  
3 slowed down  
4 takes off  
5 get on  
6 speak up  
7 broken down  
8 fall over / fall down  
9 carried on  
10 gave up

ཐེ་ཚན་ 108

- 108.1  
2 she took off her hat or she took her hat off.  
3 he put down his bag. Or he put his bag down  
4 she picked up the magazine. Or she picked the magazine up.  
5 she put on his sunglasses. Or he put his sunglasses on.  
6 she turned off the tap. Or she turned the tap off.  
108.2  
2 he put his jacket on. He put it on.  
3 she took off her glasses. She took them off.  
4 put your pens down. Put them down.  
5 they gave the money back. They gave it back.  
6 I turned off the lights. I turned them off.  
108.3  
2 take it back  
3 picked them up  
4 switched it off  
5 bring them back  
108.4  
3 I knocked over a glass / I knocked a

- glass over  
4 look it up  
5 throw them away  
6 fill it in  
7 tried on a pair of shoes / tried a pair of shoes on  
8 showed me round (or around)  
9 gave it up or gave up (without it)  
10 put out your cigarette/ put your cigarette out

ཐེ་ཚན་ 109

- 109.1  
3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.  
4 I wanted to phone you but I didn't have your number.  
5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.  
6 I usually drive to work but I went by bus this morning.  
7 do you want me to come with you or shall I wait here?  
109.2  
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས་  
2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.  
3 but it was closed.  
4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.  
5 because there was a lot of traffic / because the traffic was bad.  
6 Sue said goodbye. got into her car and drove off / away.  
109.3  
Example answers:  
3 I went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good.  
4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.  
5 there was a film on television, so I watched it.  
6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 110





bought?

114.2

2 the meal you cooked was excellent.

3 the shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.

4 the people we invited to dinner didn't come.

114.3

2 who are the people you spoke to?

3 did you find the keys you were looking for?

4 the house they live in is too small for them.

5 the map I looked at wasn't very clear.

6 I fell off the chair I was sitting on.

7 the bus we were waiting for was very late.

8 who is the man Linda is dancing with?

114.4

2 what's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?

3 do you like the village where you live?

4 how big is the factory where you work?